Trusted Platform Module Library
Part 3: Commands

Family “2.0”
Level 00 Revision 01.81
November 29, 2023

Committee Draft
Contact: admin@trustedcomputinggroup.org

Work in Progress

This document is an intermediate draft for comment only and is subject to change without notice. Readers should not design products based on this document.

TCG Public Review
Copyright © TCG 2006-2023
Licenses and Notices

Copyright Licenses:

- Trusted Computing Group (TCG) grants to the user of the source code in this specification (the “Source Code”) a worldwide, irrevocable, nonexclusive, royalty free, copyright license to reproduce, create derivative works, distribute, display and perform the Source Code and derivative works thereof, and to grant others the rights granted herein.

- The TCG grants to the user of the other parts of the specification (other than the Source Code) the rights to reproduce, distribute, display, and perform the specification solely for the purpose of developing products based on such documents.

Source Code Distribution Conditions:

- Redistributions of Source Code must retain the above copyright licenses, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers.

- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright licenses, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

Disclaimers:

- THE COPYRIGHT LICENSES SET FORTH ABOVE DO NOT REPRESENT ANY FORM OF LICENSE OR WAIVER, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, WITH RESPECT TO PATENT RIGHTS HELD BY TCG MEMBERS (OR OTHER THIRD PARTIES) THAT MAY BE NECESSARY TO IMPLEMENT THIS SPECIFICATION OR OTHERWISE. Contact TCG Administration (admin@trustedcomputinggroup.org) for information on specification licensing rights available through TCG membership agreements.

- THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, COMPLETENESS, OR NONINFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS, OR ANY WARRANTY OTHERWISE ARISING OUT OF ANY PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

- Without limitation, TCG and its members and licensors disclaim all liability, including liability for infringement of any proprietary rights, relating to use of information in this specification and to the implementation of this specification, and TCG disclaims all liability for cost of procurement of substitute goods or services, lost profits, loss of use, loss of data or any incidental, consequential, direct, indirect, or special damages, whether under contract, tort, warranty or otherwise, arising in any way out of use or reliance upon this specification or any information herein.

Any marks and brands contained herein are the property of their respective owners.
CONTENTS

CONTENTS.............................................................................................................. iii
TABLES.................................................................................................................. viii
1 Scope.................................................................................................................... 1
2 Terms and Definitions.......................................................................................... 1
3 Symbols and abbreviated terms ......................................................................... 1
4 Notation ............................................................................................................... 2
4.1 Introduction ...................................................................................................... 2
4.2 Table Decorations ............................................................................................ 2
4.3 Handle and Parameter Demarcation ................................................................. 4
4.4 AuthorizationSize and ParameterSize .............................................................. 4
4.5 Return Code Alias ........................................................................................... 4
5 Command Processing .......................................................................................... 5
5.1 Introduction ...................................................................................................... 5
5.2 Command Header Validation ........................................................................... 5
5.3 Mode Checks ................................................................................................... 6
5.4 Handle Area Validation .................................................................................... 6
5.5 Session Area Validation ................................................................................... 8
5.6 Authorization Checks ....................................................................................... 9
5.7 Parameter Decryption ...................................................................................... 11
5.8 Parameter Unmarshaling .................................................................................. 11
5.9 Command Post Processing .............................................................................. 12
6 Response Values ................................................................................................ 14
6.1 Tag ................................................................................................................... 14
6.2 Response Codes .............................................................................................. 14
7 Implementation Dependent ................................................................................ 17
8 Detailed Actions Assumptions .......................................................................... 18
8.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................... 18
8.2 Pre-processing ................................................................................................ 18
8.3 Post Processing ................................................................................................ 18
9 Start-up ................................................................................................................. 19
9.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................... 19
9.2 _TPM_Init........................................................................................................ 19
9.3 TPM2_Startup ................................................................................................. 22
9.4 TPM2_Shutdown ............................................................................................. 30
10 Testing ................................................................................................................ 34
10.1 Introduction .................................................................................................... 34
10.2 TPM2_SelfTest .............................................................................................. 35
10.3 TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest ......................................................................... 38
10.4 TPM2_GetTestResult .................................................................................... 41
11 Session Commands .......................................................................................... 44
11.1 TPM2_StartAuthSession .............................................................................. 44
11.2 TPM2_PolicyRestart .................................................................................... 51
12 Object Commands ............................................................................................. 54
Part 3: Commands

12.1 TPM2_Create ................................................................. 54
12.2 TPM2_Load ................................................................. 61
12.3 TPM2_LoadExternal ......................................................... 65
12.4 TPM2_ReadPublic ................................................................ 70
12.5 TPM2_ActivateCredential .................................................. 73
12.6 TPM2_MakeCredential ...................................................... 77
12.7 TPM2_Unseal ...................................................................... 81
12.8 TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth .................................................. 84
12.9 TPM2_CreateLoaded ......................................................... 88

13 Duplication Commands ................................................................... 94
13.1 TPM2_Duplicate .................................................................. 94
13.2 TPM2_Rewrap .................................................................... 99
13.3 TPM2_Import .................................................................... 104

14 Asymmetric Primitives .................................................................. 110
14.1 Introduction ....................................................................... 110
14.2 TPM2_RSA_Encrypt ........................................................... 110
14.3 TPM2_RSA_Decrypt ............................................................ 114
14.4 TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen .......................................................... 118
14.5 TPM2_ECDH_ZGen ............................................................. 122
14.6 TPM2_ECC_Parameters ....................................................... 125
14.7 TPM2_ZGen_2Phase ............................................................ 128
14.8 TPM2_ECC_Encrypt ............................................................ 132
14.9 TPM2_ECC_Decrypt ............................................................ 134

15 Symmetric Primitives .................................................................. 136
15.1 Introduction ....................................................................... 136
15.2 TPM2_EncryptDecrypt ....................................................... 138
15.3 TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2 ....................................................... 143
15.4 TPM2_Hash ...................................................................... 145
15.5 TPM2_HMAC .................................................................... 148
15.6 TPM2_MAC ....................................................................... 152

16 Random Number Generator .......................................................... 156
16.1 TPM2_GetRandom .............................................................. 156
16.2 TPM2_StirRandom .............................................................. 159

17 Hash/HMAC/Event Sequences ......................................................... 162
17.1 Introduction ....................................................................... 162
17.2 TPM2_HMAC_Start .............................................................. 162
17.3 TPM2_MAC_Start ............................................................... 166
17.4 TPM2_HashSequenceStart .................................................. 169
17.5 TPM2_SequenceUpdate ........................................................ 172
17.6 TPM2_SequenceComplete ................................................. 176
17.7 TPM2_EventSequenceComplete ........................................... 180

18 Attestation Commands .................................................................. 184
18.1 Introduction ....................................................................... 184
18.2 TPM2_Certify ................................................................. 186
18.3 TPM2_CertifyCreation ....................................................... 190
Part 3: Commands

18.4 TPM2_Quote ............................................ 194
18.5 TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest .......................... 198
18.6 TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest ......................... 202
18.7 TPM2_GetTime ........................................... 206
18.8 TPM2_CertifyX509 ..................................... 210

19 Ephemeral EC Keys ........................................... 217
19.1 Introduction ............................................... 217
19.2 TPM2_Commit ............................................ 218
19.3 TPM2_EC_Ephemeral ................................. 223

20 Signing and Signature Verification ......................... 226
20.1 TPM2_VerifySignature ................................. 226
20.2 TPM2_Sign ............................................... 231

21 Command Audit ............................................... 235
21.1 Introduction ............................................. 235
21.2 TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus ....................... 236

22 Integrity Collection (PCR) .................................... 240
22.1 Introduction ............................................. 240
22.2 TPM2_PCR_Extend ....................................... 241
22.3 TPM2_PCR_Event ......................................... 244
22.4 TPM2_PCR_Read .......................................... 247
22.5 TPM2_PCR_Allocate ..................................... 250
22.6 TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy .............................. 253
22.7 TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue ............................... 256
22.8 TPM2_PCR_Reset .......................................... 259
22.9 TPM_Hash_Start ....................................... 262
22.10 TPM_Hash_Data ....................................... 264
22.11 TPM_Hash_End ....................................... 266

23 Enhanced Authorization (EA) Commands .................. 269
23.1 Introduction ............................................. 269
23.2 Signed Authorization Actions ........................... 270
23.3 TPM2_PolicySigned .................................... 273
23.4 TPM2_PolicySecret ..................................... 279
23.5 TPM2_PolicyTicket ..................................... 283
23.6 TPM2_PolicyOR .......................................... 287
23.7 TPM2_PolicyPCR ....................................... 291
23.8 TPM2_PolicyLocality ................................... 296
23.9 TPM2_PolicyNV .......................................... 300
23.10 TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer ............................ 305
23.11 TPM2_PolicyCommandCode ........................... 310
23.12 TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence ......................... 313
23.13 TPM2_PolicyCpHash .................................. 316
23.14 TPM2_PolicyNameHash ................................ 320
23.15 TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect ....................... 324
23.16 TPM2_PolicyAuthorize ................................ 328
23.17 TPM2_PolicyAuthValue ................................ 332
23.18 TPM2_PolicyPassword ................................ 335
Part 3: Commands

31.1 Introduction ........................................................................................................... 460
31.2 NV Counters ......................................................................................................... 462
31.3 TPM2_NV_DefineSpace .................................................................................... 463
31.4 TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace ............................................................................... 467
31.5 TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial ...................................................................... 470
31.6 TPM2_NV_ReadPublic ..................................................................................... 473
31.7 TPM2_NV_Write ................................................................................................ 476
31.8 TPM2_NV_Increment ......................................................................................... 480
31.9 TPM2_NV_Extend ............................................................................................. 484
31.10 TPM2_NV_SetBits .......................................................................................... 488
31.11 TPM2_NV_WriteLock ..................................................................................... 491
31.12 TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock ........................................................................ 494
31.13 TPM2_NV_Read ................................................................................................ 497
31.14 TPM2_NV_ReadLock ...................................................................................... 501
31.15 TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth .................................................................................. 504
31.16 TPM2_NV_Certify .......................................................................................... 507
31.17 TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2 .............................................................................. 511
31.18 TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2 .................................................................................. 515
32 Attached Components ............................................................................................. 517
32.1 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 517
32.2 TPM2_AC_GetCapability ................................................................................. 518
32.3 TPM2_AC_Send .................................................................................................. 520
32.4 TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect ........................................................................ 523
33 Authenticated Countdown Timer ............................................................................. 526
33.1 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 526
33.2 TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout .................................................................................... 526
34 Vendor Specific ....................................................................................................... 529
34.1 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 529
34.2 TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test .................................................................................. 529
TABLES

Table 1 — Command Modifiers and Decoration ................................................................. 2
Table 2 — Separators ........................................................................................................... 4
Table 3 — Unmarshaling Errors .......................................................................................... 12
Table 4 — Command-Independent Response Codes ......................................................... 15
Table 5 — TPM2_Startup Command .................................................................................. 25
Table 6 — TPM2_Startup Response ................................................................................... 25
Table 7 — TPM2_Shutdown Command .............................................................................. 31
Table 8 — TPM2_Shutdown Response ............................................................................... 31
Table 9 — TPM2_SelfTest Command ............................................................................... 36
Table 10 — TPM2_SelfTest Response ............................................................................... 36
Table 11 — TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest Command ............................................................ 39
Table 12 — TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest Response ............................................................... 39
Table 13 — TPM2_GetTestResult Command .................................................................... 42
Table 14 — TPM2_GetTestResult Response ..................................................................... 42
Table 15 — TPM2_StartAuthSession Command ............................................................... 47
Table 16 — TPM2_StartAuthSession Response ................................................................. 47
Table 17 — TPM2_PolicyRestart Command .................................................................... 52
Table 18 — TPM2_PolicyRestart Response ..................................................................... 52
Table 19 — TPM2_Create Command ............................................................................... 57
Table 20 — TPM2_Create Response ................................................................................. 57
Table 21 — TPM2_Load Command .................................................................................... 62
Table 22 — TPM2_Load Response ..................................................................................... 62
Table 23 — TPM2_LoadExternal Command ..................................................................... 67
Table 24 — TPM2_LoadExternal Response ...................................................................... 67
Table 25 — TPM2_ReadPublic Command ...................................................................... 71
Table 26 — TPM2_ReadPublic Response ....................................................................... 71
Table 27 — TPM2_ActivateCredential Command ............................................................ 74
Table 28 — TPM2_ActivateCredential Response ............................................................... 74
Table 29 — TPM2_MakeCredential Command ................................................................. 78
Table 30 — TPM2_MakeCredential Response ................................................................. 78
Table 31 — TPM2_Unseal Command ............................................................................... 82
Table 32 — TPM2_Unseal Response ............................................................................... 82
Table 33 — TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth Command ............................................................. 85
Table 34 — TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth Response ............................................................... 85
Table 35 — TPM2_CreateLoaded Command ................................................................... 89
Table 36 — TPM2_CreateLoaded Response ................................................................... 89
Table 37 — TPM2_Duplicate Command .......................................................................... 95
Table 38 — TPM2_Duplicate Response ................................................................. 95
Table 39 — TPM2_Rewrap Command ................................................................. 100
Table 40 — TPM2_Rewrap Response ................................................................. 100
Table 41 — TPM2_Import Command ................................................................. 106
Table 42 — TPM2_Import Response ................................................................. 106
Table 43 — Padding Scheme Selection .............................................................. 110
Table 44 — Message Size Limits Based on Padding ............................................ 111
Table 45 — TPM2_RSA_Encrypt Command ....................................................... 112
Table 46 — TPM2_RSA_Encrypt Response ......................................................... 112
Table 47 — TPM2_RSA_Decrypt Command ....................................................... 115
Table 48 — TPM2_RSA_Decrypt Response ....................................................... 115
Table 49 — TPM2_ECC_KeyGen Command ....................................................... 119
Table 50 — TPM2_ECC_KeyGen Response ....................................................... 119
Table 51 — TPM2_ECDH_ZGen Command ....................................................... 123
Table 52 — TPM2_ECDH_ZGen Response ....................................................... 123
Table 53 — TPM2_ECC_Parameters Command .................................................. 126
Table 54 — TPM2_ECC_Parameters Response ................................................... 126
Table 55 — TPM2_ZGen_2Phase Command ....................................................... 129
Table 56 — TPM2_ZGen_2Phase Response ....................................................... 129
Table 57 — TPM2_ECC_Encrypt Command ....................................................... 132
Table 58 — TPM2_ECC_Encrypt Response ....................................................... 133
Table 59 — TPM2_ECC_Decrypt Command ..................................................... 134
Table 60 — TPM2_ECC_Decrypt Response ..................................................... 134
Table 61 — Symmetric Chaining Process ......................................................... 137
Table 62 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt Command ............................................... 139
Table 63 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt Response ............................................... 139
Table 64 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2 Command .............................................. 143
Table 65 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2 Response .............................................. 143
Table 66 — TPM2_Hash Command ................................................................. 146
Table 67 — TPM2_Hash Response ................................................................. 146
Table 68 — TPM2_HMAC Command ............................................................... 149
Table 69 — TPM2_HMAC Response ............................................................... 149
Table 70 — TPM2_MAC Command ................................................................. 153
Table 71 — TPM2_MAC Response ................................................................. 153
Table 7!2 — TPM2_GetRandom Command ..................................................... 157
Table 73 — TPM2_GetRandom Response ..................................................... 157
Table 74 — TPM2_StirRandom Command ................................................... 160
Table 75 — TPM2_StirRandom Response ................................................... 160
Table 76 — Hash Selection Matrix ................................................................. 162
Table 77 — TPM2_HMAC_Start Command .......................................................... 163
Table 78 — TPM2_HMAC_Start Response ......................................................... 163
Table 79 — Algorithm Selection Matrix ............................................................. 166
Table 80 — TPM2_MAC_Start Command .......................................................... 167
Table 81 — TPM2_MAC_Start Response ............................................................ 167
Table 82 — TPM2_HashSequenceStart Command .......................................... 170
Table 83 — TPM2_HashSequenceStart Response ............................................. 170
Table 84 — TPM2_SequenceUpdate Command .............................................. 173
Table 85 — TPM2_SequenceUpdate Response ................................................. 173
Table 86 — TPM2_SequenceComplete Command .......................................... 177
Table 87 — TPM2_SequenceComplete Response ............................................ 177
Table 88 — TPM2_EventSequenceComplete Command .................................. 181
Table 89 — TPM2_EventSequenceComplete Response .................................... 181
Table 90 — TPM2_Certify Command ............................................................... 187
Table 91 — TPM2_Certify Response ............................................................... 187
Table 92 — TPM2_CertifyCreation Command .................................................. 191
Table 93 — TPM2_CertifyCreation Response ................................................... 191
Table 94 — TPM2_Quote Command .................................................................. 195
Table 95 — TPM2_Quote Response ................................................................... 195
Table 96 — TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest Command ...................................... 199
Table 97 — TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest Response ....................................... 199
Table 98 — TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest Command ................................... 203
Table 99 — TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest Response .................................... 203
Table 100 — TPM2_GetTime Command ............................................................ 207
Table 101 — TPM2_GetTime Response ............................................................. 207
Table 102 — TPM2_CertifyX509 Command ..................................................... 212
Table 103 — TPM2_CertifyX509 Response ....................................................... 212
Table 104 — TPM2_Commit Command ............................................................. 219
Table 105 — TPM2_Commit Response .............................................................. 219
Table 106 — TPM2_EC_Ephemeral Command ................................................. 224
Table 107 — TPM2_EC_Ephemeral Response .................................................... 224
Table 108 — TPM2_VerifySignature Command .............................................. 228
Table 109 — TPM2_VerifySignature Response .................................................. 228
Table 110 — TPM2_Sign Command ................................................................. 232
Table 111 — TPM2_Sign Response ................................................................. 232
Table 112 — TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus Command ...................... 237
Table 113 — TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus Response ............................ 237
Table 114 — TPM2_PCR_Extend Command ..................................................... 242
Table 115 — TPM2_PCR_Extend Response ....................................................... 242
Table 116 — TPM2_PCR_Event Command .................................................. 245
Table 117 — TPM2_PCR_Event Response ................................................... 245
Table 118 — TPM2_PCR_Read Command ................................................... 248
Table 119 — TPM2_PCR_Read Response ................................................... 248
Table 120 — TPM2_PCR_Allocate Command .............................................. 251
Table 121 — TPM2_PCR_Allocate Response .............................................. 251
Table 122 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy Command ..................................... 254
Table 123 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy Response ...................................... 254
Table 124 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue Command ...................................... 257
Table 125 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue Response ...................................... 257
Table 126 — TPM2_PCR_Reset Command .................................................. 260
Table 127 — TPM2_PCR_Reset Response .................................................. 260
Table 128 — TPM2_PolicySigned Command ............................................. 275
Table 129 — TPM2_PolicySigned Response .............................................. 275
Table 130 — TPM2_PolicySecret Command ............................................. 280
Table 131 — TPM2_PolicySecret Response .............................................. 280
Table 132 — TPM2_PolicyTicket Command ............................................. 284
Table 133 — TPM2_PolicyTicket Response .............................................. 284
Table 134 — TPM2_PolicyOR Command .................................................. 288
Table 135 — TPM2_PolicyOR Response .................................................. 288
Table 136 — TPM2_PolicyPCR Command .............................................. 293
Table 137 — TPM2_PolicyPCR Response .............................................. 293
Table 138 — TPM2_PolicyLocality Command ......................................... 297
Table 139 — TPM2_PolicyLocality Response ......................................... 297
Table 140 — TPM2_PolicyNV Command ................................................ 302
Table 141 — TPM2_PolicyNV Response ................................................ 302
Table 142 — TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer Command .................................. 307
Table 143 — TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer Response .................................. 307
Table 144 — TPM2_PolicyCommandCode Command .................................. 311
Table 145 — TPM2_PolicyCommandCode Response .................................. 311
Table 146 — TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence Command ................................ 314
Table 147 — TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence Response ................................ 314
Table 148 — TPM2_PolicyCpHash Command .......................................... 317
Table 149 — TPM2_PolicyCpHash Response .......................................... 317
Table 150 — TPM2_PolicyNameHash Command ...................................... 321
Table 151 — TPM2_PolicyNameHash Response ...................................... 321
Table 152 — TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect Command ............................ 325
Table 153 — TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect Response ............................ 325
Table 154 — TPM2_PolicyAuthorize Command ...................................... 329
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>155</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyAuthorize Response</code></td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyAuthValue Command</code></td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyAuthValue Response</code></td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyPassword Command</code></td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyPassword Response</code></td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyGetDigest Command</code></td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyGetDigest Response</code></td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyNvWritten Command</code></td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyNvWritten Response</code></td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyTemplate Command</code></td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyTemplate Response</code></td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV Command</code></td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV Response</code></td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td><code>Capability Contents</code></td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>169</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyCapability Command</code></td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyCapability Response</code></td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyParameters Command</code></td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PolicyParameters Response</code></td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>173</td>
<td><code>TPM2_CreatePrimary Command</code></td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td><code>TPM2_CreatePrimary Response</code></td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td><code>TPM2_HierarchyControl Command</code></td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td><code>TPM2_HierarchyControl Response</code></td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177</td>
<td><code>TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy Command</code></td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td><code>TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy Response</code></td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ChangePPS Command</code></td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ChangePPS Response</code></td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ChangeEPS Command</code></td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ChangeEPS Response</code></td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td><code>TPM2_Clear Command</code></td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td><code>TPM2_Clear Response</code></td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ClearControl Command</code></td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186</td>
<td><code>TPM2_ClearControl Response</code></td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td><code>TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth Command</code></td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td><code>TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth Response</code></td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td><code>TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset Command</code></td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td><code>TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset Response</code></td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td><code>TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters Command</code></td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td><code>TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters Response</code></td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td><code>TPM2_PP_Commands Command</code></td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 194 — TPM2_PP_Commands Response .......................................................... 403
Table 195 — TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet Command .................................................. 406
Table 196 — TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet Response ..................................................... 406
Table 197 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart Command ................................................ 411
Table 198 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart Response .................................................. 411
Table 199 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeData Command ............................................... 414
Table 200 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeData Response ................................................. 414
Table 201 — TPM2_FirmwareRead Command ...................................................... 417
Table 202 — TPM2_FirmwareRead Response ....................................................... 417
Table 203 — TPM2_ContextSave Command ......................................................... 420
Table 204 — TPM2_ContextSave Response .......................................................... 420
Table 205 — TPM2_ContextLoad Command .......................................................... 426
Table 206 — TPM2_ContextLoad Response .......................................................... 426
Table 207 — TPM2_FlushContext Command ....................................................... 431
Table 208 — TPM2_FlushContext Response ......................................................... 431
Table 209 — TPM2_EvictControl Command ....................................................... 435
Table 210 — TPM2_EvictControl Response ......................................................... 435
Table 211 — TPM2_ReadClock Command ............................................................. 439
Table 212 — TPM2_ReadClock Response ............................................................. 439
Table 213 — TPM2_ClockSet Command ............................................................... 442
Table 214 — TPM2_ClockSet Response ............................................................... 442
Table 215 — TPM2_ClockRateAdjust Command .................................................. 445
Table 216 — TPM2_ClockRateAdjust Response .................................................... 445
Table 217 — TPM2_GetCapability Command ...................................................... 451
Table 218 — TPM2_GetCapability Response ....................................................... 451
Table 219 — TPM2_TestParms Command ............................................................ 456
Table 220 — TPM2_TestParms Response ............................................................. 456

Table 221 — TPM2_SetCapability Command ...................................................... 458

Table 222 — TPM2_SetCapability Response ....................................................... 458
Table 223 — Command to handle type mapping ................................................... 461
Table 224 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace Command .................................................. 465
Table 225 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace Response .................................................... 465
Table 226 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace Command ............................................. 468
Table 227 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace Response .............................................. 468
Table 228 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial Command ................................... 471
Table 229 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial Response .................................... 471
Table 230 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic Command .................................................... 474
Table 231 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic Response ..................................................... 474
Table 232 — TPM2_NV_Write Command ............................................................ 477
Part 3: Commands

Table 233 — TPM2_NV_Write Response............................................................................... 477
Table 234 — TPM2_NV_Increment Command................................................................. 481
Table 235 — TPM2_NV_Increment Response ................................................................. 481
Table 236 — TPM2_NV_Extend Command........................................................................ 485
Table 237 — TPM2_NV_Extend Response......................................................................... 485
Table 238 — TPM2_NV_SetBits Command ...................................................................... 489
Table 239 — TPM2_NV_SetBits Response......................................................................... 489
Table 240 — TPM2_NV_WriteLock Command .................................................................. 492
Table 241 — TPM2_NV_WriteLock Response.................................................................... 492
Table 242 — TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock Command ......................................................... 495
Table 243 — TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock Response ......................................................... 495
Table 244 — TPM2_NV_Read Command .......................................................................... 498
Table 245 — TPM2_NV_Read Response........................................................................... 498
Table 246 — TPM2_NV_ReadLock Command ................................................................... 502
Table 247 — TPM2_NV_ReadLock Response..................................................................... 502
Table 248 — TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth Command ............................................................... 505
Table 249 — TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth Response ............................................................... 505
Table 250 — TPM2_NV_Certify Command ...................................................................... 508
Table 251 — TPM2_NV_Certify Response....................................................................... 508
Table 252 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2 Command ............................................................. 512
Table 253 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2 Response ............................................................... 512
Table 254 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2 Command ............................................................... 515
Table 255 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2 Response ............................................................... 515
Table 256 — TPM2_AC_GetCapability Command ........................................................... 518
Table 257 — TPM2_AC_GetCapability Response............................................................. 518
Table 258 — TPM2_AC_Send Command .......................................................................... 520
Table 259 — TPM2_AC_Send Response........................................................................... 521
Table 260 — TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect Command ..................................................... 524
Table 261 — TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect Response ....................................................... 524
Table 262 — TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout Command ............................................................... 527
Table 263 — TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout Response ............................................................... 527
Table 264 — TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test Command ............................................................ 530
Table 265 — TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test Response ............................................................. 530
1 Scope

This TPM 2.0 Part 3 of the Trusted Platform Module Library specification contains the definitions of the TPM commands. These commands make use of the constants, flags, structures, and union definitions defined in TPM 2.0 Part 2.

The detailed description of the operation of the commands is written in the C language with extensive comments. The behavior of the C code in this TPM 2.0 Part 3 is normative but does not fully describe the behavior of a TPM. The combination of this TPM 2.0 Part 3 and TPM 2.0 Part 4 is sufficient to fully describe the required behavior of a TPM.

The code in parts 3 and 4 is written to define the behavior of a compliant TPM. In some cases (e.g., firmware update), it is not possible to provide a compliant implementation. In those cases, any implementation provided by the vendor that meets the general description of the function provided in TPM 2.0 Part 3 would be compliant.

The code in parts 3 and 4 is not written to meet any particular level of conformance nor does this specification require that a TPM meet any particular level of conformance.

2 Terms and Definitions

For the purposes of this document, the terms and definitions given in TPM 2.0 Part 1 apply.

3 Symbols and abbreviated terms

For the purposes of this document, the symbols and abbreviated terms given in TPM 2.0 Part 1 apply.
4 Notation

4.1 Introduction

For the purposes of this document, the notation given in TPM 2.0 Part 1 applies. Command and response tables use various decorations to indicate the fields of the command and the allowed types. These decorations are specified in clause 4.2.

4.2 Table Decorations

4.2.1 Introduction

The symbols and terms in the Notation column of Table 1 are used in the tables for the command schematics. These values indicate various qualifiers for the parameters or descriptions with which they are associated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>A Type decoration – see clause 4.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>A Name decoration - see clause 4.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+PP</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+{PP}</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{NV}</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{F}</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{E}</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth Index:</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth Role:</td>
<td>A Description modifier – see clause 4.2.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.2 Type Decoration +

When appended to a value in the Type column of a command, this symbol indicates that the parameter is allowed to use the optional value of the data type (see TPM 2.0 Part 2, Conditional Types). The optional value is usually TPM_RH_NULL for a handle or TPM_ALG_NULL for an algorithm selector.

NOTE This decoration is not appended to response parameters

4.2.3 Name @

A Name decoration – When this symbol precedes a handle parameter in the “Name” column, it indicates that an authorization session is required for use of the entity associated with the handle. If a handle does not have this symbol, then an authorization session is not allowed.

4.2.4 Description Modifier +PP

This modifier may follow TPM_RH_PLATFORM in the “Description” column to indicate that Physical Presence is required when platformAuth/platformPolicy is provided.
4.2.5 Description Modifier +{PP}

This modifier may follow TPM_RH_PLATFORM to indicate that Physical Presence may be required when platformAuth/platformPolicy is provided. The commands with this notation may be in the setList or clearList of TPM2_PP_Commands().

4.2.6 Description Modifier {NV}

This modifier may follow the commandCode in the “Description” column to indicate that the command may result in an update of NV memory and be subject to rate throttling by the TPM. If the command code does not have this notation, then a write to NV memory does not occur as part of the command actions.

Any command that uses authorization may cause a write to NV if there is an authorization failure. A TPM may use the occasion of command execution to update the NV copy of clock.

4.2.7 Description Modifier {F}

This modifier indicates that the “flushed” attribute will be SET in the TPMA_CC for the command. The modifier may follow the commandCode in the “Description” column to indicate that any transient handle context used by the command will be flushed from the TPM when the command completes. This may be combined with the {NV} modifier but not with the {E} modifier.

EXAMPLE 1 (NV F)
EXAMPLE 2 TPM2_SequenceComplete() will flush the context associated with the sequenceHandle.

4.2.8 Description Modifier {E}

This modifier indicates that the “extensive” attribute will be SET in the TPMA_CC for the command. This modifier may follow the commandCode in the “Description” column to indicate that the command may flush many objects and re-enumeration of the loaded context likely will be required. This may be combined with the {NV} modifier but not with the {F} modifier.

EXAMPLE 1 (NV E)
EXAMPLE 2 TPM2_Clear() will flush all contexts associated with the Storage hierarchy and the Endorsement hierarchy.

4.2.9 Auth Index

When a handle has a “@” decoration, the “Description” column will contain an “Auth Index:” entry for the handle. This entry indicates the number of the authorization session. The authorization sessions associated with handles will occur in the session area in the order of the handles with the “@” modifier. Sessions used only for encryption/decryption or only for audit will follow the handles used for authorization.

4.2.10 Auth Role

This will be in the “Description” column of a handle with the “@” decoration. It may have a value of USER, ADMIN or DUP.

If the handle has the Auth Role of USER and the handle is an Object, the type of authorization is determined by the setting of userWithAuth in the Object's attributes. If the handle is TPM_RH_OWNER, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, or TPM_RH_PLATFORM, operation is as if userWithAuth is SET. If the handle has the Auth Role of ADMIN or DUP, the behavior is as if userWithAuth is CLEAR.
handle references an NV Index, then the allowed authorizations are determined by the settings of the attributes of the NV Index as described in TPM 2.0 Part 2, “TPMA_NV (NV Index Attributes).”

If the Auth Role is ADMIN and the handle is an Object, the type of authorization is determined by the setting of adminWithPolicy in the Object’s attributes. If the handle is TPM_RH_OWNER, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, or TPM_RH_PLATFORM, operation is as if adminWithPolicy is SET. If the handle is an NV index, operation is as if adminWithPolicy is SET (see clause 5.6 e)2).

If the DUP role is selected, authorization may only be with a policy session (DUP role only applies to Objects).

When either ADMIN or DUP role is selected, a policy command that selects the command being authorized is required to be part of the policy.

EXAMPLE TPM2_Certify requires the ADMIN role for the first handle (objectHandle). The policy authorization for objectHandle is required to contain TPM2_PolicyCommandCode(commandCode == TPM_CC_Certify). This sets the state of the policy so that it can be used for ADMIN role authorization in TPM2_Certify().

4.3 Handle and Parameter Demarcation

The demarcations between the header, handle, and parameter parts are indicated by:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2 — Separators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=<em>=</em>=*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4 AuthorizationSize and ParameterSize

Authorization sessions are not shown in the command or response schematics. When the tag of a command or response is TPM_ST_SESSIONS, then a 32-bit value will be present in the command/response buffer to indicate the size of the authorization field or the parameter field. This value shall immediately follow the handle area (which may contain no handles). For a command, this value (authorizationSize) indicates the size of the Authorization Area and shall have a value of 9 or more. For a response, this value (parameterSize) indicates the size of the parameter area and may have a value of zero.

If the authorizationSize field is present in the command, parameterSize will be present in the response, but only if the responseCode is TPM_RC_SUCCESS.

When authorization is required to use the TPM entity associated with a handle, then at least one session will be present. To indicate this, the command tag Description field contains TPM_ST_SESSIONS. Additional sessions for audit, encrypt, and decrypt may be present.

When the command tag Description field contains TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS, then no sessions are allowed and the authorizationSize field is not present.

When a command allows use of sessions when not required, the command tag Description field will indicate the types of sessions that may be used with the command.

4.5 Return Code Alias

For the RC_FMT1 return codes that may add a parameter, handle, or session number, the prefix TPM_RCS_ is an alias for TPM_RC_.

Family “2.0” TCG Public Review Page 4
Level 00 Revision 01.81 Copyright © TCG 2006-2023 November 29, 2023
TPM_RC_n is added, where n is the parameter, handle, or session number. In addition, TPM_RC_H is added for handle, TPM_RC_P for parameter, and TPM_RC_S for session errors.

NOTE TPM_RCS_ is a programming convention used in the reference code. The reference code only adds numbers to TPM_RCS_ return codes, never TPM_RC_ return codes. Only return codes that can have a number added have the TPM_RCS_ alias defined. Attempting to use a TPM_RCS_ return code that does not have the TPM_RCS_ alias will cause a compiler error.

EXAMPLE 1 Since TPM_RC_VALUE can have a number added, TPM_RCS_VALUE is defined. A program can use the construct "TPM_RCS_VALUE + number". Since TPM_RC_SIGNATURE cannot have a number added, TPM_RCS_SIGNATURE is not defined. A program using the construct "TPM_RCS_SIGNATURE + number" will not compile, alerting the programmer that the construct is incorrect.

By convention, the number to be added is of the form RC_CommandName_ParameterName where CommandName is the name of the command with the TPM2_ prefix removed. The parameter name alone is insufficient because the same parameter name could be in a different position in different commands.

EXAMPLE 2 TPM2_HMAC_Start() with parameters that result in TPM_ALG_NULL as the hash algorithm will return TPM_RC_VALUE plus the parameter number. Since hashAlg is the second parameter, this code results:

```
#define RC_HMAC_Start_hashAlg (TPM_RC_P + TPM_RC_2)
return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_HMAC_Start_hashAlg;
```

5 Command Processing

5.1 Introduction

Clause 5 defines the command validations that are required of any implementation and the response code returned if the indicated check fails. Unless stated otherwise, the order of the checks is not normative and different TPM may give different responses when a command has multiple errors.

In the description below, some statements that describe a check may be followed by a response code in parentheses. This is the normative response code should the indicated check fail. A normative response code may also be included in the statement.

5.2 Command Header Validation

Before a TPM may begin the actions associated with a command, a set of command format and consistency checks shall be performed. These checks are listed below and should be performed in the indicated order.

a) The TPM shall successfully unmarshal a TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG and verify that it is either TPM_ST_SESSIONS or TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS (TPM_RC_BAD_TAG).

b) The TPM shall successfully unmarshal a UINT32 as the commandSize. If the TPM has an interface buffer that is loaded by some hardware process, the number of octets in the input buffer for the command reported by the hardware process shall exactly match the value in commandSize (TPM_RC_COMMAND_SIZE).

NOTE A TPM can have direct access to system memory and unmarshal directly from that memory.
c) The TPM shall successfully unmarshal a TPM_CC and verify that the command is implemented (TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE).

5.3 Mode Checks

The following mode checks shall be performed in the order listed:

a) If the TPM is in Failure mode, then the commandCode is TPM_CC_GetTestResult or TPM_CC_GetCapability (TPM_RC_FAILURE) and the command tag is TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS (TPM_RC_FAILURE).

NOTE 1 In Failure mode, the TPM has no cryptographic capability and processing of sessions is not supported.

b) The TPM is in Field Upgrade mode (FUM), the commandCode is TPM_CC_FieldUpgradeData (TPM_RC_UPGRADE).

c) If the TPM has not been initialized (TPM2_Startup()), then the commandCode is TPM_CC_Startup (TPM_RC_INITIALIZE).

NOTE 2 The TPM can enter Failure mode during _TPM_Init processing, before TPM2_Startup(). Since the platform firmware cannot know that the TPM is in Failure mode without accessing it, and since the first command is required to be TPM2_Startup(), the expected sequence will be that platform firmware (the CRTM) will issue TPM2_Startup() and receive TPM_RC_FAILURE indicating that the TPM is in Failure mode.

There can be failures where a TPM cannot record that it received TPM2_Startup(). In those cases, a TPM in failure mode may process TPM2_GetTestResult(), TPM2_GetCapability(), or the field upgrade commands. As a side effect, that TPM may process TPM2_GetTestResult(), TPM2_GetCapability() or the field upgrade commands before TPM2_Startup().

This is a corner case exception to the rule that TPM2_Startup() must be the first command.

The mode checks may be performed before or after the command header validation.

5.4 Handle Area Validation

After successfully unmarshaling and validating the command header, the TPM shall perform the following checks on the handles and sessions. These checks may be performed in any order.

NOTE 1 A TPM is required to perform the handle area validation before the authorization checks because an authorization cannot be performed unless the authorization values and attributes for the referenced entity are known by the TPM. For them to be known, the referenced entity must be in the TPM and accessible.

a) The TPM shall successfully unmarshal the number of handles required by the command and validate that the value of the handle is consistent with the command syntax. If not, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

NOTE 2 The TPM is permitted to unmarshal a handle and validate that it references an entity on the TPM before unmarshaling a subsequent handle.

NOTE 3 If the submitted command contains fewer handles than required by the syntax of the command, the TPM is permitted to continue to read into the next area and attempt to interpret the data as a handle.
For all handles in the handle area of the command, the TPM will validate that the referenced entity is present in the TPM.

1) If the handle references a transient object, the handle shall reference a loaded object (TPM_RC_REFERENCE_H0 + N where N is the number of the handle in the command).

   NOTE 4 If the hierarchy for a transient object is disabled, then the transient objects will be flushed so this check will fail.

2) If the handle references a persistent object, then
   i) the hierarchy associated with the object (platform or storage, based on the handle value) is enabled (TPM_RC_HANDLE);
   ii) the handle shall reference a persistent object that is currently in TPM non-volatile memory (TPM_RC_HANDLE);
   iii) if the handle references a persistent object that is associated with the endorsement hierarchy, that the endorsement hierarchy is not disabled (TPM_RC_HANDLE); and

      NOTE 5 The reference implementation keeps an internal attribute, passed down from a primary key to its descendants, indicating the object's hierarchy.

   iv) if the TPM implementation moves a persistent object to RAM for command processing then sufficient RAM space is available (TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY).

3) If the handle references an NV Index, then
   i) an Index exists that corresponds to the handle (TPM_RC_HANDLE); and
   ii) the hierarchy associated with the existing NV Index is not disabled (TPM_RC_HANDLE).
   iii) If the command requires write access to the index data, then TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED is not SET (TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED)
   iv) If the command requires read access to the index data, then TPMA_NV_READLOCKED is not SET (TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED)

4) If the handle references a session, then the session context shall be present in TPM memory (TPM_RC_REFERENCE_H0 + N).

5) If the handle references a primary seed for a hierarchy (TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TPM_RH_OWNER, or TPM_RH_PLATFORM) then the enable for the hierarchy is SET (TPM_RC_HIERARCHY).

6) If the handle references a PCR, then the value is within the range of PCR supported by the TPM (TPM_RC_VALUE)

   NOTE 6 In the reference implementation, this TPM_RC_VALUE is returned by the unmarshaling code for a TPMI_DH_PCR.
5.5 Session Area Validation

a) If the tag is TPM_ST_SESSIONS and the command requires TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS, the TPM will return TPM_RC_AUTH_CONTEXT.

b) If the tag is TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS and the command requires TPM_ST_SESSIONS, the TPM will return TPM_RC_AUTH_MISSING.

c) If the tag is TPM_ST_SESSIONS, the TPM will attempt to unmarshal an authorizationSize and return TPM_RC_AUTHSIZE if the value is not within an acceptable range.

   1) The minimum value is (sizeof(TPM_HANDLE) + sizeof(UINT16) + sizeof(TPMA_SESSION) + sizeof(UINT16)).

   2) The maximum value of authorizationSize is equal to commandSize – (sizeof(TPM_ST) + sizeof(UINT32) + sizeof(TPM_CC) + (N * sizeof(TPM_HANDLE)) + sizeof(UINT32)) where N is the number of handles associated with the commandCode and may be zero.

   NOTE 1
   (sizeof(TPM_ST) + sizeof(UINT32) + sizeof(TPM_CC)) is the size of a command header. The last UINT32 contains the authorizationSize octets, which are not counted as being in the authorization session area.

   d) The TPM will unmarshal the authorization sessions and perform the following validations:

      1) If the session handle is not a handle for an HMAC session, a handle for a policy session, or, TPM_RS_PW then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

      2) If the session is not loaded, the TPM will return the warning TPM_RC_REFERENCE_S0 + N where N is the number of the session. The first session is session zero, N = 0.

      NOTE 2
      If the HMAC and policy session contexts use the same memory, the type of the context is required to match the type of the handle.

      3) If the maximum allowed number of sessions have been unmarshaled and fewer octets than indicated in authorizationSize were unmarshaled (that is, authorizationSize is too large), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_AUTHSIZE.

      4) The consistency of the authorization session attributes is checked.

         i) Only one session is allowed for:

             (a) session auditing (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES) – this session may be used for encrypt or decrypt but may not be a session that is also used for authorization (including a policy session);

             (b) decrypting a command parameter (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES) – this may be any of the authorization sessions, or the audit session, or a session may be added for the single purpose of decrypting a command parameter, as long as the total number of sessions does not exceed three; and

             (c) encrypting a response parameter (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES) – this may be any of the authorization sessions, or the audit session if present, or a session may be added for the single purpose of encrypting a response parameter, as long as the total number of sessions does not exceed three.

      NOTE 3
      A session used for decrypting a command parameter can also be used for encrypting a response parameter.
ii) If a session is not being used for authorization, at least one of decrypt, encrypt, or audit must be SET. (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

5) An authorization session is present for each of the handles with the "@" decoration (TPM_RC_AUTH_MISSING).

5.6 Authorization Checks

After unmarshaling and validating the handles and the consistency of the authorization sessions, the authorizations shall be checked. Authorization checks only apply to handles if the handle in the command schematic has the "@" decoration. Authorization checks must be performed in this order.

a) The public and sensitive portions of the object shall be present on the TPM (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE).

b) If the associated handle is TPM_RH_PLATFORM, and the command requires confirmation with physical presence, then physical presence is asserted (TPM_RC_PP).

c) If the object or NV Index is subject to DA protection, and the authorization is with an HMAC or password, then the TPM is not in lockout (TPM_RC_LOCKOUT).

NOTE 1 An object is subject to DA protection if its noDA attribute is CLEAR. An NV Index is subject to DA protection if its TPMA_NV_NO_DA attribute is CLEAR.

NOTE 2 An HMAC or password is required in a policy session when the policy contains TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() or TPM2_PolicyPassword().

d) If the command requires a handle to have DUP role authorization, then the associated authorization session is a policy session (TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE).

e) If the command requires a handle to have ADMIN role authorization:

1) If the entity being authorized is an object and its adminWithPolicy attribute is SET, or a hierarchy, then the authorization session is a policy session (TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE).

NOTE 3 If adminWithPolicy is CLEAR, then any type of authorization session is allowed.

2) If the entity being authorized is an NV Index, then the associated authorization session is a policy session.

NOTE 4 The only commands that are currently defined that require use of ADMIN role authorization are commands that operate on objects and NV Indices.

f) If the command requires a handle to have ADMIN or DUP role authorization and the entity is being authorized with a policy session, that TPM2_PolicyCommandCode is part of the policy. (TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL).

g) If the command requires a handle to have USER role authorization:

1) If the entity being authorized is an object and its userWithAuth attribute is CLEAR, then the associated authorization session is a policy session (TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL).

NOTE 5 There is no check for a hierarchy, because a hierarchy operates as if userWithAuth is SET.
Part 3: Commands

2) If the entity being authorized is an NV Index;
   i) if the authorization session is a policy session;
      (a) the TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE attribute of the NV Index is SET if the command modifies
          the NV Index data (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE);
      (b) the TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD attribute of the NV Index is SET if the command reads the
          NV Index data (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE);
   ii) if the authorization is an HMAC session or a password;
      (a) the TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE attribute of the NV Index is SET if the command modifies
          the NV Index data (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE);
      (b) the TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD attribute of the NV Index is SET if the command reads the
          NV Index data or is TPM2_PolicySecret (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE).

h) If the authorization is provided by a policy session, then:
   1) if \textit{policySession} → timeOut has been set, the session shall not have expired
      (TPM_RC_EXPIRED);
   2) if \textit{policySession} → cpHash has been set, it shall match the \textit{cpHash} of the command
      (TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL);
   3) if \textit{policySession} → commandCode has been set, then \textit{commandCode} of the command shall match
      (TPM_RC_POLICY_CC);
   4) \textit{policySession} → policyDigest shall match the \textit{authPolicy} associated with the handle
      (TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL);
   5) if \textit{policySession} → pcrUpdateCounter has been set, then it shall match the value of
      \textit{pcrUpdateCounter} (TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED);
   6) if \textit{policySession} → commandLocality has been set, it shall match the locality of the command
      (TPM_RC_LOCALITY);
   7) if \textit{policySession} → cpHash contains a template, and the command is TPM2_Create(),
      TPM2_CreatePrimary(), or TPM2_CreateLoaded(), then the \textit{inPublic} parameter matches the
      contents of \textit{policySession} → cpHash; and
   8) if the policy requires that an authValue be provided in order to satisfy the policy, then
      \textit{session.hmac} is not an Empty Buffer.

i) If the authorization uses an HMAC, then the HMAC is properly constructed using the \textit{authValue}
   associated with the handle and/or the session secret (TPM_RC_AUTH_FAIL or
   TPM_RC_BAD_AUTH).

\textbf{NOTE 6} A policy session can require proof of knowledge of the authValue of the object being
authorized.

j) If the authorization uses a password, then the password matches the \textit{authValue} associated with the
   handle (TPM_RC_AUTH_FAIL or TPM_RC_BAD_AUTH).

If the TPM returns an error other than TPM_RC_AUTH_FAIL, then the TPM shall not alter any TPM state.
If the TPM returns TPM_RC_AUTH_FAIL, then the TPM shall not alter any TPM state other than
\textit{failedTries}.

\textbf{NOTE 7} The TPM is permitted to decrease \textit{failedTries} regardless of any other processing performed by the
TPM. That is, the TPM can exit Lockout mode, regardless of the return code.
5.7 Parameter Decryption

If an authorization session has the TPMA_SESSION.decrypt attribute SET, and the command does not allow a command parameter to be encrypted, then the TPM will return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. Otherwise, the TPM will decrypt the parameter using the values associated with the session before parsing parameters.

NOTE The size of the parameter to be encrypted can be zero.

5.8 Parameter Unmarshaling

5.8.1 Introduction

The detailed actions for each command assume that the input parameters of the command have been unmarshaled into a command-specific structure with the structure defined by the command schematic. Additionally, a response-specific output structure is assumed which will receive the values produced by the detailed actions.

NOTE An implementation is not required to process parameters in this manner or to separate the parameter parsing from the command actions. This method was chosen for the specification so that the normative behavior described by the detailed actions would be clear and unencumbered.

Unmarshaling is the process of processing the parameters in the input buffer and preparing the parameters for use by the command-specific action code. No data movement need take place, but it is required that the TPM validate that the parameters meet the requirements of the expected data type as defined in TPM 2.0 Part 2.

5.8.2 Unmarshaling Errors

When an error is encountered while unmarshaling a command parameter, an error response code is returned, and no command processing occurs. A table defining a data type may have response codes embedded in the table to indicate the error returned when the input value does not match the parameters of the table.

NOTE In the reference implementation, a parameter number is added to the response code so that the offending parameter can be isolated. This is optional.

In many cases, the table contains no specific response code value, and the return code will be determined as defined in Table 3.
Table 3 — Unmarshaling Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Response Code</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RCASYMMETRIC</td>
<td>a parameter that should be an asymmetric algorithm selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_BAD_TAG</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a command tag selection has a value that is not supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a command code does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_HASH</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a hash algorithm selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT</td>
<td>the input buffer did not contain enough octets to allow unmarshaling of the expected data type;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_KDF</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a key derivation scheme (KDF) selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_KEY_SIZE</td>
<td>a parameter that is a key size has a value that is not supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_MODE</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a symmetric encryption mode selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_RESERVED</td>
<td>a non-zero value was found in a reserved field of an attribute structure (TPMA_)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SCHEME</td>
<td>a parameter that should be signing or encryption scheme selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SIZE</td>
<td>the value of a size parameter is larger or smaller than allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a symmetric algorithm selection does not have a value that is supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_TAG</td>
<td>a parameter that should be a structure tag has a value that is not supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_TYPE</td>
<td>The type parameter of a TPMT_PUBLIC or TPMT_SENSITIVE has a value that is not supported by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_VALUE</td>
<td>a parameter does not have one of its allowed values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some commands, a parameter may not be used because of various options of that command. However, the unmarshaling code is required to validate that all parameters have values that are allowed by the TPM 2.0 Part 2 definition of the parameter type even if that parameter is not used in the command actions.

5.9 Command Post Processing

When the code that implements the detailed actions of the command completes, it returns a response code. If that code is not TPM_RC_SUCCESS, the post processing code will not update any session or audit data and will return a 10-octet response packet.

If the command completes successfully, the tag of the command determines if any authorization sessions will be in the response. If so, the TPM will encrypt the first parameter of the response if indicated by the authorization attributes. The TPM will then generate a new nonce value for each session and, if appropriate, generate an HMAC.

If authorization HMAC computations are performed on the response, the HMAC keys used in the response will be the same as the HMAC keys used in processing the HMAC in the command.

NOTE 1 This primarily affects authorizations associated with a first write to an NV Index using a bound session. The computation of the HMAC in the response is performed as if the Name of the Index did not change as a consequence of the command actions. The session binding to the NV Index will not persist to any subsequent command.
NOTE 2 The authorization attributes were validated during the session area validation to ensure that only one session was used for parameter encryption of the response and that the command allowed encryption in the response.

NOTE 3 No session nonce value is used for a password authorization, but the session data is present.

Additionally, if the command is being audited by Command Audit, the audit digest is updated with the $cpHash$ of the command and $rpHash$ of the response.
6  Response Values

6.1  Tag

When a command completes successfully, the tag parameter in the response shall have the same value as the tag parameter in the command (TPM_ST_SESSIONS or TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS). When a command fails (the responseCode is not TPM_RC_SUCCESS), then the tag parameter in the response shall be TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS.

A special case exists when the command tag parameter is not an allowed value (TPM_ST_SESSIONS or TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS). For this case, it is assumed that the system software is attempting to send a command formatted for a TPM 1.2, but the TPM is not capable of executing TPM 1.2 commands. So that the TPM 1.2 compatible software will have a recognizable response, the TPM sets tag to TPM_ST_RSP_COMMAND, responseSize to 00 00 00 0A 16 and responseCode to TPM_RC_BAD_TAG. This is the same response as the TPM 1.2 fatal error for TPM_BADTAG.

6.2  Response Codes

The normal response for any command is TPM_RC_SUCCESS. Any other value indicates that the command did not complete and the state of the TPM is unchanged. An exception to this general rule is that the logic associated with dictionary attack protection is allowed to be modified when an authorization failure occurs.

Commands have response codes that are specific to that command, and those response codes are enumerated in the detailed actions of each command. The codes associated with the unmarshaling of parameters are documented Table 3. Another set of response code values are not command specific and indicate a problem that is not specific to the command. That is, if the indicated problem is remedied, the same command could be resubmitted and may complete normally.

The response codes that are not command specific are listed and described in Table 4.

The reference code for the command actions may have code that generates specific response codes associated with a specific check, but the listing of responses may not have that response code listed.
### Table 4 — Command-Independent Response Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Response Code</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_CANCELED</td>
<td>This response code may be returned by a TPM that supports command cancel. When the TPM receives an indication that the current command should be cancelled, the TPM may complete the command or return this code. If this code is returned, then the TPM state is not changed, and the same command may be retried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP</td>
<td>This response code can be returned for commands that manage session contexts. It indicates that the gap between the lowest numbered active session and the highest numbered session is at the limits of the session tracking logic. The remedy is to load the session context with the lowest number so that its tracking number can be updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_LOCKOUT</td>
<td>This response indicates that authorizations for objects subject to DA protection are not allowed at this time because the TPM is in DA lockout mode. The remedy is to wait or to execute TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockoutReset().</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_MEMORY</td>
<td>A TPM may use a common pool of memory for objects, sessions, and other purposes. When the TPM does not have enough memory available to perform the actions of the command, it may return TPM_RC_MEMORY. This indicates that the TPM resource manager may flush either sessions or objects in order to make memory available for the command execution. A TPM may choose to return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY or TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY if it needs contexts of a particular type to be flushed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_NV_RATE</td>
<td>This response code indicates that the TPM is rate-limiting writes to the NV memory in order to prevent wearout. This response is possible for any command that explicitly writes to NV or commands that incidentally use NV such as a command that uses authorization session that may need to update the dictionary attack logic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE</td>
<td>This response code is similar to TPM_RC_NV_RATE but indicates that access to NV memory is currently not available and the command is not allowed to proceed until it is. This would occur in a system where the NV memory used by the TPM is not exclusive to the TPM and is a shared system resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_OBJECT_HANDLES</td>
<td>This response code indicates that the TPM has exhausted its handle space and no new objects can be loaded unless the TPM is rebooted. This does not occur in the reference implementation because of the way that object handles are allocated. However, other implementations are allowed to assign each object a unique handle each time the object is loaded. A TPM using this implementation would be able to load $2^{24}$ objects before the object space is exhausted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY</td>
<td>This response code can be returned by any command that causes the TPM to need an object 'slot'. The most common case where this might be returned is when an object is loaded (TPM2_Load, TPM2_CreatePrimary(), or TPM2_ContextLoad()). However, the TPM implementation is allowed to use object slots for other reasons. In the reference implementation, the TPM copies a referenced persistent object into RAM for the duration of the command. If all the slots are previously occupied, the TPM may return this value. A TPM is allowed to use object slots for other purposes and return this value. The remedy when this response is returned is for the TPM resource manager to flush a transient object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_REFERENCE_Hx</td>
<td>This response code indicates that a handle in the handle area of the command is not associated with a loaded object. The value of ‘x’ is in the range 0 to 6 with a value of 0 indicating the 1st handle and 6 representing the 7th. Upper values are provided for future use. The TPM resource manager needs to find the correct object and load it. It may then adjust the handle and retry the command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE** Usually, this error indicates that the TPM resource manager has a corrupted database.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Response Code</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_REFERENCE_Sx</td>
<td>This response code indicates that a handle in the session area of the command is not associated with a loaded session. The value of 'x' is in the range 0 to 6 with a value of 0 indicating the 1st session handle and 6 representing the 7th. Upper values are provided for future use. The TPM resource manager needs to find the correct session and load it. It may then retry the command. NOTE Usually, this error indicates that the TPM resource manager has a corrupted database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_RETRY</td>
<td>the TPM was not able to start the command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SESSION_HANDLES</td>
<td>This response code indicates that the TPM does not have a handle to assign to a new session. This response is only returned by TPM2_StartAuthSession(). It is listed here because the command is not in error and the TPM resource manager can remedy the situation by flushing a session (TPM2_FlushContext()).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY</td>
<td>This response code can be returned by any command that causes the TPM to need a session 'slot'. The most common case where this might be returned is when a session is loaded (TPM2_StartAuthSession() or TPM2_ContextLoad()). However, the TPM implementation is allowed to use object slots for other purposes. The remedy when this response is returned is for the TPM resource manager to flush a transient object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Normal completion for any command. If the responseCode is TPM_RC_SUCCESS, then the rest of the response has the format indicated in the response schematic. Otherwise, the response is a 10 octet value indicating an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_TESTING</td>
<td>This response code indicates that the TPM is performing tests and cannot respond to the request at this time. The command may be retried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC_YIELDED</td>
<td>the TPM has suspended operation on the command; forward progress was made, and the command may be retried (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Multi-tasking). NOTE This cannot occur on the reference implementation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7 Implementation Dependent

The actions code for each command makes assumptions about the behavior of various sub-systems. There are many possible implementations of the subsystems that would achieve equivalent results. The actions code is not written to anticipate all possible implementations of the sub-systems. Therefore, it is the responsibility of the implementer to ensure that the necessary changes are made to the actions code when the sub-system behavior changes.
8 Detailed Actions Assumptions

8.1 Introduction

The C code in the Detailed Actions for each command is written with a set of assumptions about the processing performed before the action code is called and the processing that will be done after the action code completes.

8.2 Pre-processing

Before calling the command actions code, the following actions have occurred.

- Verification that the handles in the handle area reference entities that are resident on the TPM.
  
  **NOTE** If a handle is in the parameter portion of the command, the associated entity does not have to be loaded, but the handle is required to be the correct type.

- If use of a handle requires authorization, the Password, HMAC, or Policy session associated with the handle has been verified.

- If a command parameter was encrypted using parameter encryption, it was decrypted before being unmarshaled.

- If the command uses handles or parameters, the calling stack contains a pointer to a data structure \( \text{(in)} \) that holds the unmarshaled values for the handles and command parameters. If the response has handles or parameters, the calling stack contains a pointer to a data structure \( \text{(out)} \) to hold the handles and response parameters generated by the command.

- All parameters of the \( \text{(in)} \) structure have been validated and meet the requirements of the parameter type as defined in TPM 2.0 Part 2.

- Space set aside for the \( \text{(out)} \) structure is sufficient to hold the largest \( \text{(out)} \) structure that could be produced by the command

8.3 Post Processing

When the function implementing the command actions completes,

- response parameters that require parameter encryption will be encrypted after the command actions complete;

- audit and session contexts will be updated if the command response is TPM_RC_SUCCESS; and

- the command header and command response parameters will be marshaled to the response buffer.
9 Start-up

9.1 Introduction

Clause 9 contains the commands used to manage the startup and restart state of a TPM.

9.2 _TPM_Init

9.2.1 General Description

_TPM_Init initializes a TPM.

Initialization actions include testing code required to execute the next expected command. If the TPM is in FUM, the next expected command is TPM2_FieldUpgradeData(); otherwise, the next expected command is TPM2_Startup().

NOTE 1: If the TPM performs self-tests after receiving _TPM_Init() and the TPM enters Failure mode before receiving TPM2_Startup() or TPM2_FieldUpgradeData(), then the TPM is permitted to accept TPM2_GetTestResult() or TPM2_GetCapability().

The means of signaling _TPM_Init shall be defined in the platform-specific specifications that define the physical interface to the TPM. The platform shall send this indication whenever the platform starts its boot process and only when the platform starts its boot process.

There shall be no software method of generating this indication that does not also reset the platform and begin execution of the CRTM.

NOTE 2: In the reference implementation, this signal causes an internal flag (s_initialized) to be CLEAR. While this flag is CLEAR, the TPM will only accept the next expected command described above.
9.2.2 Detailed Actions

9.2.2.1 /tpm/src/events/_TPM_Init.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
// TODO_RENAME_INC_FOLDER:platform_interface refers to the TPM_CoreLib platform
// interface
#include <platform_interface/prototypes/_TPM_Init_fp.h>

// This function is used to process a _TPM_Init indication.
LIB_EXPORT void _TPM_Init(void)
{
    g_powerWasLost = g_powerWasLost | _plat__WasPowerLost();
    #if SIMULATION && DEBUG
        // If power was lost and this was a simulation, put canary in RAM used by NV
        // so that uninitialized memory can be detected more easily
        if(g_powerWasLost)
        {
            memset(&gc, 0xbb, sizeof(gc));
            memset(&gr, 0xbb, sizeof(gr));
            memset(&gp, 0xbb, sizeof(gp));
            memset(&go, 0xbb, sizeof(go));
        }
    #endif
    #if ALLOW_FORCE_FAILURE_MODE
        // Clear the flag that forces failure on self-test
        g_forceFailureMode = FALSE;
    #endif
    #if ACT_SUPPORT
        _plat__ACT_EnableTicks(FALSE);
    #endif
    // Set initialization state
    TPMInit();
    // Set g_DRTMHandle as unassigned
    g_DRTMHandle = TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED;
    // No H-CRTM, yet.
    g_DrtmPreStartup = FALSE;
    // Initialize the NvEnvironment.
    g_nvOk = NvPowerOn();
    // Initialize cryptographic functions
    g_inFailureMode = (g_nvOk == FALSE) || (CryptInit() == FALSE);
    if(!g_inFailureMode)
    {
        // Load the persistent data
        NvReadPersistent();
        // Load the orderly data (clock and DRBG state).
        // If this is not done here, things break
        NvRead(&go, NV_ORDERLY_DATA, sizeof(go));
        // Start clock. Need to do this after NV has been restored.
        TimePowerOn();
    }
    return;
}
```
9.3 TPM2_Startup

9.3.1 General Description

TPM2_Startup() is always preceded by _TPM_Init, which is the physical indication that TPM initialization is necessary because of a system-wide reset. TPM2_Startup() is only valid after _TPM_Init. Additional TPM2_Startup() commands are not allowed after it has completed successfully. If a TPM requires TPM2_Startup() and another command is received, or if the TPM receives TPM2_Startup() when it is not required, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_INITIALIZE.

NOTE 1 See clause 9.2.1 for other command options for a TPM supporting field upgrade mode.

NOTE 2 _TPM_Hash_Start, _TPM_Hash_Data, and _TPM_Hash_End are not commands, and a platform-specific specification may allow these indications between _TPM_Init and TPM2_Startup().

If in Failure mode, the TPM shall accept TPM2_GetTestResult() and TPM2_GetCapability() even if TPM2_Startup() is not completed successfully or processed at all.

A platform-specific specification may restrict the localities at which TPM2_Startup() may be received.

A Shutdown/Startup sequence determines the way in which the TPM will operate in response to TPM2_Startup(). The three sequences are:

TPM Reset – This is a Startup(CLEAR) preceded by either Shutdown(CLEAR) or no TPM2_Shutdown(). On TPM Reset, all variables go back to their default initialization state.

NOTE 3 Only those values that are specified as having a default initialization state are changed by TPM Reset. Persistent values that have no default initialization state are not changed by this command. Values such as seeds have no default initialization state and only change due to specific commands.

TPM Restart – This is a Startup(CLEAR) preceded by Shutdown(STATE). This preserves much of the previous state of the TPM except that PCR and the controls associated with the Platform hierarchy are all returned to their default initialization state;

TPM Resume – This is a Startup(STATE) preceded by Shutdown(STATE). This preserves the previous state of the TPM including the static Root of Trust for Measurement (S-RTM) PCR and the platform controls other than the phEnable.

If a TPM receives Startup(STATE) and that was not preceded by Shutdown(STATE), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

If, during TPM Restart or TPM Resume, the TPM fails to restore the state saved at the last Shutdown(STATE), the TPM shall enter Failure Mode and return TPM_RC_FAILURE.

On any TPM2_Startup(),
- phEnable shall be SET;
- all transient contexts (objects, sessions, and sequences) shall be flushed from TPM memory;

NOTE 4 See Part 1 Time for a description of the TPMS_TIME_INFO.time behavior.

- use of lockoutAuth shall be enabled if lockoutRecovery is zero.

Additional actions are performed based on the Shutdown/Startup sequence.
On TPM Reset:

- `platformAuth` and `platformPolicy` shall be set to the Empty Buffer,
- change `nullProof` and `nullSeed`,
- For each NV Index with TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE CLEAR or TPMA_NV_WRITTEN CLEAR, TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED shall be CLEAR,
- For each NV Index with TPMA_NV_ORDERLY SET, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN shall be CLEAR unless the type is TPM_NT_COUNTER,
- On a disorderly reset, advance the orderly counters,
- For each NV Index with TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR SET, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN shall be CLEAR,
- tracking data for saved session contexts shall be set to its initial value,
- the object context sequence number is reset to zero,
- a new context encryption key shall be generated,
- TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.restartCount shall be reset to zero,
- TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.resetCount shall be incremented,
- the PCR Update Counter (`pcrUpdateCounter`) shall be clear to zero,

**NOTE 5** Because the PCR update counter is permitted to be incremented when a PCR is reset, the PCR resets performed as part of this command can result in the PCR update counter being non-zero at the end of this command.

- `phEnableNV`, `shEnable` and `ehEnable` shall be SET, and
- PCR in all banks are reset to their default initial conditions as determined by the relevant platform-specific specification and the H-CRTM state (for exceptions, see TPM 2.0 Part 1, `H-CRTM before TPM2_Startup()` and `TPM2_Startup without H-CRTM`),
- For each ACT the timeout is reset to zero, the `signaled` attribute is set to CLEAR, its `authPolicy` is set to the Empty Buffer, and its `hashAlg` is set to TPM_ALG_NULL.

**NOTE 6** PCR can be initialized any time between _TPM_Init and the end of TPM2_Startup(). PCR that are preserved by TPM Resume will need to be restored during TPM2_Startup().

**NOTE 7** See "Initializing PCR" in TPM 2.0 Part 1 for a description of the default initial conditions for a PCR.

On TPM Restart:

- TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.restartCount shall be incremented,
- `phEnableNV`, `shEnable` and `ehEnable` shall be SET,
- `platformAuth` and `platformPolicy` shall be set to the Empty Buffer,
- For each NV index with TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE CLEAR or TPMA_NV_WRITTEN CLEAR, TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED shall be CLEAR,
- For each NV index with TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR SET, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN shall be CLEAR, and
- PCR in all banks are reset to their default initial conditions as determined by the relevant platform-specific specification and the H-CRTM state (for exceptions, see TPM 2.0 Part 1, `H-CRTM before TPM2_Startup()` and `TPM2_Startup without H-CRTM`),

**NOTE 8** The PCR Update Counter (`pcrUpdateCounter`) is not modified.
• For each ACT the timeout is reset to zero, the signaled attribute is set to CLEAR, its authPolicy is set to the Empty Buffer and its hashAlg is set to TPM_ALG_NULL.

On TPM Resume:
• the H-CRTM startup method is the same for this TPM2_Startup() as for the previous TPM2_Startup(); (TPM_RC_LOCALITY)
• TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.restartCount shall be incremented; and
• PCR that are specified in a platform-specific specification to be preserved on TPM Resume are restored to their saved state and other PCR are set to their initial value as determined by a platform-specific specification. For constraints, see TPM 2.0 Part 1, H-CRTM before TPM2_Startup() and TPM2_Startup without H-CRTM.
  • The ACT timeout, the ACT signaled attribute and the ACT specific authPolicy values are preserved.

Other TPM state may change as required to meet the needs of the implementation.

If the startupType is TPM_SU_STATE and the TPM requires TPM_SU_CLEAR, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

NOTE 9 The TPM will require TPM_SU_CLEAR when no shutdown was performed or after Shutdown(CLEAR).

NOTE 10 If startupType is neither TPM_SU_STATE nor TPM_SU_CLEAR, then the unmarshaling code returns TPM_RC_VALUE.
9.3.2 Command and Response

Table 5 — TPM2_Startup Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Startup (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_SU</td>
<td>startupType</td>
<td>TPM_SU_CLEAR or TPM_SU_STATE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 — TPM2_Startup Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.3.3 Detailed Actions

9.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Startup/Startup.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Startup_fp.h"

#if CC_Startup   // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Initialize TPM because a system-wide reset
 */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_LOCALITY a Startup(STATE) does not have the same H-CRTM
// state as the previous Startup() or the locality
// of the startup is not 0 or 3
// TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED the saved state cannot be recovered and a
// Startup(CLEAR) is required.
// TPM_RC_VALUE 'startup' type is not compatible with previous
// shutdown sequence

TPM_RC
TPM2_Startup(Startup_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    STARTUP_TYPE startup;
    BYTE locality = _plat__LocalityGet();
    BOOL OK       = TRUE;
    //
    // The command needs NV update.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
    // Get the flags for the current startup locality and the H-CRTM.
    // Rather than generalizing the locality setting, this code takes advantage
    // of the fact that the PC Client specification only allows Startup()
    // from locality 0 and 3. To generalize this probably would require a
    // redo of the NV space and since this is a feature that is hardly ever used
    // outside of the PC Client, this code just support the PC Client needs.
    // Input Validation
    // Check that the locality is a supported value
    if(locality != 0 && locality != 3)
        return TPM_RC_LOCALITY;
    // If there was a H-CRTM, then treat the locality as being 3
    // regardless of what the Startup() was. This is done to preserve the
    // H-CRTM PCR so that they don't get overwritten with the normal
    // PCR startup initialization. This basically means that g_StartupLocality3
    // and g_DrtmPreStartup can't both be SET at the same time.
    if(g_DrtmPreStartup)
        locality = 0;
    g_StartupLocality3 = (locality == 3);
    #if USE_DA_USED
    // If there was no orderly shutdown, then there might have been a write to
    // failedTries that didn't get recorded but only if g_daUsed was SET in the
    // shutdown state
    g_daUsed = (gp.orderlyState == SU_DA_USED_VALUE);
    if(g_daUsed)
        gp.orderlyState = SU_NONE_VALUE;
    # endif
    g_prevOrderlyState = gp.orderlyState;
```

// If there was a proper shutdown, then the startup modifiers are in the
// orderlyState. Turn them off in the copy.
if(IS_ORDERLY(g_prevOrderlyState))
    g_prevOrderlyState &= ~(PRE_STARTUP_FLAG | STARTUP_LOCALITY_3);
// If this is a Resume,
if(in->startupType == TPM_SU_STATE)
{
    // then there must have been a prior TPM2_ShutdownState(STATE)
    if(g_prevOrderlyState != TPM_SU_STATE)
        // and the part of NV used for state save must have been recovered
        // correctly.
        // NOTE: if this fails, then the caller will need to do Startup(CLEAR). The
        // code for Startup(Clear) cannot fail if the NV can't be read correctly
        // because that would prevent the TPM from ever getting unstuck.
        if(g_nvOk == FALSE)
            return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED;
    // For Resume, the H-CRTM has to be the same as the previous boot
    if(g_DrtmPreStartup != ((gp.orderlyState & PRE_STARTUP_FLAG) != 0))
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_Startup_startupType;
    // that is cleared on a startup CLEAR because this is not a Reset
    // or Restart.
    NvRead(&gc, NV_STATE_CLEAR_DATA, sizeof(gc));
    startup = SU_RESUME;
    }
else
    startup = SU_RESTART;
    }
else
    // Will do a TPM reset if Shutdown(CLEAR) and Startup(CLEAR) or no shutdown
    // or there was a failure reading the NV data.
    startup = SU_RESET;
    // Startup for cryptographic library. Don’t do this until after the orderly
    // state has been read in from NV.
    OK = OK && CryptStartup(startup);
    // When the cryptographic library has been started, indicate that a TPM2_Startup
    // command has been received.
    OK = OK && TPMRegisterStartup();
    # if VENDOR_PERMANENT_AUTH_ENABLED == YES
    // Read the platform unique value that is used as VENDOR_PERMANENT_AUTH_HANDLE
    // authorization value
    g_platformUniqueAuth.t.size = (UINT16)_plat__GetUniqueAuth(1, sizeof(g_platformUniqueAuth.t.buffer), g_platformUniqueAuth.t.buffer);
    # endif
    // Start up subsystems
    // Start set the safe flag
    OK = OK && TimeStartup(startup);
// Start dictionary attack subsystem
OK = OK && DAStartup(startup);

// Enable hierarchies
OK = OK && HierarchyStartup(startup);

// Restore/Initialize PCR
OK = OK && PCRStartup(startup, locality);

// Restore/Initialize command audit information
OK = OK && CommandAuditStartup(startup);

// Restore the ACT
#if ACT_SUPPORT
OK = OK && ActStartup(startup);
#endif

// The following code was moved from Time.c where it made no sense
if(OK)
{
    switch(startup)
    {
        case SU_RESUME:
            // Resume sequence
            gr.restartCount++;
            break;
        case SU_RESTART:
            // Hibernate sequence
            gr.clearCount++;
            gr.restartCount++;
            break;
        case SU_RESET:
            default:
            // Reset object context ID to 0
            gr.objectContextID = 0;
            // Reset clearCount to 0
            gr.clearCount = 0;

            // Reset sequence
            // Increase resetCount
            gp.resetCount++;

            // Write resetCount to NV
            NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(resetCount);

            gp.totalResetCount++;
            // We do not expect the total reset counter overflow during the life
            // time of TPM. if it ever happens, TPM will be put to failure mode
            // and there is no way to recover it.
            // The reason that there is no recovery is that we don't increment
            // the NV totalResetCount when incrementing would make it 0. When the
            // TPM starts up again, the old value of totalResetCount will be read
            // and we will get right back to here with the increment failing.
            if(gp.totalResetCount == 0)
                FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);

            // Write total reset counter to NV
            NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(totalResetCount);

            // Reset restartCount
            gr.restartCount = 0;

            break;
    }
} // Initialize session table
OK = OK && SessionStartup(startup);

// Initialize object table
OK = OK && ObjectStartup();

// Initialize index/evict data. This function clears read/write locks
// in NV index
OK = OK && NvEntityStartup(startup);

// Initialize the orderly shut down flag for this cycle to SU_NONE_VALUE.
gp.orderlyState = SU_NONE_VALUE;

OK              = OK && NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(orderlyState);

// This can be reset after the first completion of a TPM2_Startup() after
// a power loss. It can probably be reset earlier but this is an OK place.
if(OK)
    g_powerWasLost = FALSE;
return (OK) ? TPM_RC_SUCCESS : TPM_RC_FAILURE;

#endif // CC_Startup
9.4 TPM2_Shutdown

9.4.1 General Description

This command is used to prepare the TPM for a power cycle. The `shutdownType` parameter indicates how the subsequent TPM2_Startup() will be processed.

For a `shutdownType` of any type, the volatile portion of Clock is saved to NV memory and the orderly shutdown indication is SET. NV indexes with the TPMA_NV_ORDERLY attribute will be updated.

For a `shutdownType` of TPM_SU_STATE, the following additional items are saved:

- tracking information for saved session contexts;
- the session context counter;
- PCR that are designated as being preserved by TPM2_Shutdown(TPM_SU_STATE);
- the PCR Update Counter (pcrUpdateCounter);
- flags associated with supporting the TPMA_NV_WRITESTCLEAR and TPMA_NV_READSTCLEAR attributes;
- the counter value and authPolicy for each ACT; and

  NOTE If a counter has not been updated since the last TPM2_Startup(), then the saved value will be one half of the current counter value.

- the command audit digest and count.

The following items shall not be saved and will not be in TPM memory after the next TPM2_Startup:

- TPM-memory-resident session contexts;
- TPM-memory-resident transient objects; or
- TPM-memory-resident hash contexts created by TPM2_HashSequenceStart().

Some values may be either derived from other values or saved to NV memory.

This command saves TPM state but does not change the state other than the internal indication that the context has been saved. The TPM shall continue to accept commands. If a subsequent command changes TPM state saved by this command, then the effect of this command is nullified. The TPM MAY nullify this command for any subsequent command rather than check whether the command changed state saved by this command. If this command is nullified, and if no TPM2_Shutdown() occurs before the next TPM2_Startup(), then the next TPM2_Startup() shall be TPM2_Startup(CLEAR).
## 9.4.2 Command and Response

### Table 7 — TPM2_Shutdown Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Shutdown {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_SU</td>
<td>shutdownType</td>
<td>TPM_SU_CLEAR or TPM_SU_STATE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8 — TPM2_Shutdown Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.4.3 Detailed Actions

9.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Startup/Shutdown.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Shutdown_fp.h"

#if CC_Shutdown // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Shut down TPM for power off */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_TYPE if PCR bank has been re-configured, a
// Shutdown(CLEAR) is required
TPM_RC TPM2_Shutdown(Shutdown_In* in) // IN: input parameter list
{
    // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOTAVAILABLE;

    // Input Validation
    // If PCR bank has been reconfigured, a CLEAR state save is required
    if (g_pcrReConfig && in->shutdownType == TPM_SU_STATE)
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Shutdown_shutdownType;

    // Internal Data Update
    gp.orderlyState = in->shutdownType;

    #if USE_DA_USED
    // CLEAR g_daUsed so that any future DA-protected access will cause the
    // shutdown to become non-orderly. It is not sufficient to invalidate the
    // shutdown state after a DA failure because an attacker can inhibit access
    // to NV and use the fact that an update of failedTries was attempted as an
    // indication of an authorization failure. By making sure that the orderly state
    // is CLEAR before any DA attempt, this prevents the possibility of this 'attack.'
    g_daUsed = FALSE;
    #endif

    // PCR private date state save
    PCRStateSave(in->shutdownType);

    #if ACT_SUPPORT
    // Save the ACT state
    ActShutdown(in->shutdownType);
    #endif

    // Save RAM backed NV index data
    NvUpdateIndexOrderlyData();

    #if ACCUMULATE_SELF_HEAL_TIMER
    // Save the current time value
    go.time = g_time;
    #endif

    // Save all orderly data
    NvWrite(NV_ORDERLY_DATA, sizeof(ORDERLY_DATA), &go);

    if (in->shutdownType == TPM_SU_STATE)
        {
            // Save STATE_RESET and STATE_CLEAR data
        }
```

NvWrite(NV_STATE_CLEAR_DATA, sizeof(STATE_CLEAR_DATA), &gc);
NvWrite(NV_STATE_RESET_DATA, sizeof(STATE_RESET_DATA), &gr);

// Save the startup flags for resume
if(g_DrtmPreStartup)
    gp.orderlyState = TPM_SU_STATE | PRE_STARTUP_FLAG;
else if(g_StartupLocality3)
    gp.orderlyState = TPM_SU_STATE | STARTUP_LOCALITY_3;
}
// only two shutdown options.
else if(in->shutdownType != TPM_SU_CLEAR)
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_Shutdown_shutdownType;
NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(orderlyState);
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
#endif // CC_Shutdown

10 Testing

10.1 Introduction

Compliance to standards for hardware security modules may require that the TPM test its functions before the results that depend on those functions may be returned. The TPM may perform operations using testable functions before those functions have been tested as long as the TPM returns no value that depends on the correctness of the testable function.

EXAMPLE

TPM2_PCR_Extend() can be executed before the hash algorithms have been tested. However, until the hash algorithms have been tested, the contents of a PCR cannot be used in any command if that command may result in a value being returned to the TPM user. This means that TPM2_PCR_Read() or TPM2_PolicyPCR() could not complete until the hashes have been checked but other TPM2_PCR_Extend() commands may be executed even though the operation uses previous PCR values.

If a command is received that requires return of a value that depends on untested functions, the TPM shall test the required functions before completing the command.

Once the TPM has received TPM2_SelfTest() and before completion of all tests, the TPM is required to return TPM_RC_TESTING for any command that uses a function that requires a test.

If a self-test fails at any time, the TPM will enter Failure mode. While in Failure mode, the TPM will return TPM_RC_FAILURE for any command other than TPM2_GetTestResult() and TPM2_GetCapability(). The TPM will remain in Failure mode until the next _TPM_Init.
### 10.2 TPM2_SelfTest

#### 10.2.1 General Description

This command causes the TPM to perform a test of its capabilities. If the `fullTest` is YES, the TPM will test all functions. If `fullTest` = NO, the TPM will only test those functions that have not previously been tested.

If any tests are required, the TPM shall either

- return `TPM_RC_TESTING` and begin self-test of the required functions, or

  **NOTE 1** If `fullTest` is NO, and all functions have been tested, the TPM shall return `TPM_RC_SUCCESS`.

- perform the tests and return the test result when complete. On failure, the TPM shall return `TPM_RC_FAILURE`.

If the TPM uses option a), the TPM shall return `TPM_RC_TESTING` for any command that requires use of a testable function, even if the functions required for completion of the command have already been tested.

**NOTE 2** This command can cause the TPM to continue processing after it has returned the response. So that software can be notified of the completion of the testing, the interface can include controls that would allow the TPM to generate an interrupt when the “background” processing is complete. This would be in addition to the interrupt that may be available for signaling normal command completion. It is not necessary that there be two interrupts, but the interface should provide a way to indicate the nature of the interrupt (normal command or deferred command).

**NOTE 3** The PC Client platform specific TPM, in response to `fullTest` YES, will not return `TPM_RC_TESTING`. It will block until all tests are complete.
### 10.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 9 — TPM2_SelfTest Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SelfTest (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>fullTest</td>
<td>YES if full test to be performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NO if only test of untested functions required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 10 — TPM2_SelfTest Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.3 Detailed Actions

10.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Testing/SelfTest.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SelfTest_fp.h"

#if CC_SelfTest // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // perform a test of TPM capabilities
 */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_CANCELED            the command was canceled (some incremental
//   process may have been made)
//   TPM_RC_TESTING             self test in process
TPM_RC
TPM2_SelfTest(SelfTest_In* in // IN: input parameter list
) {
    // Command Output
    // Call self test function in crypt module
    return CryptSelfTest(in->fullTest);
}
#endif // CC_SelfTest
```
10.3  TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest

10.3.1  General Description

This command causes the TPM to perform a test of the selected algorithms.

NOTE 1  The toTest list indicates the algorithms that software would like the TPM to test in anticipation of future use. This allows tests to be done so that a future command will not be delayed due to testing.

The implementation may treat algorithms on the toTest list as either 'test each completely' or 'test this combination.'

EXAMPLE 1  If the toTest list includes AES and CTR mode, it can be interpreted as a request to test only AES in CTR mode. Alternatively, it may be interpreted as a request to test AES in all modes and CTR mode for all symmetric algorithms.

If toTest contains an algorithm that has already been tested, it will not be tested again.

NOTE 2  The only way to force retesting of an algorithm is with TPM2_SelfTest(fullTest = YES).

The TPM will return in toDoList a list of algorithms that are yet to be tested. This list is not the list of algorithms that are scheduled to be tested but the algorithms/functions that have not been tested. Only the algorithms on the toTest list are scheduled to be tested by this command.

NOTE 3  An algorithm remains on the toDoList while any part of it remains untested.

EXAMPLE 2  A symmetric algorithm remains untested until it is tested with all its modes.

Making toTest an empty list allows the determination of the algorithms that remain untested without triggering any testing.

If toTest is not an empty list, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SUCCESS for this command and then return TPM_RC_TESTING for any subsequent command (including TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest()) until the requested testing is complete.

NOTE 4  If toDoList is empty, then no additional tests are required and TPM_RC_TESTING will not be returned in subsequent commands and no additional delay will occur in a command due to testing.

NOTE 5  If none of the algorithms listed in toTest is in the toDoList, then no tests will be performed.

NOTE 6  The TPM cannot return TPM_RC_TESTING for the first call to this command even when testing is not complete because response parameters can only be returned with the TPM_RC_SUCCESS return code.

If all the parameters in this command are valid, the TPM returns TPM_RC_SUCCESS and the toDoList (which may be empty).

NOTE 7  An implementation is permitted to perform all requested tests before returning TPM_RC_SUCCESS, or it is permitted to return TPM_RC_SUCCESS for this command and then return TPM_RC_TESTING for all subsequence commands (including TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest()) until the requested tests are complete.
10.3.2 Command and Response

Table 11 — TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_IncrementalSelfTest {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_ALG</td>
<td>toTest</td>
<td>list of algorithms that should be tested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12 — TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_ALG</td>
<td>toDoList</td>
<td>list of algorithms that need testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 10.3.3 Detailed Actions

#### 10.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Testing/IncrementalSelfTest.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "IncrementalSelfTest_fp.h"

#if CC_IncrementalSelfTest // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// perform a test of selected algorithms
*//* Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CANCELED the command was canceled (some tests may have
// completed)
// TPM_RC_VALUE an algorithm in the toTest list is not implemented
TPM_RC
TPM2_IncrementalSelfTest(IncrementalSelfTest_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    IncrementalSelfTest_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result;
    // Command Output

    // Call incremental self test function in crypt module. If this function
    // returns TPM_RC_VALUE, it means that an algorithm on the 'toTest' list is
    // not implemented.
    result = CryptIncrementalSelfTest(&in->toTest, &out->toDoList);
    if(result == TPM_RC_VALUE)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_IncrementalSelfTest_toTest;
    return result;
}
#endif // CC_IncrementalSelfTest
```
10.4 TPM2_GetTestResult

10.4.1 General Description

This command returns manufacturer-specific information regarding the results of a self-test and an indication of the test status.

If TPM2_SelfTest() has not been executed and a testable function has not been tested, testResult will be TPM_RC_NEEDS_TEST. If TPM2_SelfTest() has been received and the tests are not complete, testResult will be TPM_RC_TESTING.

If testing of all functions is complete without functional failures, testResult will be TPM_RC_SUCCESS. If any test failed, testResult will be TPM_RC_FAILURE.

This command will operate when the TPM is in Failure mode so that software can determine the test status of the TPM and so that diagnostic information can be obtained for use in failure analysis. If the TPM is in Failure mode, then tag is required to be TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_FAILURE.

**NOTE**
The reference implementation can return a 32-bit value s_failFunction. This simply gives a unique value to each of the possible places where a failure could occur. It is not intended to provide a pointer to the function. __func__ is a pointer to a character string but the failure mode code can only return 32-bit values. It is expected that the manufacturer can disambiguate this value if a customer’s TPM goes into failure mode.
10.4.2 Command and Response

Table 13 — TPM2_GetTestResult Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetTestResult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14 — TPM2_GetTestResult Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>outData</td>
<td>test result data contains manufacturer-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>testResult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.4.3 Detailed Actions

10.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Testing/GetTestResult.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "GetTestResult_fp.h"

#if CC_GetTestResult    // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 specification)
   // returns manufacturer-specific information regarding the results of a self-
   // test and an indication of the test status.
*/
#else
   // In the reference implementation, this function is only reachable if the TPM is
   // not in failure mode meaning that all tests that have been run have completed
   // successfully. There is not test data and the test result is TPM_RC_SUCCESS.
TPM_RC
TPM2_GetTestResult(GetTestResult_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
   // Command Output
   // Call incremental self test function in crypt module
   out->testResult = CryptGetTestResult(&out->outData);
   return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_GetTestResult
```

11 Session Commands

11.1 TPM2_StartAuthSession

11.1.1 General Description

This command is used to start an authorization session using alternative methods of establishing the session key (sessionKey). The session key is then used to derive values used for authorization and for encrypting parameters.

This command allows injection of a secret into the TPM using either asymmetric or symmetric encryption. The type of tpmKey determines how the value in encryptedSalt is encrypted. The decrypted secret value is used to compute the sessionKey.

NOTE 1 If tpmKey is TPM_RH_NULL, then encryptedSalt is required to be an Empty Buffer.

The label value of “SECRET” (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Terms and Definitions) is used in the recovery of the secret value.

The TPM generates the sessionKey from the recovered secret value.

No authorization is required for tpmKey or bind.

NOTE 2 The justification for using tpmKey without providing authorization is that the result of using the key is not available to the caller, except indirectly through the sessionKey. This does not represent a point of attack on the authorization value of the key.

NOTE 3 If a bind entity is subject to DA protection, use of the session is subject to DA regardless of the DA status of the entity being authorized. If the caller attempts to use the session without knowing the sessionKey value, the authorization failure will trigger the dictionary attack logic.

The entity referenced with the bind parameter contributes an authorization value to the sessionKey generation process.

If both tpmKey and bind are TPM_RH_NULL, then sessionKey is set to the Empty Buffer. If tpmKey is not TPM_RH_NULL, then encryptedSalt is used in the computation of sessionKey. If bind is not TPM_RH_NULL, the authValue of bind is used in the sessionKey computation and policySession → bindEntity (policySession → cpHash) is set.

If symmetric specifies a block cipher, then TPM_ALG_CFB is the only allowed value for the mode field in the symmetric parameter (TPM_RC_MODE).

This command starts an authorization session and returns the session handle along with an initial nonceTPM in the response.

If the TPM does not have a free slot for an authorization session, it shall return TPM_RC_SESSION_HANDLES.

If the TPM implements a “gap” scheme for assigning contextID values, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP if creating the session would prevent recycling of old saved contexts (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Context Management).

If tpmKey is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then encryptedSalt shall be a TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET of the proper type for tpmKey. The TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE if the sensitive portion of tpmKey is not loaded. The TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE if:
a) \(\text{tpmKey}\) references an RSA key and

1) the size of \(\text{encryptedSalt}\) is not the same as the size of the public modulus of \(\text{tpmKey}\),
2) \(\text{encryptedSalt}\) has a value that is greater than the public modulus of \(\text{tpmKey}\),
3) \(\text{encryptedSalt}\) is not a properly encoded OAEP value, or
4) the decrypted \(\text{salt}\) value is larger than the size of the digest produced by the \text{nameAlg} of \(\text{tpmKey}\); or

NOTE 4 The asymScheme of the key object is ignored in this case and TPM_ALG_OAEP is used, even if asymScheme is set to TPM_ALG_NULL.

b) \(\text{tpmKey}\) references an ECC key and \(\text{encryptedSalt}\)

1) does not contain a TPMS_ECC_POINT or
2) is not a point on the curve of \(\text{tpmKey}\);

NOTE 5 When ECC is used, the point multiply process produces a value (Z) that is used in a KDF to produce the final secret value. The size of the secret value is an input parameter to the KDF, and the result will be set to be the size of the digest produced by the \text{nameAlg} of \(\text{tpmKey}\).

The TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY if \(\text{tpmKey}\) does not reference an asymmetric key. The TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE if the scheme of the key is not TPM_ALG_OAEP or TPM_ALG_NULL. The TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if \(\text{tpmKey}\) does not have the \text{decrypt} attribute SET.

NOTE 6 While TPM_RC_VALUE is preferred, TPM_RC.Scheme is acceptable.

NOTE 7 \(\text{tpmKey}\) is typically a \text{restricted} key so an attacker cannot use \(\text{tpmKey}\) to decrypt the salt. Otherwise, the use of \(\text{tpmKey}\) to decrypt has to be under control of the caller.

If \(\text{bind}\) references a transient object, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE if the sensitive portion of the object is not loaded.

For all session types, this command will cause initialization of the \(\text{sessionKey}\) and may establish binding between the session and an entity (the \(\text{bind}\) entity). If \(\text{sessionType}\) is TPM_SE_POLICY or TPM_SE_TRIAL, the additional session initialization is:

- set \(\text{policySession}→\text{policyDigest}\) to a Zero Digest (the digest size for \(\text{policySession}→\text{policyDigest}\) is the size of the digest produced by \text{authHash});
- authorization may be given at any locality;
- authorization may apply to any command code;
- authorization may apply to any command parameters or handles;
- the authorization has no time limit;
- an \text{authValue} is not needed when the authorization is used;
- the session is not bound;
- the session is not an audit session; and
- the time at which the policy session was created is recorded.

Additionally, if \(\text{sessionType}\) is TPM_SE_TRIAL, the session will not be usable for authorization but can be used to compute the \text{authPolicy} for an object.

NOTE 8 Although this command changes the session allocation information in the TPM, it does not invalidate a saved context. That is, TPM2_Shutdown() is not required after this command in order to re-establish the orderly state of the TPM. This is because the created context will occupy an available slot in the TPM and sessions in the TPM do not survive any TPM2_Startup(). However, if a created session is context saved, the orderly state does change.
The TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE if nonceCaller is less than 16 octets or is greater than the size of the digest produced by authHash.
11.1.2 Command and Response

Table 15 — TPM2_StartAuthSession Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, decrypt, or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_StartAuthSession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>tpmKey</td>
<td>handle of a loaded decrypt key used to encrypt salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>may be TPM_RH_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_ENTITY+</td>
<td>bind</td>
<td>entity providing the authValue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>may be TPM_RH_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>nonceCaller</td>
<td>initial nonceCaller, sets nonceTPM size for the session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shall be at least 16 octets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>encryptedSalt</td>
<td>value encrypted according to the type of tpmKey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If tpmKey is TPM_RH_NULL, this shall be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_SE</td>
<td>sessionType</td>
<td>indicates the type of the session; simple HMAC or policy (including a trial policy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SYM_DEF+</td>
<td>symmetric</td>
<td>the algorithm and key size for parameter encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>may select TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH</td>
<td>authHash</td>
<td>hash algorithm to use for the session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shall be a hash algorithm supported by the TPM and not TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 16 — TPM2_StartAuthSession Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_AUTH_SESSION</td>
<td>sessionHandle</td>
<td>handle for the newly created session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>nonceTPM</td>
<td>the initial nonce from the TPM, used in the computation of the sessionKey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.1.3 Detailed Actions

11.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Session/StartAuthSession.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "StartAuthSession_fp.h"

#if CC_StartAuthSession  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Start an authorization session
 //  Return Type: TPM_RC
 //      TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES       'tpmKey' does not reference a decrypt key
 //      TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP     the difference between the most recently created
 //                              active context and the oldest active context is at
 //                              the limits of the TPM
 //      TPM_RC_HANDLE          input decrypt key handle only has public portion
 //      TPM_RC_MODE            'symmetric' specifies a block cipher but the mode
 //                              is not TPM_ALG_CFB.
 //      TPM_RC_SESSION_HANDLES no session handle is available
 //      TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY  no more slots for loading a session
 //      TPM_RC_SIZE            nonce less than 16 octets or greater than the size
 //                              of the digest produced by 'authHash'
 //      TPM_RC_VALUE           secret size does not match decrypt key type; or the
 //                              recovered secret is larger than the digest size of
 //                              the nameAlg of 'tpmKey'; or, for an RSA decrypt key,
 //                              if 'encryptedSecret' is greater than the
 //                              public modulus of 'tpmKey'.

TPM_RC
TPM2_StartAuthSession(StartAuthSession_In*  in, // IN: input parameter buffer
                      StartAuthSession_Out* out // OUT: output parameter buffer
                      )
{
    TPM_RC     result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    OBJECT*    tpmKey;   // TPM key for decrypt salt
    TPM2B_DATA salt;

    // Input Validation
    // Check input nonce size. IT should be at least 16 bytes but not larger
    // than the digest size of session hash.
    if(in->nonceCaller.t.size < 16
       || in->nonceCaller.t.size > CryptHashGetDigestSize(in->authHash))
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_StartAuthSession_nonceCaller;

    // If an decrypt key is passed in, check its validation
    if(in->tpmKey != TPM_RH_NULL)
    {
        // Get pointer to loaded decrypt key
        tpmKey = HandleToObject(in->tpmKey);

        // key must be asymmetric with its sensitive area loaded. Since this
        // command does not require authorization, the presence of the sensitive
        // area was not already checked as it is with most other commands that
        // use the sensitive areas so check it here
        if(!CryptIsAsymAlgorithm(tpmKey->publicArea.type))
            return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_StartAuthSession_tpmKey;

        // secret size cannot be 0
        if(in->encryptedSalt.t.size == 0)
            return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_StartAuthSession_encryptedSalt;

        // Decrypting salt requires accessing the private portion of a key.
    }
```

Therefore, tmpKey can not be a key with only public portion loaded

```c
if(tpmKey->attributes.publicOnly)
    return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_StartAuthSession_tpmKey;
// HMAC session input handle check.
// tpmKey should be a decryption key
if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(tpmKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_StartAuthSession_tpmKey;
// Secret Decryption. A TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_KEY or Unmarshal errors
// may be returned at this point
result = CryptSecretDecrypt(
    tpmKey, &in->nonceCaller, SECRET_KEY, &in->encryptedSalt, &salt);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_StartAuthSession_encryptedSalt;
}
else
{
    // secret size must be 0
    if(in->encryptedSalt.t.size != 0)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_StartAuthSession_encryptedSalt;
    salt.t.size = 0;
    switch(HandleGetType(in->bind))
    {
        case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
        {
            OBJECT* object = HandleToObject(in->bind);
            // If the bind handle references a transient object, make sure that we
            // can get to the authorization value. Also, make sure that the object
            // has a proper Name (nameAlg != TPM_ALG_NULL). If it doesn't, then
            // it might be possible to bind to an object where the authValue is
            // known. This does not create a real issue in that, if you know the
            // authorization value, you can actually bind to the object. However,
            // there is a potential
            if(object->attributes.publicOnly == SET)
                return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_StartAuthSession_bind;
            break;
        }
        case TPM_HT_NV_INDEX:
        {
            NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->bind, NULL);
            if(IsNvPinPassIndex(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes)
                || IsNvPinFailIndex(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes))
                return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_StartAuthSession_bind;
            break;
        }
        default:
        {
            break;
        }
    }
    // Internal Data Update and command output
    // Create internal session structure. TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP, TPM_RC_NO_HANDLES
    // or TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY errors may be returned at this point.
    // The detailed actions for creating the session context are not shown here
    // as the details are implementation dependent
    SessionCreate(in->sessionType,
    in->authHash,
    in->nonceCaller, SECRET_KEY, &in->encryptedSalt, &salt);
```
126 &in->nonceCaller,
127 &in->symmetric,
128 in->bind,
129 &salt,
130 &out->sessionHandle,
131 &out->nonceTPM);
132
133 return result;
134 }
135 #endif  // CC_StartAuthSession
136
### 11.2 TPM2_PolicyRestart

#### 11.2.1 General Description

This command allows a policy authorization session to be returned to its initial state. This command is used after the TPM returns TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED. That response code indicates that a policy will fail because the PCR have changed after TPM2_PolicyPCR() was executed. Restarting the session allows the authorizations to be replayed because the session restarts with the same nonceTPM. If the PCR are valid for the policy, the policy may then succeed.

This command does not reset the policy ID or the policy start time.
11.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 17 — TPM2_PolicyRestart Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyRestart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>sessionHandle</td>
<td>the handle for the policy session</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 18 — TPM2_PolicyRestart Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.2.3 Detailed Actions

11.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Session/PolicyRestart.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyRestart_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyRestart // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)
   // Restore a policy session to its initial state
*/

TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyRestart(PolicyRestart_In* in // IN: input parameter list
) {
   // Initialize policy session data
   SessionResetPolicyData(SessionGet(in->sessionHandle));
   return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyRestart
```
12 Object Commands

12.1 TPM2_Create

12.1.1 General Description

This command is used to create an object that can be loaded into a TPM using TPM2_Load(). If the command completes successfully, the TPM will create the new object and return the object's creation data (creationData), its public area (outPublic), and its encrypted sensitive area (outPrivate). Preservation of the returned data is the responsibility of the caller. The object will need to be loaded (TPM2_Load()) before it may be used. The only difference between the inPublic TPMT_PUBLIC template and the outPublic TPMT_PUBLIC object is in the unique field.

NOTE 1 This command may require temporary use of a transient resource, even though the object does not remain loaded after the command (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Transient Resources).

TPM2B_PUBLIC template (inPublic) contains all of the fields necessary to define the properties of the new object. The setting for these fields is defined in “Public Area Template” in Part 1 of this specification and in “TPMA_OBJECT” in Part 2 of this specification. The size of the unique field shall not be checked for consistency with the other object parameters.

NOTE 2 For interoperability, it is recommended that the unique field not be set to a value that is larger than allowed by object parameters, so that the unmarshaling will not fail. A size of zero is recommended. After unmarshaling, the TPM does not use the input unique field. It is, however, used in TPM2_CreatePrimary() and TPM2_CreateLoaded.

EXAMPLE 1 It is recommended that a TPM_ALG_RSA object with a keyBits of 2048 in the object’s parameters have a unique field that is no larger than 256 bytes.

EXAMPLE 2 It is recommended that a TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH or a TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER object have a unique field that is no larger than the digest produced by the object’s nameAlg.

The parentHandle parameter shall reference a loaded decryption key that has both the public and sensitive area loaded.

When defining the object, the caller provides a template structure for the object in a TPM2B_PUBLIC structure (inPublic), an initial value for the object’s authValue (inSensitive.userAuth), and, if the object is a symmetric object, an optional initial data value (inSensitive.data). The TPM shall validate the consistency of the attributes of inPublic according to the Creation rules in “TPMA_OBJECT” in TPM 2.0 Part 2.

The inSensitive parameter may be encrypted using parameter encryption.

The methods in clause 12.1 are used by both TPM2_Create() and TPM2_CreatePrimary(). When a value is indicated as being TPM-generated, the value is filled in by bits from the RNG if the command is TPM2_Create() and with values from KDFa() if the command is TPM2_CreatePrimary(). The parameters of each creation value are specified in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

The sensitiveDataOrigin attribute of inPublic shall be SET if inSensitive.data is an Empty Buffer and CLEAR if inSensitive.data is not an Empty Buffer or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If the Object is a not a keyedHash object, and the sign and encrypt attributes are CLEAR, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

The TPM will create new data for the sensitive area and compute a TPMT_PUBLIC.unique from the sensitive area based on the object type:
Part 3: Commands

a) For a symmetric key:
   1) If inSensitive_sensitive.data is the Empty Buffer, a TPM-generated key value is placed in the new object's TPMT_SENSITIVE_sensitive.sym. The size of the key will be determined by inPublic.publicArea.parameters.
   2) If inSensitive_sensitive.data is not the Empty Buffer, the TPM will validate that the size of inSensitive.data is no larger than the key size indicated in the inPublic template (TPM_RC_SIZE) and copy the inSensitive.data to TPMT_SENSITIVE_sensitive.sym of the new object.
   3) A TPM-generated obfuscation value is placed in TPMT_SENSITIVE_sensitive.seedValue. The size of the obfuscation value is the size of the digest produced by the nameAlg in inPublic. This value prevents the public unique value from leaking information about the sensitive area.
   4) The TPMT_PUBLIC.unique.sym value for the new object is then generated, as shown in equation (1) below, by hashing the key and obfuscation values in the TPMT_SENSITIVE with the nameAlg of the object.

for a symmetric key:

   \[ unique := H_{nameAlg}(\text{sensitive.seedValue.buffer} || \text{sensitive.any.buffer}) \]  

b) If the Object is an asymmetric key:
   1) If inSensitive_sensitive.data is not the Empty Buffer, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.
   2) A TPM-generated private key value is created with the size determined by the parameters of inPublic.publicArea.parameters.
   3) If the key is a Storage Key, a TPM-generated TPMT_SENSITIVE.seedValue value is created; otherwise, TPMT_SENSITIVE.seedValue.size is set to zero.

NOTE 3 An Object that is not a storage key has no child Objects to encrypt, so it does not need a symmetric key.

4) The public unique value is computed from the private key according to the methods of the key type.

5) If the key is an ECC key and the scheme required by the curveID is not the same as scheme in the public area of the template, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SCHEME.

6) If the key is an ECC key and the KDF required by the curveID is not the same as kdf in the public area of the template, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KDF.

NOTE 4 There is currently no command in which the caller may specify the KDF to be used with an ECC decryption key. Since there is no use for this capability, the reference implementation requires that the kdf in the template be set to TPM_ALG_NULL or TPM_RC_KDF is returned.

c) If the Object is a keyedHash object:
   1) If inSensitive_sensitive.data is an Empty Buffer, and both sign and decrypt are CLEAR in the attributes of inPublic, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. This would be a data object with no data.

NOTE 5 Revisions 1.34 and earlier reference code did not check the error case of sensitiveDataOrigin SET and an Empty Buffer. Thus, some TPM implementations did not include this error check.

2) If sign and decrypt are both CLEAR or both SET and the scheme in the public area of the template is not TPM_ALG_NULL, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SCHEME.

NOTE 6 Revisions 1.38 and earlier did not enforce this error case.
3) If `inSensitive.sensitive.data` is not an Empty Buffer, the TPM will copy the `inSensitive.sensitive.data` to `TPMT_SSENSITIVE.sensitive.bits` of the new object.

   NOTE 7  The size of `inSensitive.sensitive.data` is limited to be no larger than `MAX_SYM_DATA`.

4) If `inSensitive.sensitive.data` is an Empty Buffer, a TPM-generated key value that is the size of the digest produced by the `nameAlg` in `inPublic` is placed in `TPMT_SSENSITIVE.sensitive.bits`.

5) A TPM-generated obfuscation value that is the size of the digest produced by the `nameAlg` of `inPublic` is placed in `TPMT_SSENSITIVE.seedValue`.

6) The `TPMT_PUBLIC.unique.keyedHash` value for the new object is then generated, as shown in equation (1) above, by hashing the key and obfuscation values in the `TPMT_SSENSITIVE` with the `nameAlg` of the object.

For `TPM2_Load()`, the TPM will apply normal symmetric protections to the created `TPMT_SSENSITIVE` to create `outPublic`.

   NOTE 8  The encryption key is derived from the symmetric seed in the sensitive area of the parent.

In addition to `outPublic` and `outPrivate`, the TPM will build a `TPMS_CREATION_DATA` structure for the object. `TPMS_CREATION_DATA.outsideInfo` is set to `outsideInfo`. This structure is returned in `creationData`. Additionally, the digest of this structure is returned in `creationHash`, and, finally, a `TPMT_TK_CREATION` is created so that the association between the creation data and the object may be validated by `TPM2_CertifyCreation()`.

   NOTE 9  `creationData` and `creationHash` provide information about the parent storage keys back to the hierarchy root. They do not contain information about the object. `creationTicket` includes the object Name and thus the linkage between the object and its ancestors.

   NOTE 9  The symmetric scheme is a `TPMT_SYM_DEF_OBJECT`. In a symmetric block cipher, it is at `inPublic.parameters.symDetail.sym` and in an asymmetric object is at `inPublic.parameters.asymDetail.symmetric`.

   NOTE 10  Prior to revision 01.34, the parent asymmetric algorithms were also checked for `fixedParent` storage keys.

If the object being created is a Storage Key and `fixedParent` is SET in the attributes of `inPublic`, then the symmetric algorithms and parameters of `inPublic` are required to match those of the parent. The algorithms that must match are `inPublic.nameAlg`, and the values in `inPublic.parameters` that select the symmetric scheme. If `inPublic.nameAlg` does not match, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HASH. If the symmetric scheme of the key does not match, the parent, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC. The TPM shall not use different response code to differentiate between mismatches of the components of `inPublic.parameters`. However, after this verification, when using the scheme to encrypt child objects, the TPM ignores the symmetric mode and uses `TPM_ALG_CFB`.

   NOTE 9  The symmetric scheme is a `TPMT_SYM_DEF_OBJECT`. In a symmetric block cipher, it is at `inPublic.parameters.symDetail.sym` and in an asymmetric object is at `inPublic.parameters.asymDetail.symmetric`.

   NOTE 10  Prior to revision 01.34, the parent asymmetric algorithms were also checked for `fixedParent` storage keys.
12.1.2 Command and Response

Table 19 — TPM2_Create Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@parentHandle</td>
<td>handle of parent for new object Auth Index: 1 Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE_CREATE</td>
<td>inSensitive</td>
<td>the sensitive data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>inPublic</td>
<td>the public template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>outsideInfo</td>
<td>data that will be included in the creation data for this object to provide permanent, verifiable linkage between this object and some object owner data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>creationPCR</td>
<td>PCR that will be used in creation data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20 — TPM2_Create Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>outPrivate</td>
<td>the private portion of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>outPublic</td>
<td>the public portion of the created object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_CREATION_DATA</td>
<td>creationData</td>
<td>contains a TPMS_CREATION_DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>creationHash</td>
<td>digest of creationData.creationData using nameAlg of outPublic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_CREATION</td>
<td>creationTicket</td>
<td>ticket used by TPM2_CertifyCreation() to validate that the creation data was produced by the TPM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.1.3 Detailed Actions

12.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/Create.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Object_spt_fp.h"
#include "Create_fp.h"

#if CC_Create // Conditional expansion of this file
*/
(See part 3 specification)

>Add regular object
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC

TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'sensitiveDataOrigin' is CLEAR when 'sensitive.data' is
is an Empty Buffer, or is SET when 'sensitive.data' is
not empty;
'fixedTPM', 'fixedParent', or 'encryptedDuplication'
attributes are inconsistent between themselves or with
those of the parent object;
'inconsistent 'restricted', 'decrypt' and 'sign'
attributes;
attempt to inject sensitive data for an asymmetric
key;

TPM_RC_HASH non-duplicable storage key and its parent have
different name algorithm

TPM_RC_KDF incorrect KDF specified for decrypting keyed hash
object

TPM_RC_KEY invalid key size values in an asymmetric key public
area or a provided symmetric key has a value that is
not allowed

TPM_RC_KEY_SIZE key size in public area for symmetric key differs from
the size in the sensitive creation area; may also be
returned if the TPM does not allow the key size to be
used for a Storage Key

TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY a free slot is not available as scratch memory for
object creation

TPM_RC_RANGE the exponent value of an RSA key is not supported.

TPM_RC_SCHEME inconsistent attributes 'decrypt', 'sign', or
'restricted' and key's scheme ID; or hash algorithm is
inconsistent with the scheme ID for keyed hash object

TPM_RC_SIZE size of public authPolicy or sensitive authValue does
not match digest size of the name algorithm

TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC a storage key with no symmetric algorithm specified;
or non-storage key with symmetric algorithm different
from TPM_ALG_NULL

TPM_RC_TYPE unknown object type;

'parentHandle' does not reference a restricted
decryption key in the storage hierarchy with both
public and sensitive portion loaded

TPM_RC_VALUE exponent is not prime or could not find a prime using
the provided parameters for an RSA key;

TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY there is no free slot for the object

TPM_RC

TPM2_Create(Create_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
Create_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
OBJECT* parentObject;
```

Family "2.0"  TCG Public Review  Page 58
Level 00 Revision 01.81  Copyright © TCG 2006-2023  November 29, 2023
OBJECT* newObject;
TPMT_PUBLIC* publicArea;

// Input Validation
parentObject = HandleToObject(in->parentHandle);
pAssert(parentObject != NULL);

// Does parent have the proper attributes?
if(!ObjectIsParent(parentObject))
    return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Create_parentHandle;

// Get a slot for the creation
newObject = FindEmptyObjectSlot(NULL);
if(newObject == NULL)
    return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;

// If the TPM2B_PUBLIC was passed as a structure, marshal it into is canonical
// form for processing
publicArea = &newObject->publicArea;

// Copy the input structure to the allocated structure
*publicArea = in->inPublic.publicArea;

// Check attributes in input public area. CreateChecks() checks the things that
// are unique to creation and then validates the attributes and values that are
// common to create and load.
result = CreateChecks(parentObject,
    /* primaryHierarchy = */ 0,
    publicArea,
    in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.t.size);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_Create_inPublic);

// Clean up the authValue if necessary
if(!AdjustAuthSize(&in->inSensitive.sensitive.userAuth, publicArea->nameAlg))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Create_inSensitive;

// Command Output
// Create the object using the default TPM random-number generator
result = CryptCreateObject(newObject, &in->inSensitive.sensitive, NULL);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

// Fill in creation data
FillInCreationData(in->parentHandle,
    publicArea->nameAlg,
    &in->creationPCR,
    &in->outsideInfo,
    &out->creationData,
    &out->creationHash);

// Compute creation ticket
result = TicketComputeCreation(EntityGetHierarchy(in->parentHandle),
    &newObject->name,
    &out->creationHash,
    &out->creationTicket);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

// Prepare output private data from sensitive
SensitiveToPrivate(&newObject->sensitive,
    &newObject->name,
    parentObject,
    publicArea->nameAlg,
    &out->outPrivate);

newObject->hierarchy = parentObject->hierarchy;
// Finish by copying the remaining return values
out->outPublic.publicArea = newObject->publicArea;
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
#endif  // CC_Create
12.2 TPM2_Load

12.2.1 General Description

This command is used to load objects into the TPM. This command is used when both a TPM2B_PUBLIC and TPM2B_PRIVATE are to be loaded. If only a TPM2B_PUBLIC is to be loaded, the TPM2_LoadExternal command is used.

NOTE 1 Loading an object is not the same as restoring a saved object context.

The object’s TPMA_OBJECT attributes will be checked according to the rules defined in “TPMA_OBJECT” in TPM 2.0 Part 2 of this specification. If the Object is a not a keyedHash object, and the sign and encrypt attributes are CLEAR, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

Objects loaded using this command will have a Name. The Name is the concatenation of nameAlg and the digest of the public area using the nameAlg.

NOTE 2 nameAlg is a parameter in the public area of the inPublic structure.

If inPrivate.size is zero, the load will fail.

The integrity value shall be checked before the private area is decrypted and unmarshalled.

NOTE 3 Checking the integrity before the data is decrypted and unmarshalled prevents attacks on the sensitive area by fuzzing the data and looking at the differences in the response codes.

The command returns a handle for the loaded object and the Name that the TPM computed for inPublic.public (that is, the digest of the TPMT_PUBLIC structure in inPublic).

NOTE 4 The TPM-computed Name is provided as a convenience to the caller for those cases where the caller does not implement the hash algorithms specified in the nameAlg of the object.

NOTE 5 The returned handle is associated with the object until the object is flushed (TPM2_FlushContext) or until the next TPM2_Startup.

For all objects, the size of the key in the sensitive area shall be consistent with the key size indicated in the public area or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY_SIZE.

Before use, a loaded object shall be checked to validate that the public and sensitive portions are properly linked, cryptographically. Use of an object includes use in any policy command. If the parts of the object are not properly linked, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_BINDING. If a weak symmetric key is in the sensitive portion, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

EXAMPLE 1 For a symmetric object, the unique value in the public area is the digest of the sensitive key and the obfuscation value.

EXAMPLE 2 For a two-prime RSA key, the remainder when dividing the public modulus by the private primes is zero and it is possible to form a private exponent from the two prime factors of the public modulus.

EXAMPLE 3 For an ECC key, the public point shall be f(x) where x is the private key.
### 12.2.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@parentHandle</td>
<td>TPM handle of parent key; shall not be a reserved handle Auth Index: 1 Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>inPrivate</td>
<td>the private portion of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>inPublic</td>
<td>the public portion of the object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of type TPM_HT_TRANSIENT for the loaded object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the loaded object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.2.3 Detailed Actions

12.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/Load.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Load_fp.h"

#if CC_Load // Conditional expansion of this file
    #include "Object_spt_fp.h"
#endif

/*(See part 3 specification)
// Load an ordinary or temporary object
* 
  Return Type: TPM_RC
  TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'inPublic' attributes are not allowed with selected parent
  TPM_RC_BINDING 'inPrivate' and 'inPublic' are not cryptographically bound
  TPM_RC_HASH incorrect hash selection for signing key or the 'nameAlg' for 'inPublic' is not valid
  TPM_RC_INTEGRITY HMAC on 'inPrivate' was not valid
  TPM_RC_KDF KDF selection not allowed
  TPM_RC_KEY the size of the object's 'unique' field is not consistent with the indicated size in the object's parameters
  TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY no available object slot
  TPM_RC_SCHEME the signing scheme is not valid for the key
  TPM_RC_SIZE 'inPrivate' missing, or 'authPolicy' size for 'inPublic' or is not valid
  TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC symmetric algorithm not provided when required
  TPM_RC_TYPE 'parentHandle' is not a storage key, or the object to load is a storage key but its parameters do not match the parameters of the parent.
  TPM_RC_VALUE decryption failure

TPM_RC TPM2_Load(Load_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                     Load_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
     )
{
    TPM_RC         result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    TPMT_SENSITIVE sensitive;
    OBJECT*        parentObject;
    OBJECT*        newObject;

    // Input Validation
    // Don't get invested in loading if there is no place to put it.
    newObject = FindEmptyObjectSlot(out->objectHandle);
    if(newObject == NULL)
        return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;

    if(in->inPrivate.t.size == 0)
        return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_Load_inPrivate;

    parentObject = HandleToObject(in->parentHandle);
    pAssert(parentObject != NULL);
    // Is the object that is being used as the parent actually a parent.
    if(!ObjectIsParent(parentObject))
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_Load_parentHandle;

    // Compute the name of object. If there isn't one, it is because the nameAlg is not valid.
```

```
PublicMarshalAndComputeName(&in->inPublic.publicArea, &out->name);

if(out->name.t.size == 0)
    return TPM_RCS_HASH + RC_Load_inPublic;

// Retrieve sensitive data.
result = PrivateToSensitive(&in->inPrivate.b,
    &out->name.b,
    parentObject,
    in->inPublic.publicArea.nameAlg,
    &sensitive);

if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_Load_inPrivate);

// Internal Data Update
// Load and validate object
result = ObjectLoad(newObject,
    parentObject,
    &in->inPublic.publicArea,
    &sensitive,
    RC_Load_inPublic,
    RC_Load_inPrivate,
    &out->name);

if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
{
    // Set the common OBJECT attributes for a loaded object.
    ObjectSetLoadedAttributes(newObject, in->parentHandle);
}

return result;

#endif // CC_Load
12.3 TPM2_LoadExternal

12.3.1 General Description

This command is used to load an object that is not a Protected Object into the TPM. The command allows loading of a public area or both a public and sensitive area.

NOTE 1 Typical use for loading a public area is to allow the TPM to validate an asymmetric signature. Typical use for loading both a public and sensitive area is to allow the TPM to be used as a crypto accelerator.

Load of a public external object area allows the object to be associated with a hierarchy so that the correct algorithms may be used when creating tickets. The hierarchy parameter provides this association. If the public and sensitive portions of the object are loaded, hierarchy is required to be TPM_RH_NULL.

NOTE 2 If both the public and private portions of an object are loaded, the object is not allowed to appear to be part of a hierarchy.

The object's TPMA_OBJECT attributes will be checked according to the rules defined in “TPMA_OBJECT” in TPM 2.0 Part 2. In particular, fixedTPM, fixedParent, and restricted shall be CLEAR if inPrivate is not the Empty Buffer.

NOTE 3 The duplication status of a public key needs to be able to be the same as the full key which may be resident on a different TPM. If both the public and private parts of the key are loaded, then it is not possible for the key to be either fixedTPM or fixedParent since its private area would not be available in the clear to load.

Objects loaded using this command will have a Name. The Name is the nameAlg of the object concatenated with the digest of the public area using the nameAlg. The Qualified Name for the object will be the same as its Name. The TPM will validate that the authPolicy is either the size of the digest produced by nameAlg or the Empty Buffer.

NOTE 4 If nameAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, then the Name is the Empty Buffer. When the authorization value for an object with no Name is computed, no Name value is included in the HMAC. To ensure that these unnamed entities are not substituted, it is recommended that they have an authValue that is statistically unique.

NOTE 5 The digest size for TPM_ALG_NULL is zero.

If the nameAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, the TPM cannot, and thus shall not verify the integrity HMAC on the sensitive area. The TPM will still perform cryptographic validity checks (e.g., the ECC public point is on the curve) and public/private keypair consistency checks.

The TPM will validate that the size of the key in the sensitive area is consistent with the size indicated in the public area. If it is not, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY_SIZE.

NOTE 6 For an ECC object, the TPM will verify that the public key is on the curve of the key before the public area is used.

If nameAlg is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the same consistency checks between inPublic and inPrivate are made as for TPM2_Load().

NOTE 7 Consistency checks are necessary because an object with a Name needs to have the public and sensitive portions cryptographically bound so that an attacker cannot mix public and sensitive areas.

The command returns a handle for the loaded object and the Name that the TPM computed for inPublic.public (that is, the TPMT_PUBLIC structure in inPublic).

NOTE 8 The TPM-computed Name is provided as a convenience to the caller for those cases where the caller does not implement the hash algorithm specified in the nameAlg of the object.
The hierarchy parameter associates the external object with a hierarchy. External objects are flushed when their associated hierarchy is disabled. If hierarchy is TPM_RH_NULL, the object is part of no hierarchy, and there is no implicit flush.

If hierarchy is TPM_RH_NULL or nameAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, a ticket produced using the object shall be a NULL Ticket.

EXAMPLE If a key is loaded with hierarchy set to TPM_RH_NULL, then TPM2_VerifySignature() will produce a NULL Ticket of the required type.

External objects are Temporary Objects. The saved external object contexts shall be invalidated at the next TPM Reset.

If a weak symmetric key is in the sensitive area, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

For an RSA key, the private exponent is computed using the two prime factors of the public modulus. One of the primes is P, and the second prime (Q) is found by dividing the public modulus by P. A TPM may return an error (TPM_RC_BINDING) if the bit size of P and Q are not the same."
12.3.2 Command and Response

Table 23 — TPM2_LoadExternal Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_LoadExternal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE</td>
<td>inPrivate</td>
<td>the sensitive portion of the object (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC+</td>
<td>inPublic</td>
<td>the public portion of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY</td>
<td>hierarchy</td>
<td>hierarchy with which the object area is associated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 24 — TPM2_LoadExternal Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of type TPM_HT_TRANSIENT for the loaded object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>name of the loaded object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.3.3 Detailed Actions

12.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/LoadExternal.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "LoadExternal_fp.h"

#if CC_LoadExternal // Conditional expansion of this file
#  include "Object_spt_fp.h"
#endif

/* (See part 3 specification)
   // to load an object that is not a Protected Object into the public portion
   // of an object into the TPM. The command allows loading of a public area or
   // both a public and sensitive area

   // Return Type: TPM_RC
   //      TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'fixedParent', 'fixedTPM', and 'restricted' must
   // be CLEAR if sensitive portion of an object is loaded
   //      TPM_RC_BINDING the 'inPublic' and 'inPrivate' structures are not
   // cryptographically bound
   //      TPM_RC_HASH incorrect hash selection for signing key
   //      TPM_RC_HIERARCHY 'hierarchy' is turned off, or only NULL hierarchy
   // is allowed when loading public and private parts
   //      TPM_RC_KDF incorrect KDF selection for decrypting
   // keyedHash object
   //      TPM_RC_KEY the size of the object's 'unique' field is not
   // consistent with the indicated size in the object's
   // parameters
   //      TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY if there is no free slot for an object
   //      TPM_RC_ECC_POINT for a public-only ECC key, the ECC point is not
   // on the curve
   //      TPM_RC.Scheme the signing scheme is not valid for the key
   //      TPM_RC_SIZE 'authPolicy' is not zero and is not the size of a
   // digest produced by the object's 'nameAlg'
   //      TPM_RC_HIERARCHY TPM RH NULL hierarchy
   //      TPM_RC_TYPE symmetric algorithm not provided when required
   //      TPM_RC_EQUALITY 'inPublic' and 'inPrivate' are not the same type

TPM_RC

TPM2_LoadExternal(LoadExternal_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                  LoadExternal_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {

    TPM_RC          result;
    OBJECT*         object;
    TPMT_SENSITIVE* sensitive = NULL;

    /* Input Validation
    // Don't get invested in loading if there is no place to put it.
    object = FindEmptyObjectSlot(out->objectHandle);
    if(object == NULL)
        return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;

    // If the hierarchy to be associated with this object is turned off, the object
    // cannot be loaded.
    if(!HierarchyIsEnabled(in->hierarchy))
        return TPM_RC_HIERARCHY + RC_LoadExternal_hierarchy;

    // For loading an object with both public and sensitive
    if(in->inPrivate.size != 0)
        { // An external object with a sensitive area can only be loaded in the
```
// NULL hierarchy
if (in->hierarchy != TPM_RH_NULL)
    return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_LoadExternal_hierarchy;

// An external object with a sensitive area must have fixedTPM == CLEAR
// fixedParent == CLEAR so that it does not appear to be a key created by
// this TPM.
if (IS_ATTRIBUTE(
        in->inPublic.publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedTPM)
    || IS_ATTRIBUTE(
        in->inPublic.publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedParent)
    || IS_ATTRIBUTE(
        in->inPublic.publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_LoadExternal_inPublic;

// Have sensitive point to something other than NULL so that object
// initialization will load the sensitive part too
sensitive = &in->inPrivate.sensitiveArea;

// Need the name to initialize the object structure
PublicMarshalAndComputeName(&in->inPublic.publicArea, &out->name);

// Load and validate key
result = ObjectLoad(object,
        NULL,
        &in->inPublic.publicArea,
        sensitive,
        RC_LoadExternal_inPublic,
        RC_LoadExternal_inPrivate,
        &out->name);
if (result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    { object->attributes.external = SET; // Set the common OBJECT attributes for a loaded object.
      ObjectSetLoadedAttributes(object, in->hierarchy);
      return result;
    }
#endif // CC_LoadExternal
12.4 TPM2_ReadPublic

12.4.1 General Description

This command allows access to the public area of a loaded object.
Use of the objectHandle does not require authorization.

NOTE Since the caller is not likely to know the public area of the object associated with objectHandle, it would not be possible to include the Name associated with objectHandle in the cpHash computation.

If objectHandle references a sequence object, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SEQUENCE.
### 12.4.2 Command and Response

#### Table 25 — TPM2_ReadPublic Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ReadPublic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>TPM handle of an object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 26 — TPM2_ReadPublic Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>outPublic</td>
<td>structure containing the public area of an object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>name of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>qualifiedName</td>
<td>the Qualified Name of the object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.4.3 Detailed Actions

12.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/ReadPublic.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ReadPublic_fp.h"

#if CC_ReadPublic // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// read public area of a loaded object
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_SEQUENCE can not read the public area of a sequence object
TPM_RC
TPM2_ReadPublic(ReadPublic_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
ReadPublic_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    OBJECT* object = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);
    // Input Validation
    // Can not read public area of a sequence object
    if(ObjectIsSequence(object))
        return TPM_RC_SEQUENCE;

    // Command Output
    out->outPublic.publicArea = object->publicArea;
    out->name = object->name;
    out->qualifiedName = object->qualifiedName;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_ReadPublic
```
12.5 TPM2_ActivateCredential

12.5.1 General Description

This command enables the association of a credential with an object in a way that ensures that the TPM has validated the parameters of the credentialed object.

If both the public and private portions of activateHandle and keyHandle are not loaded, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE.

If keyHandle is not a Storage Key, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE.

Authorization for activateHandle requires the ADMIN role.

The key associated with keyHandle is used to recover a seed from secret, which is the encrypted seed. The Name of the object associated with activateHandle, and the recovered seed are used in a KDF to recover the symmetric key. The recovered seed (but not the Name) is used in a KDF to recover the HMAC key.

The HMAC is used to validate that the credentialBlob is associated with activateHandle and that the data in credentialBlob has not been modified. The linkage to the object associated with activateHandle is achieved by including the Name in the HMAC calculation.

If the integrity checks succeed, credentialBlob is decrypted and returned as certInfo.

NOTE The output certInfo parameter is an application defined value. It is typically a symmetric key or seed that is used to decrypt a certificate. See the TPM2_MakeCredential credential input parameter.
### 12.5.2 Command and Response

**Table 27 — TPM2_ActivateCredential Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ActivateCredential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@activateHandle</td>
<td>handle of the object associated with certificate in credentialBlob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>loaded key used to decrypt the TPMS_SENSITIVE in credentialBlob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ID_OBJECT</td>
<td>credentialBlob</td>
<td>the credential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>secret</td>
<td>keyHandle algorithm-dependent encrypted seed that protects credentialBlob</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 28 — TPM2_ActivateCredential Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>certInfo</td>
<td>the decrypted information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the data should be no larger than the size of the digest of the nameAlg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>associated with keyHandle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.5.3 Detailed Actions

12.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/ActivateCredential.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ActivateCredential_fp.h"

#if CC_ActivateCredential // Conditional expansion of this file
# include "Object_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Activate Credential with an object
 */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//         TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES    'keyHandle' does not reference a decryption key
//         TPM_RC_ECC_POINT    'secret' is invalid (when 'keyHandle' is an ECC key)
//         TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT 'secret' is invalid (when 'keyHandle' is an ECC key)
//         TPM_RC_INTEGRITY    'credentialBlob' fails integrity test
//         TPM_RC_NO_RESULT    'secret' is invalid (when 'keyHandle' is an ECC key)
//         TPM_RC_SIZE        'secret' size is invalid or the 'credentialBlob'
//         TPM_RC_TYPE        does not unmarshal correctly
//         TPM_RC_VALUE       'keyHandle' does not reference an asymmetric key.
//         TPM_RC_RC_TYPE     'keyHandle' does not reference an asymmetric key.
//         TPM_RC_SIZE        does not unmarshal correctly
TPM_RC
TPM2_ActivateCredential(ActivateCredential_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                         ActivateCredential_out* out // OUT: output parameter list

    )
    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    OBJECT* object; // decrypt key
    OBJECT* activateObject; // key associated with credential
    TPM2B_DATA data; // credential data

    // Input Validation
    object = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    activateObject = HandleToObject(in->activateHandle);

    // input decrypt key must be an asymmetric, restricted decryption key
    if(!CryptIsAsymAlgorithm(object->publicArea.type)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_ActivateCredential_keyHandle;

    // Command output
    // Decrypt input credential data via asymmetric decryption. A
    // TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_KEY or unmarshal errors may be returned at this
    // point
    result = CryptSecretDecrypt(object, NULL, IDENTITY_STRING, &in->secret, &data);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        {
            if(result == TPM_RC_VALUE)
                return TPM_RC_FAILURE;
            return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_ActivateCredential_secret);
        }

    // Retrieve secret data. A TPM_RC_INTEGRITY error or unmarshal
    // errors may be returned at this point
```
```c
result = CredentialToSecret(&in->credentialBlob.b,
    &activateObject->name.b,
    &data.b,
    object,
    &out->certInfo);

if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_ActivateCredential_credentialBlob);

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_ActivateCredential
```
12.6 TPM2_MakeCredential

12.6.1 General Description

This command allows the TPM to perform the actions required of a Certificate Authority (CA) in creating a TPM2B_ID_OBJECT containing an activation credential.

NOTE The input credential parameter is an application defined value. It might be a symmetric key or seed that is used to encrypt a certificate, or it might be a challenge such as a random number. See the TPM2_ActivateCredential certInfo output parameter.

The TPM will produce a TPM2B_ID_OBJECT according to the methods in “Credential Protection” in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

The loaded public area referenced by handle is required to be the public area of a Storage key, otherwise, the credential cannot be properly sealed.

This command does not use any TPM secrets, nor does it require authorization. It is a convenience function, using the TPM to perform cryptographic calculations that could be done externally.
12.6.2 Command and Response

Table 29 — TPM2_MakeCredential Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_MakeCredential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>handle</td>
<td>loaded public area, used to encrypt the sensitive area containing the credential key, Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>credential</td>
<td>the credential information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>objectName</td>
<td>Name of the object to which the credential applies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 30 — TPM2_MakeCredential Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ID_OBJECT</td>
<td>credentialBlob</td>
<td>the credential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>secret</td>
<td>handle algorithm-dependent data that wraps the key that encrypts credentialBlob</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.6.3  Detailed Actions

12.6.3.1  /tpm/src/command/Object/MakeCredential.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "MakeCredential_fp.h"

#if CC_MakeCredential  // Conditional expansion of this file
   # include "Object_spt_fp.h"
*/

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Make Credential with an object
 */

TPM2_MakeCredential(MakeCredential_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                     MakeCredential_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    OBJECT* object;
    TPM2B_DATA data;

    // Input Validation
    object = HandleToObject(in->handle);
    // input key must be an asymmetric, restricted decryption key
    // NOTE: Needs to be restricted to have a symmetric value.
    if(!CryptIsAsymAlgorithm(object->publicArea.type)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
       return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_MakeCredential_handle;

    // The credential information may not be larger than the digest size used for
    // the Name of the key associated with handle.
    if(in->credential.t.size > CryptHashGetDigestSize(object->publicArea.nameAlg))
       return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_MakeCredential_credential;

    // Command Output
    out->secret.t.size = sizeof(out->secret.t.secret);
    result = CryptSecretEncrypt(object, IDENTITY_STRING, &data, &out->secret);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
       return result;

    // Prepare output credential data from secret
    SecretToCredential(
        &in->credential, &in->objectName.b, &data.b, object, &out->credentialBlob);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
```
# endif // CC_MakeCredential
12.7  TPM2_Unseal

12.7.1  General Description

This command returns the data in a loaded Sealed Data Object.

NOTE 1  A random, TPM-generated, Sealed Data Object can be created by the TPM with TPM2_Create() or TPM2_CreatePrimary() using the template for a Sealed Data Object.

NOTE 2  TPM 1.2 hard coded PCR authorization. TPM 2.0 PCR authorization requires a policy.

The returned value may be encrypted using authorization session encryption.

If either restricted, decrypt, or sign is SET in the attributes of itemHandle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. If the type of itemHandle is not TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE.
### 12.7.2 Command and Response

#### Table 31 — TPM2_Unseal Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Unseal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@itemHandle</td>
<td>handle of a loaded data object&lt;br&gt;Auth Index: 1&lt;br&gt;Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 32 — TPM2_Unseal Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE_DATA</td>
<td>outData</td>
<td>unssealed data&lt;br&gt;Size of outData is limited to be no more than 128 octets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.7.3 Detailed Actions

12.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/Unseal.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Unseal_fp.h"

#if CC_Unseal  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
return data in a sealed data blob
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'itemHandle' has wrong attributes
// TPM_RC_TYPE 'itemHandle' is not a KEYEDHASH data object
TPM_RC
TPM2_Unseal(Unseal_In* in, Unseal_Out* out)
{
    OBJECT* object;
    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to loaded object
    object = HandleToObject(in->itemHandle);
    // Input handle must be a data object
    if(object->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH)
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_Unseal_itemHandle;
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt)
        || IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign)
        || IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Unseal_itemHandle;
    // Command Output
    // Copy data
    out->outData = object->sensitive.sensitive.bits;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_Unseal
```

12.7.4 Detailed Actions (cont.)
12.8  TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth

12.8.1  General Description

This command is used to change the authorization secret for a TPM-resident object.

If successful, a new private area for the TPM-resident object associated with objectHandle is returned, which includes the new authorization value.

This command does not change the authorization of the TPM-resident object on which it operates. Therefore, the old authValue (of the TPM-resident object) is used when generating the response HMAC key if required.

NOTE 1  The returned outPrivate will need to be loaded before the new authorization will apply.

NOTE 2  The TPM-resident object can be persistent and changing the authorization value of the persistent object could prevent other users from accessing the object. This is why this command does not change the TPM-resident object.

EXAMPLE  If a persistent key is being used as a Storage Root Key and the authorization of the key is a well-known value so that the key can be used generally, then changing the authorization value in the persistent key would deny access to other users.

This command may not be used to change the authorization value for an NV Index or a Primary Object.

NOTE 3  If an NV Index is to have a new authorization, it is done with TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth().

NOTE 4  If a Primary Object is to have a new authorization, it needs to be recreated (TPM2_CreatePrimary()).
### 12.8.2 Command and Response

#### Table 33 — TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ObjectChangeAuth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>parentHandle</td>
<td>handle of the parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>newAuth</td>
<td>new authorization value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 34 — TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>outPrivate</td>
<td>private area containing the new authorization value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.8.3 Detailed Actions

12.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/ObjectChangeAuth.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ObjectChangeAuth_fp.h"

#ifdef CC_ObjectChangeAuth  // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Object_spt_fp.h"
#endif

/* (See part 3 specification) */

#include "ObjectChangeAuth_fp.h"

TPM2_ObjectChangeAuth(ObjectChangeAuth_In* in, ObjectChangeAuth_Out* out)
{
    TPMT_SENSITIVE sensitive;
    OBJECT* object = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);
    TPM2B_NAME QNCompare;

    // Input Validation
    if (ObjectIsSequence(object))
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_ObjectChangeAuth_objectHandle;

    if (!AdjustAuthSize(&in->newAuth, object->publicArea.nameAlg))
        return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_ObjectChangeAuth_newAuth;

    // Parent handle should be the parent of object handle. In this
    // implementation we verify this by checking the QN of object. Other
    // implementation may choose different method to verify this attribute.
    ComputeQualifiedName(
        in->parentHandle, object->publicArea.nameAlg, &object->name, &QNCompare);
    if (!MemoryEqual2B(&object->qualifiedName.b, &QNCompare.b))
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_ObjectChangeAuth_parentHandle;

    // Command Output
    sensitive = object->sensitive;
    sensitive.authValue = in->newAuth;

    SensitiveToPrivate(&sensitive,
                      &object->name,
                      HandleToObject(in->parentHandle),
                      object->publicArea.nameAlg,
                      &out->outPrivate);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_ObjectChangeAuth
```
12.9 TPM2_CreateLoaded

12.9.1 General Description

This command creates an object and loads it in the TPM. This command allows creation of any type of object (Primary, Ordinary, or Derived) depending on the type of `parentHandle`. If `parentHandle` references a Primary Seed, then a Primary Object is created; if `parentHandle` references a Storage Parent, then an Ordinary Object is created; and if `parentHandle` references a Derivation Parent, then a Derived Object is generated.

The input validation is the same as for TPM2_Create() and TPM2_CreatePrimary() with one exception: when `parentHandle` references a Derivation Parent, then `sensitiveDataOrigin` in `inPublic` is required to be CLEAR.

Note 1 In the general descriptions of TPM2_Create() and TPM2_CreatePrimary() the validations refer to a TPMT_PUBLIC structure that is in `inPublic`. For TPM2_CreateLoaded(), `inPublic` is a TPM2B_TEMPLATE that can contain a TPMT_PUBLIC that is used for object creation. For object derivation, the unique field can contain a label and context that are used in the derivation process. To allow both the TPMT_PUBLIC and the derivation variation, a TPM2B_TEMPLATE is used. When referring to the checks in TPM2_Create() and TPM2_CreatePrimary(), TPM2B_TEMPLATE should be assumed to contain a TPMT_PUBLIC.

If `parentHandle` references a Derivation Parent, then the TPM may return TPM_RC_TYPE if the key type to be generated is an RSA key.

If `parentHandle` references a Derivation Parent or a Primary Seed, then `outPrivate` will be an Empty Buffer.

NOTE 2 Returning `outPrivate` would imply that the returned primary or derived object can be loaded, and it cannot. It can only be re-derived.

A primary key cannot be loaded is because loading a key is a way to attack the protections of a key (e.g., using DPA). A saved context for a primary object is protected. The TPM will go into failure mode if the integrity of a saved context is good but the fingerprint doesn’t decrypt. It is not possible to have these protections on loaded objects because this would be a simple way for an attacker to put the TPM into failure mode. Saved contexts are assumed to be under control of the driver but loaded objects are not.

If all objects were derived from their parents, then load could not be used as an attack. However, that would preclude importation of objects and key hierarchies.

NOTE 3 Unlike TPM2_Create() and TPM2_CreatePrimary(), this command does not return creation data. If creation data is needed, then TPM2_Create() or TPM2_CreatePrimary() should be used.

NOTE 4 If `parentHandle` references a Derivation Parent, the bits of the Label and Context are used in the creation of the key. This differs from TPM2_CreatePrimary(), where the bits of the template are used. This means that different templates (specifically, different public attributes) will result in the same key.
12.9.2 Command and Response

**Table 35 — TPM2_CreateLoaded Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_CreateLoaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PARENT+</td>
<td>@parentHandle</td>
<td>Handle of a transient storage key, a persistent storage key, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TPM_RH_OWNER, TPM_RH_PLATFORM+(PP), or TPM_RH_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1, Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2BSENSITIVE_CREATE</td>
<td>inSensitive</td>
<td>the sensitive data, see TPM 2.0 Part 1 Sensitive Values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B TEMPLATE</td>
<td>inPublic</td>
<td>the public template</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 36 — TPM2_CreateLoaded Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of type TPM_HT_TRANSIENT for created object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>outPrivate</td>
<td>the sensitive area of the object (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>outPublic</td>
<td>the public portion of the created object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>the name of the created object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.9.3 Detailed Actions

12.9.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Object/CreateLoaded.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "CreateLoaded_fp.h"

#if CC_CreateLoaded  // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 of specification)
* Create and load any type of key, including a temporary key.
* The input template is a marshaled public area rather than an unmarshaled one as
* used in Create and CreatePrimary. This is so that the label and context that
* could be in the template can be processed without changing the formats for the
* calls to Create and CreatePrimary.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'sensitiveDataOrigin' is CLEAR when 'sensitive.data'
// is an Empty Buffer;
// 'fixedTPM', 'fixedParent', or 'encryptedDuplication' attributes are inconsistent between themselves or with
// those of the parent object;
// inconsistent 'restricted', 'decrypt' and 'sign' attributes;
// attempt to inject sensitive data for an asymmetric key;
// attempt to create a symmetric cipher key that is not a decryption key
// TPM_RC_FW_LIMITED The requested hierarchy is FW-limited, but the TPM
does not support FW-limited objects or the TPM failed
to derive the Firmware Secret;
// TPM_RC_SVN_LIMITED The requested hierarchy is SVN-limited, but the TPM
does not support SVN-limited objects or the TPM failed
to derive the Firmware SVN Secret for the requested
SVN;
// TPM_RC_KDF incorrect KDF specified for decrypting keyed hash object
// TPM_RC_KEY the value of a provided symmetric key is not allowed
// TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY there is no free slot for the object
// TPM_RC_SCHEME inconsistent attributes 'decrypt', 'sign',
// 'restricted' and key's scheme ID; or hash algorithm is
// inconsistent with the scheme ID for keyed hash object
// TPM_RC_SIZE size of public authorization policy or sensitive
// authorization value does not match digest size of the
// name algorithm sensitive data size for the keyed hash
// object is larger than is allowed for the scheme
// TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC a storage key with no symmetric algorithm specified;
// or non-storage key with symmetric algorithm different
// from TPM_ALG_NULL
// TPM_RC_TYPE cannot create the object of the indicated type
(usually only occurs if trying to derive an RSA key).

TPM2_CreateLoaded(CreateLoaded_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
CreateLoaded_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    OBJECT* parent = HandleToObject(in->parentHandle);
    OBJECT* newObject;
    BOOL derivation;
    TPMT_PUBLIC* publicArea;
    RAND_STATE randState;
    RAND_STATE* rand = &randState;
```

---

Family "2.0"  TCG Public Review  Page 90
Level 00 Revision 01.81  Copyright © TCG 2006-2023  November 29, 2023
TPMS_DERIVE labelContext;

// Input Validation
// How the public area is unmarshaled is determined by the parent, so
// see if parent is a derivation parent

derivation = (parent != NULL && parent->attributes.derivation);

// If the parent is an object, then make sure that it is either a parent or
// derivation parent
if (parent != NULL && !parent->attributes.isParent && !derivation)
    return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_CreateLoaded_parentHandle;

// Get a spot in which to create the newObject
newObject = FindEmptyObjectSlot(&out->objectHandle);
if (newObject == NULL)
    return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;

// Do this to save typing
publicArea = &newObject->publicArea;

// Unmarshal the template into the object space. TPM2_Create() and
// TPM2_CreatePrimary() have the publicArea unmarshaled by CommandDispatcher. This
// command is different because of an unfortunate property of the
// unique field of an ECC key. It is a structure rather than a single TPM2B. If
// if had been a TPM2B, then the label and context could be within a TPM2B and
// unmarshaled like other public areas. Since it is not, this command needs its
// on template that is a TPM2B that is unmarshaled as a BYTE array with a
// its own unmarshal function.
result = UnmarshalToPublic(publicArea, &in->inPublic, derivation, &labelContext);
if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result + RC_CreateLoaded_inPublic;

// Validate that the authorization size is appropriate
if (!AdjustAuthSize(&in->inSensitive.sensitive.userAuth, publicArea->nameAlg))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_CreateLoaded_inSensitive;

// Command output
if (derivation)
{
    TPM_KEYEDHASH_SCHEME* scheme;
    scheme = &parent->publicArea.parameters.keyedHashDetail.scheme;

    // SP800-108 is the only KDF supported by this implementation and there is
    // no default hash algorithm.
    pAssert(scheme->details.xor.hashAlg != TPM_ALG_NULL
        && scheme->details.xor.kdf == TPM_ALG_KDF1_SP800_108);
    // Don't derive RSA keys
    if (publicArea->type == TPM_ALG_RSA)
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_CreateLoaded_inPublic;

    // sensitiveDataOrigin has to be CLEAR in a derived object. Since this
    // is specific to a derived object, it is checked here.
    if (IS_ATTRIBUTE(
        publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sensitiveDataOrigin))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES;

    // Check the rest of the attributes
    result = PublicAttributesValidation(parent, 0, publicArea);
    if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_CreateLoaded_inPublic);

    // Process the template and sensitive areas to get the actual 'label' and
    // 'context' values to be used for this derivation.
    result = SetLabelAndContext(&labelContext, &in->inSensitive.sensitive.data);
    if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Set up the KDF for object generation
    DRBG_InstantiateSeededKdf((KDF_STATE*)rand,
scheme->details.xor.hashAlg,
    scheme->details.xor.kdf,
    &parent->sensitive.sensitive.bits.b,
    &labelContext.label.b,
    &labelContext.context.b,
    TPM_MAX_DERIVATION_BITS);

    // Clear the sensitive size so that the creation functions will not try
    // to use this value.
in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.t.size = 0;
}
else
{
    // Check attributes in input public area. CreateChecks() checks the things
    // that are unique to creation and then validates the attributes and values
    // that are common to create and load.
    result = CreateChecks(parent,
        (parent == NULL) ? in->parentHandle : 0,
        publicArea,
        in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.t.size);

    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_CreateLoaded_inPublic);
    // Creating a primary object
    if(parent == NULL)
    {
        TPM2B_NAME name;
        TPM2B_SEED primary_seed;

        newObject->attributes.primary = SET;
        if(HierarchyNormalizeHandle(in->parentHandle) == TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT)
            newObject->attributes.epsHierarchy = SET;

        result = HierarchyGetPrimarySeed(in->parentHandle, &primary_seed);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;

        // If so, use the primary seed and the digest of the template
        // to seed the DRBG
        result = DRBG_InstantiateSeeded(
            (DRBG_STATE*)rand,
            &primary_seed.b,
            PRIMARY_OBJECT_CREATION,
            (TPM2B*)PublicMarshalAndComputeName(publicArea, &name),
            &in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.b);
        MemorySet(primary_seed.b.buffer, 0, primary_seed.b.size);

        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    } else
    {
        // This is an ordinary object so use the normal random number generator
        rand = NULL;
    }
}

// Internal data update
// Create the object
result = CryptCreateObject(newObject, &in->inSensitive.sensitive, rand);
DRBG_Uninstantiate((DRBG_STATE*)rand);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;
// if this is not a Primary key and not a derived key, then return the sensitive
// area
if((parent != NULL) && !derivation)
    // Prepare output private data from sensitive
    SensitiveToPrivate(&newObject->sensitive,
&newObject->name,
parent,
newObject->publicArea.nameAlg,
&out->outPrivate);
else
  out->outPrivate.t.size = 0;
// Set the remaining return values
out->outPublic.publicArea = newObject->publicArea;
out->name = newObject->name;
// Set the remaining attributes for a loaded object
ObjectSetLoadedAttributes(newObject, in->parentHandle);

  return result;
}

#endif // CC_CreateLoaded
13 Duplication Commands

13.1 TPM2_Duplicate

13.1.1 General Description

This command duplicates a loaded object so that it may be used in a different hierarchy. The new parent key for the duplicate may be on the same or different TPM or TPM_RH_NULL. Only the public area of newParentHandle is required to be loaded.

NOTE 1 Since the new parent may only be extant on a different TPM, it is likely that the new parent's sensitive area could not be loaded in the TPM from which objectHandle is being duplicated.

If encryptedDuplication is SET in the object being duplicated, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC if symmetricAlg.algorithm is TPM_ALG_NULL or TPM_RC_HIERARCHY if newParentHandle is TPM_RH_NULL.

The authorization for this command shall be with a policy session.

If fixedParent of objectHandle→attributes is SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. If objectHandle→nameAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE.

The policySession→commandCode parameter in the policy session is required to be TPM_CC_Duplicate to indicate that authorization for duplication has been provided. This indicates that the policy that is being used is a policy that is for duplication, and not a policy that would approve another use. That is, authority to use an object does not grant authority to duplicate the object.

The policy is likely to include cpHash in order to restrict where duplication can occur. If TPM2_PolicyCpHash() has been executed as part of the policy, the policySession→cpHash is compared to the cpHash of the command.

If TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect() has been executed as part of the policy, the policySession→nameHash is compared to

\[ H_{policyAlg}(objectHandle→Name || newParentHandle→Name) \]  \hspace{1cm} (2)

If the compared hashes are not the same, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL.

NOTE 2 It is allowed that policySession→nameHash and policySession→cpHash share the same memory space.

NOTE 3 A duplication policy is not required to have either TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect() or TPM2_PolicyCpHash() as part of the policy. If neither is present, then the duplication policy may be satisfied with a policy that only contains TPM2_PolicyCommandCode(code = TPM_CC_Duplicate).

The TPM shall follow the process of encryption defined in the "Duplication" subclause of “Protected Storage Hierarchy” in TPM 2.0 Part 1.
### 13.1.2 Command and Response

**Table 37 — TPM2_Duplicate Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@objectHandle</td>
<td>loaded object to duplicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>newParentHandle</td>
<td>shall reference the public area of an asymmetric key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>encryptionKeyIn</td>
<td>optional symmetric encryption key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SYM_DEF_OBJECT+</td>
<td>symmetricAlg</td>
<td>definition for the symmetric algorithm to be used for the inner wrapper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 38 — TPM2_Duplicate Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>encryptionKeyOut</td>
<td>If the caller provided an encryption key or if symmetricAlg was TPM_ALG_NULL, then this will be the Empty Buffer; otherwise, it shall contain the TPM-generated, symmetric encryption key for the inner wrapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>duplicate</td>
<td>private area that may be encrypted by encryptionKeyIn; and may be doubly encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>outSymSeed</td>
<td>seed protected by the asymmetric algorithms of new parent (NP)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 13.1.3 Detailed Actions

#### 13.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Duplication/Duplicate.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Duplicate_fp.h"

#if CC_Duplicate // Conditional expansion of this file

# include "Object_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)

// Duplicate a loaded object

* // Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES  key to duplicate has 'fixedParent' SET
//   TPM_RC_HASH        for an RSA key, the nameAlg digest size for the
//   newParent is not compatible with the key size
//   TPM_RC_HIERARCHY   'encryptedDuplication' is SET and 'newParentHandle'
//                      specifies Null Hierarchy
//   TPM_RC_KEY         'newParentHandle' references invalid ECC key (public
//                      point not on the curve)
//   TPM_RC_SIZE       input encryption key size does not match the
//                     size specified in symmetric algorithm
//   TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC  'encryptedDuplication' is SET but no symmetric
//                     algorithm is provided
//   TPM_RC_TYPE       'newParentHandle' is neither a storage key nor
//                     TPM_RH_NULL; or the object has a NULL nameAlg
//   TPM_RC_VALUE      for an RSA newParent, the sizes of the digest and
//                     the encryption key are too large to be OAEP encoded

TPM_RC

TPM2_Duplicate(Duplicate_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
               Duplicate_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
               )
{
    TPM_RC         result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    TPM_T_SENSITIVE sensitive;

    UINT16         innerKeySize = 0; // encrypt key size for inner wrap

    OBJECT*        object;
    OBJECT*        newParent;
    TPM2B_DATA     data;

    // Input Validation

    * // Get duplicate object pointer
    object = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);
    // Get new parent
    newParent = HandleToObject(in->newParentHandle);

    // duplicate key must have fixParent bit CLEAR.
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedParent))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Duplicate_objectHandle;

    // Do not duplicate object with NULL nameAlg
    if(object->publicArea.nameAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_Duplicate_objectHandle;

    // new parent key must be a storage object or TPM_RH_NULL
    if(in->newParentHandle != TPM_RH_NULL && !ObjectIsStorage(in->newParentHandle))
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_Duplicate_newParentHandle;

```

---

Family "2.0"  
TCG Public Review  
Level 00 Revision 01.81  
Copyright © TCG 2006-2023  
November 29, 2023
// If the duplicated object has encryptedDuplication SET, then there must be
// an inner wrapper and the new parent may not be TPM_RH_NULL
if (IS_ATTRIBUTE(
    object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, encryptedDuplication))
{
    if (in->symmetricAlg.algorithm == TPM_ALG_NULL)
        return TPM_RCS_SYMMETRIC + RC_Duplicate_symmetricAlg;
    if (in->newParentHandle == TPM_RH_NULL)
        return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_Duplicate_newParentHandle;
}

if (in->symmetricAlg.algorithm == TPM_ALG_NULL)
{
    // if algorithm is TPM_ALG_NULL, input key size must be 0
    if (in->encryptionKeyIn.t.size != 0)
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Duplicate_encryptionKeyIn;
}
else
{
    // Get inner wrap key size
    innerKeySize = in->symmetricAlg.keyBits.sym;

    // If provided the input symmetric key must match the size of the algorithm
    if (in->encryptionKeyIn.t.size != 0
        && in->encryptionKeyIn.t.size != (innerKeySize + 7) / 8)
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Duplicate_encryptionKeyIn;
}

// Command Output
if (in->newParentHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
{
    // Make encrypt key and its associated secret structure. A TPM_RC_KEY
    // error may be returned at this point
    out->outSymSeed.t.size = sizeof(out->outSymSeed.t.secret);
    result = 
        CryptSecretEncrypt(newParent, DUPLICATE_STRING, &data, &out->outSymSeed);
    if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
}
else
{
    // Do not apply outer wrapper
    data.t.size            = 0;
    out->outSymSeed.t.size = 0;
}

// Copy sensitive area
sensitive = object->sensitive;

// Prepare output private data from sensitive.
// Note: If there is no encryption key, one will be provided by
// SensitiveToDuplicate(). This is why the assignment of encryptionKeyIn to
// encryptionKeyOut will work properly and is not conditional.
SensitiveToDuplicate(&sensitive,
    &object->name.b,
    newParent,
    object->publicArea.nameAlg,
    &data.b,
    &in->symmetricAlg,
    &in->encryptionKeyIn,
    &out->duplicate);

    out->encryptionKeyOut = in->encryptionKeyIn;

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}  
#endif  // CC_Duplicate
13.2  TPM2_Rewrap

13.2.1  General Description

This command allows the TPM to serve in the role as a Duplication Authority. If proper authorization for use of the oldParent is provided, then an HMAC key and a symmetric key are recovered from inSymSeed and used to integrity check and decrypt inDuplicate. A new protection seed value is generated according to the methods appropriate for newParent and the blob is re-encrypted and a new integrity value is computed. The re-encrypted blob is returned in outDuplicate, and the symmetric key returned in outSymKey.

In the rewrap process, L is “DUPLICATE” (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Terms and Definitions).

If inSymSeed has a zero length, then oldParent is required to be TPM_RH_NULL and no decryption of inDuplicate takes place.

If newParent is TPM_RH_NULL, then no encryption is performed on outDuplicate. outSymSeed will have a zero length (see TPM 2.0 Part 2, encryptedDuplication).
### 13.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 39 — TPM2_Rewrap Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Rewrap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@oldParent</td>
<td>parent of object, Auth Index: 1, Auth Role: User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>newParent</td>
<td>new parent of the object, Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>inDuplicate</td>
<td>an object encrypted using symmetric key derived from \textit{inSymSeed}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>the Name of the object being rewrapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>inSymSeed</td>
<td>the seed for the symmetric key and HMAC key needs \textit{oldParent} private key to recover the seed and generate the symmetric key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 40 — TPM2_Rewrap Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>outDuplicate</td>
<td>an object encrypted using symmetric key derived from \textit{outSymSeed}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>outSymSeed</td>
<td>seed for a symmetric key protected by \textit{newParent} asymmetric key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.2.3 Detailed Actions

13.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Duplication/Rewrap.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Rewrap_fp.h"

#if CC_Rewrap  // Conditional expansion of this file
#  include "Object_spt_fp.h"
/*(See part 3 specification)
// This command allows the TPM to serve in the role as an MA.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES  'newParent' is not a decryption key
// TPM_RC_HANDLE     'oldParent' is not consistent with inSymSeed
// TPM_RC_INTEGRITY  the integrity check of 'inDuplicate' failed
// TPM_RC_KEY        for an ECC key, the public key is not on the curve
// TPM_RC_KEY_SIZE   the decrypted input symmetric key size
// TPM_RC_TYPE       'oldParent' is not a storage key, or 'newParent'
//                   is not a storage key
// TPM_RC_VALUE      for an 'oldParent'; RSA key, the data to be decrypted
//                   is greater than the public exponent
// Unmarshal errors  errors during unmarshaling the input
// TPM_RC            unmarshal the private buffer to 'sensitive'

TPM_RC
TPM2_Rewrap(Rewrap_In*  in,  // IN: input parameter list
             Rewrap_Out* out   // OUT: output parameter list
            )
{
    TPM_RC        result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    TPM2B_DATA    data;   // symmetric key
    UINT16        hashSize = 0;
    TPM2B_PRIVATE privateBlob;  // A temporary private blob
                              // to transit between old
                              // and new wrappers
                              // Input Validation
    if((in->inSymSeed.t.size == 0 && in->oldParent != TPM_RH_NULL)
        || (in->inSymSeed.t.size != 0 && in->oldParent == TPM_RH_NULL))
        return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_Rewrap_oldParent;
    if(in->oldParent != TPM_RH_NULL)
    {
        OBJECT* oldParent = HandleToObject(in->oldParent);
        // old parent key must be a storage object
        if(!ObjectIsStorage(in->oldParent))
            return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Rewrap_oldParent;
        // Decrypt input secret data via asymmetric decryption. A
        // TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_KEY or unmarshal errors may be returned at this
        // point
        result = CryptSecretDecrypt(
                 oldParent, NULL, DUPLICATE_STRING, &in->inSymSeed, &data);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_Rewrap_inSymSeed;
        // Unwrap Outer
        result = UnwrapOuter(oldParent,
                              &in->name.b,
                              oldParent->publicArea.nameAlg,
```

Part 3: Commands

Trusted Platform Module Library

Level 00 Revision 01.81
Family “2.0”

60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_Rewrap_inDuplicate);
else
    if (in->newParent != TPM_RH_NULL)
        
        OBJECT* newParent;
        newParent = HandleToObject(in->newParent);
        if (!ObjectIsStorage(in->newParent))
            return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Rewrap_newParent;
        // Make new encrypt key and its associated secret structure.
        // TPM_RC_VALUE error may be returned at this point if RSA algorithm is
        // enabled in TPM
        out->outSymSeed.t.size = sizeof(out->outSymSeed.t.secret);
        result = CryptSecretEncrypt(newParent, DUPLICATE_STRING, &data, &out->outSymSeed);
        if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
        // Copy temporary variable to output, reserve the space for integrity
        hashSize = sizeof(UINT16) + CryptHashGetDigestSize(newParent->publicArea.nameAlg);
        // Make sure that everything fits into the output buffer
        // Note: this is mostly only an issue if there was no outer wrapper on
        // 'inDuplicate'. It could be as large as a TPM2B_PRIVATE buffer. If we add
        // a digest for an outer wrapper, it won't fit anymore.
        if ((privateBlob.t.size + hashSize) > sizeof(out->outDuplicate.t.buffer))
            return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_Rewrap_inDuplicate;
        // Command output
        out->outDuplicate.t.size = privateBlob.t.size;
        pAssert(privateBlob.t.size <= sizeof(out->outDuplicate.t.buffer) - hashSize);
        MemoryCopy(out->outDuplicate.t.buffer + hashSize,
                    privateBlob.t.buffer,
                    privateBlob.t.size);
        // Produce outer wrapper for output
        out->outDuplicate.t.size = ProduceOuterWrap(newParent, &in->name.b,
                                                   newParent->publicArea.nameAlg,
                                                   &data.b, FALSE,
                                                   out->outDuplicate.t.size,
                                                   out->outDuplicate.t.buffer);
    } else // New parent is a null key so there is no seed
        
        out->outSymSeed.t.size = 0;
        // Copy privateBlob directly
        out->outDuplicate = privateBlob;
{ return TPM_RC_SUCCESS; }

#else  // CC_Rewrap

#endif // CC_Rewrap
13.3 TPM2_Import

13.3.1 General Description

This command allows an object to be encrypted using the symmetric encryption values of a Storage Key. After encryption, the object may be loaded and used in the new hierarchy. The imported object (duplicate) may be singly encrypted, multiply encrypted, or unencrypted.

If fixedTPM or fixedParent is SET in objectPublic, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If encryptedDuplication is SET in the object referenced by parentHandle and encryptedDuplication is CLEAR in objectPublic, the TPM may return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If encryptedDuplication is SET in objectPublic, then inSymSeed and encryptionKey shall not be Empty buffers (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES). Recovery of the sensitive data of the object occurs in the TPM in a multi-step process in the following order:

a) If inSymSeed has a non-zero size:

1) The asymmetric parameters and private key of parentHandle are used to recover the seed used in the creation of the HMAC key and encryption keys used to protect the duplication blob.

   NOTE 1 When recovering the seed from inSymSeed, L is “DUPLICATE”.

2) The integrity value in duplicate.buffer.integrityOuter is used to verify the integrity of the data blob, which is the remainder of duplicate.buffer (TPM_RC_INTEGRITY).

   NOTE 2 The data blob will contain a TPMT_SENSITIVE and can contain a TPM2B_DIGEST for the innerIntegrity.

3) The symmetric key recovered in 1) is used to decrypt the data blob.

   NOTE 3 Checking the integrity before the data is used prevents attacks on the sensitive area by fuzzing the data and looking at the differences in the response codes.

b) If encryptionKey is not an Empty Buffer:

1) Use encryptionKey to decrypt the inner blob.

2) Use the TPM2B_DIGEST at the start of the inner blob to verify the integrity of the inner blob (TPM_RC_INTEGRITY).

c) Unmarshal the sensitive area

   NOTE 4 It is not necessary to validate that the sensitive area data is cryptographically bound to the public area other than that the Name of the public area is included in the HMAC. However, if the binding is not validated by this command, the binding must be checked each time the object is loaded. For an object that is imported under a parent with fixedTPM SET, binding need only be checked at import. If the parent has fixedTPM CLEAR, then the binding needs to be checked each time the object is loaded, or before the TPM performs an operation for which the binding affects the outcome of the operation (for example, TPM2_PolicySigned() or TPM2_Certify()).

   Similarly, if the new parent's fixedTPM is set, the encryptedDuplication state need only be checked at import.

   If the new parent is not fixedTPM, then that object will be loadable on any TPM (including SW versions) on which the new parent exists. This means that, each time an object is loaded under a parent that is not fixedTPM, it is necessary to validate all of the properties of that object. If the parent is fixedTPM, then the new private blob is integrity protected by the TPM that "owns" the parent. So, it is sufficient to validate the object’s properties (attribute and public-private binding) on import and not again.

   If a weak symmetric key is being imported, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.
After integrity checks and decryption, the TPM will create a new symmetrically encrypted private area using the encryption key of the parent.

**NOTE 5**  
The symmetric re-encryption is the normal integrity generation and symmetric encryption applied to a child object.

**NOTE 6**  
Revision 01.16 of this specification required the ECC private key in duplicate to be padded.
13.3.2 Command and Response

Table 41 — TPM2_Import Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Import</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@parentHandle</td>
<td>the handle of the new parent for the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>encryptionKey</td>
<td>the optional symmetric encryption key used as the inner wrapper for duplicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If symmetricAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, then this parameter shall be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>objectPublic</td>
<td>the public area of the object to be imported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This is provided so that the integrity value for duplicate and the object attributes can be checked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE Even if the integrity value of the object is not checked on input, the object Name is required to create the integrity value for the imported object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>duplicate</td>
<td>the symmetrically encrypted duplicate object that may contain an inner symmetric wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ENCRYPTED_SECRET</td>
<td>inSymSeed</td>
<td>the seed for the symmetric key and HMAC key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>inSymSeed is encrypted/encoded using the algorithms of newParent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SYM_DEF_OBJECT+</td>
<td>symmetricAlg</td>
<td>definition for the symmetric algorithm to use for the inner wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If this algorithm is TPM_ALG_NULL, no inner wrapper is present and encryptionKey shall be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 42 — TPM2_Import Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PRIVATE</td>
<td>outPrivate</td>
<td>the sensitive area encrypted with the symmetric key of parentHandle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.3.3 Detailed Actions

13.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Duplication/Import.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Import_fp.h"

#if CC_Import  // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Object_spt_fp.h"

/* (See part 3 specification)
 * This command allows an asymmetrically encrypted blob, containing a duplicated
 * object to be re-encrypted using the group symmetric key associated with the
 * parent.
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'FixedTPM' and 'fixedParent' of 'objectPublic' are not
// both CLEAR; or 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and
// 'parentHandle' does not reference a decryption key; or
// 'objectPublic' and 'parentHandle' have incompatible
// or inconsistent attributes; or
// encryptedDuplication is SET in 'objectPublic' but the
// inner or outer wrapper is missing.
// Note that if the TPM provides parameter values, the
// parameter number will indicate 'symmetricKey' (missing
// inner wrapper) or 'inSymSeed' (missing outer wrapper)
// TPM_RC_BINDING 'duplicate' and 'objectPublic' are not
// cryptographically bound
// TPM_RC_ECC_POINT 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and ECC point in 'inSymSeed'
// is not on the curve
// TPM_RC_HASH 'objectPublic' does not have a valid nameAlg
// TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and failed to retrieve ECC
// point from the secret; or unmarshaling sensitive value
// from 'duplicate' failed the result of 'inSymSeed'
// decryption
// TPM_RC_INTEGRITY 'duplicate' integrity is broken
// TPM_RC_KDF 'objectPublic' representing decrypting keyed hash
// object specifies invalid KDF
// TPM_RC_KEY inconsistent parameters of 'objectPublic'; or
// 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and 'parentHandle' does not
// reference a key of supported type; or
// invalid key size in 'objectPublic' representing an
// asymmetric key
// TPM_RC_NO_RESULT 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and multiplication resulted in
// ECC point at infinity
// TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY no available object slot
// TPM_RC_SCHEME inconsistent attributes 'decrypt', 'sign',
// 'restricted' and key's scheme ID in 'objectPublic';
// or hash algorithm is inconsistent with the scheme ID
// for keyed hash object
// TPM_RC_SIZE 'authPolicy' size does not match digest size of the
// name algorithm in 'objectPublic'; or
// 'symmetricAlg' and 'encryptionKey' have different
// sizes; or
// 'inSymSeed' is nonempty and it size is not
// consistent with the type of 'parentHandle'; or
// unmarshaling sensitive value from 'duplicate' failed
// symmetric algorithm or a non-storage key with
// symmetric algorithm different from TPM_ALG_NULL
// TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC 'objectPublic' is either a storage key with no
// symmetric algorithm or a non-storage key with
// 'parentHandle' is not a storage key; or
```

---

Family “2.0”  TCG Public Review  Page 107
Level 00 Revision 01.81  Copyright © TCG 2006-2023  November 29, 2023
TPM2_Import(Import_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    Import_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    OBJECT* parentObject;
    TPM2B_DATA data; // symmetric key
    TPMT_SENSITIVE sensitive;
    TPM2B_NAME name;
    TPMA_OBJECT attributes;
    UINT16 innerKeySize = 0; // encrypt key size for inner
                           // wrapper

    // Input Validation
    // to save typing
    attributes = in->objectPublic.publicArea.objectAttributes;
    // FixedTPM and fixedParent must be CLEAR
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedTPM)
        || IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedParent))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Import_objectPublic;
    // Get parent pointer
    parentObject = HandleToObject(in->parentHandle);

    if(!ObjectIsParent(parentObject))
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Import_parentHandle;

    if(in->symmetricAlg.algorithm != TPM_ALG_NULL)
        { // Get inner wrap key size
            innerKeySize = in->symmetricAlg.keyBits.sym;
            // Input symmetric key must match the size of algorithm.
            if(in->encryptionKey.t.size != (innerKeySize + 7) / 8)
                return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Import_encryptionKey;
        }
    else
        { // If input symmetric algorithm is NULL, input symmetric key size must
            // be 0 as well
            if(in->encryptionKey.t.size != 0)
                return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Import_encryptionKey;
            // If encryptedDuplication is SET, then the object must have an inner
            // wrapper
            if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, encryptedDuplication))
                return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Import_encryptionKey;
        }

    // See if there is an outer wrapper
    if(in->inSymSeed.t.size != 0)
        { // in->inParentHandle is a parent, but in order to decrypt an outer wrapper,
            // it must be able to do key exchange and a symmetric key can't do that.
            if(parentObject->publicArea.type == TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER)
                return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_Import_parentHandle;
            // Decrypt input secret data via asymmetric decryption. TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES,
            // TPM_RC_ECC_POINT, TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT, TPM_RC_KEY, TPM_RC_NO_RESULT,
            // TPM_RC_SIZE, TPM_RC_VALUE may be returned at this point
result = CryptSecretDecrypt(
    parentObject, NULL, DUPLICATE_STRING, &in->inSymSeed, &data);
pAssert(result != TPM_RC_BINDING);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_Import_inSymSeed);
else
    // If encryptedDuplication is set, then the object must have an outer
    // wrapper
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, encryptedDuplication))
        return TPM_RCs_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Import_inSymSeed;
    data.t.size = 0;
}
// Compute name of object
PublicMarshalAndComputeName(&(in->objectPublic.publicArea), &name);
if(name.t.size == 0)
    return TPM_RCs_HASH + RC_Import_objectPublic;

// Retrieve sensitive from private.
// TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT, TPM_RC_INTEGRITY, TPM_RC_SIZE may be returned here.
result = DuplicateToSensitive(&in->duplicate.b,
    &name.b,
    parentObject,
    in->objectPublic.publicArea.nameAlg,
    &data.b,
    &in->symmetricAlg,
    &in->encryptionKey.b,
    &sensitive);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_Import_duplicate);

// If the parent of this object has fixedTPM SET, then validate this
// object as if it were being loaded so that validation can be skipped
// when it is actually loaded.
if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(parentObject->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedTPM))
{
    result = ObjectLoad(NULL,
        NULL,
        &in->objectPublic.publicArea,
        &sensitive,
        RC_Import_objectPublic,
        RC_Import_duplicate,
        NULL);
}

// Command output
if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
{
    // Prepare output private data from sensitive
    SensitiveToPrivate(&sensitive,
        &name,
        parentObject,
        in->objectPublic.publicArea.nameAlg,
        &out->outPrivate);
}
return result;

#endif // CC_Import
14 Asymmetric Primitives

14.1 Introduction

The commands in clause 13.3.3.1 provide low-level primitives for access to the asymmetric algorithms implemented in the TPM. Many of these commands are only allowed if the asymmetric key is an unrestricted key.

14.2 TPM2_RSA_Encrypt

14.2.1 General Description

This command performs RSA encryption using the indicated padding scheme according to IETF RFC 8017. If the scheme of keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL, then the caller may use inScheme to specify the padding scheme. If scheme of keyHandle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then inScheme shall either be TPM_ALG_NULL or be the same as scheme (TPM_RC_SCHEME).

The key referenced by keyHandle is required to be an RSA key (TPM_RC_KEY).

The three types of allowed padding are:

1) TPM_ALG_OAEP – Data is OAEP padded as described in 7.1 of IETF RFC 8017 (PKCS#1). The only supported mask generation is MGF1.
2) TPM_ALG_RSAES – Data is padded as described in 7.2 of IETF RFC 8017 (PKCS#1).
3) TPM_ALG_NULL – Data is not padded by the TPM and the TPM will treat message as an unsigned integer and perform a modular exponentiation of message using the public exponent of the key referenced by keyHandle. This scheme is only used if both the scheme in the key referenced by keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL, and the inScheme parameter of the command is TPM_ALG_NULL. The input value cannot be larger than the public modulus of the key referenced by keyHandle.

Table 43 — Padding Scheme Selection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keyHandle→scheme</th>
<th>inScheme</th>
<th>padding scheme used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>RSAES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>OAEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>RSAES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>RSAES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>error (TPM_RC_SCHEME)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>OAEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>error (TPM_RC_SCHEME)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>OAEP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After padding, the data is RSAEP encrypted according to 5.1.1 of IETF RFC 8017 (PKCS#1).

If inScheme is used, and the scheme requires a hash algorithm it may not be TPM_ALG_NULL.

NOTE 1 Because only the public portion of the key needs to be loaded for this command, the caller can manipulate the attributes of the key in any way desired. As a result, the TPM shall not check the consistency of the attributes. The only property checking is that the key is an RSA key and that the padding scheme is supported.
The message parameter is limited in size by the padding scheme according to the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scheme</th>
<th>Maximum Message Length ((mLen)) in Octets</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_OAEP</td>
<td>(mLen \leq k - 2hLen - 2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_RSAES</td>
<td>(mLen \leq k - 11)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>(mLen \leq k)</td>
<td>The numeric value of the message must be less than the numeric value of the public modulus ((n)).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES**

- \(k\) := the number of bytes in the public modulus
- \(hLen\) := the number of octets in the digest produced by the hash algorithm used in the process

The label parameter is optional. If provided \((\text{label.size} \neq 0)\) then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE if the last octet in label is not zero. The terminating octet of zero is included in the label used in the padding scheme.

**NOTE 2**  
If the scheme does not use a label, the TPM will still verify that label is properly formatted if label is present.

**NOTE 3**  
Specifications before version 1.54 stated that label is truncated after the first zero octet. Applications should not include embedded zero bytes for compatibility.

The function returns padded and encrypted value outData.

The message parameter in the command may be encrypted using parameter encryption.

**NOTE 4**  
Only the public area of keyHandle is required to be loaded. A public key can be loaded with any desired scheme. If the scheme is to be changed, a different public area needs to be loaded.
14.2.2 Command and Response

Table 45 — TPM2_RSA_Encrypt Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_RSA_Encrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>keyHandle</td>
<td>reference to public portion of RSA key to use for encryption. Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC_KEY_RSA</td>
<td>message</td>
<td>message to be encrypted. The data type was chosen because it limits the overall size of the input to no greater than the size of the largest RSA public key. This may be larger than allowed for keyHandle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_RSA_DECRYPT+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>the padding scheme to use if scheme associated with keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>label</td>
<td>optional label L to be associated with the message. Size of the buffer is zero if no label is present. NOTE: See the description of label above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 46 — TPM2_RSA_Encrypt Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC_KEY_RSA</td>
<td>outData</td>
<td>encrypted output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.2.3 Detailed Actions

14.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/RSA_Encrypt.c

14.2.3.1.1 Detailed Actions

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "RSA_Encrypt_fp.h"

#if CC_RSA_Encrypt // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // This command performs the padding and encryption of a data block
 */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'decrypt' attribute is not SET in key referenced by 'keyHandle'
// TPM_RC_KEY 'keyHandle' does not reference an RSA key
// TPM_RC_SCHEME incorrect input scheme, or the chosen scheme is not a valid RSA decrypt scheme
// TPM_RC_VALUE the numeric value of 'message' is greater than the public modulus of the key referenced by 'keyHandle', or 'label' is not a null-terminated string

TPM_RC

TPM2_RSA_Encrypt(RSA_Encrypt_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                 RSA_Encrypt_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC result;
    OBJECT* rsaKey;
    TPMT_RSA_DECRYPT* scheme;
    // Input Validation
    rsaKey = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    // selected key must be an RSA key
    if(rsaKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_RSA)
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_RSA_Encrypt_keyHandle;
    // selected key must have the decryption attribute
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(rsaKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_RSA_Encrypt_keyHandle;
    // Is there a label?
    if(!IsLabelProperlyFormatted(&in->label.b))
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_RSA_Encrypt_label;
    // Command Output
    // Select a scheme for encryption
    scheme = CryptRsaSelectScheme(in->keyHandle, &in->inScheme);
    if(scheme == NULL)
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_RSA_Encrypt_inScheme;
    // Encryption. TPM_RC_VALUE, or TPM_RC_SCHEME errors may be returned by CryptEncryptRSA.
    out->outData.t.size = sizeof(out->outData.t.buffer);
    result = CryptRsaEncrypt(
        &out->outData, &in->message.b, rsaKey, scheme, &in->label.b, NULL);
    return result;
}
#endif // CC_RSA_Encrypt
```
14.3 TPM2_RSA_Decrypt

14.3.1 General Description

This command performs RSA decryption using the indicated padding scheme according to IETF RFC 8017 (PKCS#1).

The scheme selection for this command is the same as for TPM2_RSA_Encrypt() and is shown in Table 43.

The key referenced by keyHandle shall be an RSA key (TPM_RC_KEY) with restricted CLEAR and decrypt SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

This command uses the private key of keyHandle for this operation and authorization is required.

The TPM will perform a modular exponentiation of ciphertext using the private exponent associated with keyHandle (this is described in IETF RFC 8017 (PKCS#1), clause 5.1.2). It will then validate the padding according to the selected scheme. If the padding checks fail, TPM_RC_VALUE is returned. Otherwise, the data is returned with the padding removed. If no padding is used, the returned value is an unsigned integer value that is the result of the modular exponentiation of cipherText using the private exponent of keyHandle. The returned value may include leading octets zeros so that it is the same size as the public modulus. For the other padding schemes, the returned value will be smaller than the public modulus but will contain all the data remaining after padding is removed and this may include leading zeros if the original encrypted value contained leading zeros.

If a label is used in the padding process of the scheme during encryption, the label parameter is required to be present in the decryption process and label is required to be the same in both cases. If label is not the same, the decrypt operation is very likely to fail ([TPM_RC_VALUE). If label is present (label.size != 0), it shall be a byte stream whose last byte is zero or the TPM will return TPM_RC_VALUE.

NOTE: The size of label includes the terminating null.

The message parameter in the response may be encrypted using parameter encryption.

If inScheme is used, and the scheme requires a hash algorithm it may not be TPM_ALG_NULL.

If the scheme does not require a label, the value in label is not used but the size of the label field is checked for consistency with the indicated data type (TPM2B_DATA). That is, the field may not be larger than allowed for a TPM2B_DATA.
14.3.2 Command and Response

Table 47 — TPM2_RSA_Decrypt Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_RSA_Decrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>RSA key to use for decryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC_KEY_RSA</td>
<td>cipherText</td>
<td>cipher text to be decrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE An encrypted RSA data block is the size of the public modulus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_RSA_DECRYPT+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>the padding scheme to use if scheme associated with keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>label</td>
<td>label whose association with the message is to be verified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 48 — TPM2_RSA_Decrypt Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC_KEY_RSA</td>
<td>message</td>
<td>decrypted output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.3.3 Detailed Actions

14.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/RSA_Decrypt.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "RSA_Decrypt_fp.h"

#if CC_RSA_Decrypt  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
  // decrypts the provided data block and removes the padding if applicable
 */
#endif

TPM_RC
TPM2_RSA_Decrypt(RSA_Decrypt_In*  in,  // IN: input parameter list
                 RSA_Decrypt_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
  TPM_RC            result;
  OBJECT*           rsaKey;
  TPMT_RSA_DECRYPT* scheme;

  // Input Validation

  rsaKey = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);

  // The selected key must be an RSA key
  if(rsaKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_RSA)
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_RSA_Decrypt_keyHandle;

  // The selected key must be an unrestricted decryption key
  if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(rsaKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted)
    || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(rsaKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_RSA_Decrypt_keyHandle;

  // NOTE: Proper operation of this command requires that the sensitive area
  // of the key is loaded. This is assured because authorization is required
  // to use the sensitive area of the key. In order to check the authorization,
  // the sensitive area has to be loaded, even if authorization is with policy.

  // If label is present, make sure that it is a NULL-terminated string
  if(!IsLabelProperlyFormatted(&in->label.b))
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_RSA_Decrypt_label;

  // Command Output
  // Select a scheme for decrypt.
  scheme = CryptRsaSelectScheme(in->keyHandle, &in->inScheme);
  if(scheme == NULL)
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_RSA_Decrypt_inScheme;
```

// Decryption. TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_SIZE, and TPM_RC_KEY error may be
// returned by CryptRsaDecrypt.
// NOTE: CryptRsaDecrypt can also return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES or TPM_RC_BINDING
// when the key is not a decryption key but that was checked above.
out->message.t.size = sizeof(out->message.t.buffer);
result = CryptRsaDecrypt(
    &out->message.b, &in->cipherText.b, rsaKey, scheme, &in->label.b);
return result;
}
#endif // CC_RSA_Decrypt

谴责
14.4 TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen

14.4.1 General Description

This command uses the TPM to generate an ephemeral key pair \((d_e, Q_e)\) where \(Q_e := [d_e]G\). It uses the private ephemeral key and a loaded public key \((Q_S)\) to compute the shared secret value \((P := [hd_e]Q_S)\).

\textit{keyHandle} shall refer to a loaded, ECC key (TPM_RC_KEY). The sensitive portion of this key need not be loaded.

The curve parameters of the loaded ECC key are used to generate the ephemeral key.

\textbf{NOTE} This function is the equivalent of encrypting data to another object's public key. The \textit{seed} value is used in a KDF to generate a symmetric key and that key is used to encrypt the data. Once the data is encrypted and the symmetric key discarded, only the object with the private portion of the \textit{keyHandle} will be able to decrypt it.

The \textit{zPoint} in the response may be encrypted using parameter encryption.
### 14.4.2 Command and Response

#### Table 49 — TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ECDH_KeyGen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>keyHandle</td>
<td>Handle of a loaded ECC key public area. Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 50 — TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>zPoint</td>
<td>results of $P := h[d_i] Q_s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>pubPoint</td>
<td>generated ephemeral public point ($Q_e$)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.4.3 Detailed Actions

14.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ECDH_KeyGen.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ECDH_KeyGen_fp.h"

#if CC_ECDH_KeyGen  // Conditional expansion of this file
*/ (See part 3 specification) */
// This command uses the TPM to generate an ephemeral public key and the product
// of the ephemeral private key and the public portion of an ECC key.
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//  TPM_RC_KEY 'keyHandle' does not reference an ECC key
TPM2_ECDH_KeyGen(ECDH_KeyGen_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
  ECDH_KeyGen_Out* out);  // OUT: output parameter list
{
  OBJECT* eccKey;
  TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER sensitive;
  TPM_RC result;

  // Input Validation
  eccKey = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
  if(eccKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_ECDH_KeyGen_keyHandle;

  // Command Output
  do
  {
    TPMT_PUBLIC* keyPublic = &eccKey->publicArea;
    result = CryptEccNewKeyPair(&out->pubPoint.point,
      &sensitive,
      keyPublic->parameters.eccDetail.curveID);
    if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    {
      // Compute Z
      result = CryptEccPointMultiply(&out->zPoint.point,
        keyPublic->parameters.eccDetail.curveID,
        &keyPublic->unique.ecc,
        &sensitive,
        NULL,
        NULL);

      // The point in the key is not on the curve. Indicate
      // that the key is bad.
      if(result == TPM_RC_ECC_POINT)
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_ECDH_KeyGen_keyHandle;
    }
  } while(result == TPM_RC_NO_RESULT);
  return result;
}
#endif  // CC_ECDH_KeyGen
```
14.5  TPM2_ECDH_ZGen

14.5.1  General Description

This command uses the TPM to recover the \( Z \) value from a public point \( (Q_b) \) and a private key \( (d_s) \). It will perform the multiplication of the provided \( \text{inPoint} (Q_b) \) with the private key \( (d_s) \) and return the coordinates of the resultant point \( (Z = (x_z, y_z) := [h d_s]Q_b; \text{where} \ h \text{ is the cofactor of the curve}) \).

\( \text{keyHandle} \) shall refer to a loaded, ECC key (TPM_RC_KEY) with the restricted attribute CLEAR and the decrypt attribute SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

**NOTE** While TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES is preferred, TPM_RC_KEY is acceptable.

The scheme of the key referenced by \( \text{keyHandle} \) is required to be either TPM_ALG_ECDH or TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_SCHEME).

\( \text{inPoint} \) is required to be on the curve of the key referenced by \( \text{keyHandle} \) (TPM_RC_ECC_POINT).

The parameters of the key referenced by \( \text{keyHandle} \) are used to perform the point multiplication.
### 14.5.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ECDH_ZGen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>handle of a loaded ECC key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>inPoint</td>
<td>a public key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 52 — TPM2_ECDH_ZGen Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>outPoint</td>
<td>X and Y coordinates of the product of the multiplication $Z = (x_Z,y_Z) := [hd_3]Q_B$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.5.3 Detailed Actions

14.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ECDH_ZGen.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ECDH_ZGen_fp.h"

#if CC_ECDH_ZGen // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
   This command uses the TPM to recover the Z value from a public point
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES  key referenced by 'keyA' is restricted or not a decrypt key
// TPM_RC_KEY          key referenced by 'keyA' is not an ECC key
// TPM_RC_NO_RESULT    multiplying 'inPoint' resulted in a point at infinity
// TPM_RC_SCHEME       the scheme of the key referenced by 'keyA'
//                      is not TPM_ALG_NULL, TPM_ALG_ECDH,
TPM_RC

TPM2_ECDH_ZGen(ECDH_ZGen_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
               ECDH_ZGen_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC result;
    OBJECT* eccKey;

    // Input Validation
    eccKey = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);

    // Selected key must be a non-restricted, decrypt ECC key
    if(eccKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_ECDH_ZGen_keyHandle;
    // Selected key needs to be unrestricted with the 'decrypt' attribute
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(eccKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(eccKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_ECDH_ZGen_keyHandle;
    // Make sure the scheme allows this use
    if(eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.scheme.scheme != TPM_ALG_ECDH
        && eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.scheme.scheme != TPM_ALG_NULL)
        return TPM_RC_SCHEME + RC_ECDH_ZGen_keyHandle;
    // Command Output
    // Compute Z. TPM_RC_ECC_POINT or TPM_RC_NO_RESULT may be returned here.
    result = CryptEccPointMultiply(&out->outPoint.point,
                                   eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.curveID,
                                   &in->inPoint.point,
                                   &eccKey->sensitive.sensitive.ecc,
                                   NULL,
                                   NULL);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_ECDH_ZGen_inPoint);
    return result;
}
#endif // CC_ECDH_ZGen
```

---

Note: The above code snippet is a part of the Trusted Platform Module Library specification, specifically detailing the implementation of the `ECDH_ZGen` function. The code includes comments and a conditional compilation directive to ensure that the code is only expanded under specific conditions. The function is designed to use the TPM to recover the Z value from a public point, with validation checks on the input key and output parameters. The return type is defined based on various conditions related to the key and scheme attributes.
14.6 TPM2_ECC_Parameters

14.6.1 General Description

This command returns the parameters of an ECC curve identified by its TCG-assigned curveID.
The value returned is the same as that from the TCG Algorithm Registry but may not be the same size.

EXAMPLE The value 01 can be returned as 00000001.
14.6.2 Command and Response

Table 53 — TPM2_ECC_Parameters Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ECC_Parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ECC_CURVE</td>
<td>curveID</td>
<td>parameter set selector</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 54 — TPM2_ECC_Parameters Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_ALGORITHM_DETAIL_ECC</td>
<td>parameters</td>
<td>ECC parameters for the selected curve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.6.3 Detailed Actions

14.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ECC_Parameters.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ECC_Parameters_fp.h"

#if CC_ECC_Parameters // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// This command returns the parameters of an ECC curve identified by its TCG
// assigned curveID
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_VALUE Unsupported ECC curve ID
TPM_RC
TPM2_ECC_Parameters(ECC_Parameters_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    ECC_Parameters_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
){
    // Command Output
    // Get ECC curve parameters
    if(CryptEccGetParameters(in->curveID, &out->parameters))
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    else
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_ECC_Parameters_curveID;
}
#endif // CC_ECC_Parameters
```

```c
```
```
14.7 TPM2_ZGen_2Phase

14.7.1 General Description

This command supports two-phase key exchange protocols. The command is used in combination with TPM2_EC_Ephemeral(). TPM2_EC_Ephemeral() generates an ephemeral key and returns the public point of that ephemeral key along with a numeric value that allows the TPM to regenerate the associated private key.

The input parameters for this command are a static public key (inQsU), an ephemeral key (inQeU) from party B, and the commitCounter returned by TPM2_EC_Ephemeral(). The TPM uses the counter value to regenerate the ephemeral private key (de,V) and the associated public key (Qe,V). keyA provides the static ephemeral elements ds,V and Qs,V. This provides the two pairs of ephemeral and static keys that are required for the schemes supported by this command.

The TPM will compute Z or Ze and Zs according to the selected scheme. If the scheme is not a two-phase key exchange scheme or if the scheme is not supported, the TPM will return TPM_RC_SCHEME.

It is an error if inQsB or inQeB are not on the curve of keyA (TPM_RC_ECC_POINT).

The two-phase key schemes that were assigned an algorithm ID as of the time of the publication of this specification are TPM_ALG_ECDH, TPM_ALG_ECMQV, and TPM_ALG_SM2.

If this command is supported, then support for TPM_ALG_ECDH is required. Support for TPM_ALG_ECMQV or TPM_ALG_SM2 is optional.

NOTE 1 If SM2 is supported and this command is supported, then the implementation is required to support the key exchange protocol of SM2, part 3.

For TPM_ALG_ECDH outZ1 will be Zs and outZ2 will be Ze as defined in clause 6.1.1.2 of SP800-56A.

NOTE 2 An unrestricted decryption key using ECDH can be used in either TPM2_ECDH_ZGen() or TPM2_ZGen_2Phase as the computation done with the private part of keyA is the same in both cases.

For TPM_ALG_ECMQV or TPM_ALG_SM2 outZ1 will be Z and outZ2 will be an Empty Point.

NOTE 3 An Empty Point has two Empty Buffers as coordinates meaning the minimum size value for outZ2 will be four.

If the input scheme is TPM_ALG_ECDH, then outZ1 will be Zs and outZ2 will be Ze. For schemes like MQV (including SM2), outZ1 will contain the computed value and outZ2 will be an Empty Point.

NOTE 4 The Z values returned by the TPM are a full point and not just an x-coordinate.

If a computation of either Z produces the point at infinity, then the corresponding Z value will be an Empty Point.
### 14.7.2 Command and Response

#### Table 55 — TPM2_ZGen_2Phase Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ZGen_2Phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyA</td>
<td>handle of an unrestricted decryption key ECC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The private key referenced by this handle is used as $d_A$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>inQsB</td>
<td>other party’s static public key ($Q_{s,B} = (X_{s,B}, Y_{s,B})$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>inQeB</td>
<td>other party’s ephemeral public key ($Q_{e,B} = (X_{e,B}, Y_{e,B})$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ECC_KEY_EXCHANGE</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>the key exchange scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>counter</td>
<td>value returned by TPM2_EC_Ephemeral()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 56 — TPM2_ZGen_2Phase Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>outZ1</td>
<td>X and Y coordinates of the computed value (scheme dependent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>outZ2</td>
<td>X and Y coordinates of the second computed value (scheme dependent)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.7.3 Detailed Actions

14.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ZGen_2Phase.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ZGen_2Phase_fp.h"

#if CC_ZGen_2Phase  // Conditional expansion of this file

// This command uses the TPM to recover one or two Z values in a two phase key exchange protocol
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//      TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               key referenced by 'keyA' is restricted or not a decrypt key
//      TPM_RC_ECC_POINT                'inQsB' or 'inQeB' is not on the curve of the key referenced by 'keyA'
//      TPM_RC_KEY                      key referenced by 'keyA' is not an ECC key
//      TPM_RC_SCHEME                   the scheme of the key referenced by 'keyA' is not TPM_ALG_NULL, TPM_ALG_ECDH,
//                                      TPM_ALG_ECMQV or TPM_ALG_SM2

TPM_RC TPM2_ZGen_2Phase(ZGen_2Phase_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                        ZGen_2Phase_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result;
    OBJECT* eccKey;
    TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER r;
    TPM_ALG_ID scheme;

    // Input Validation
    eccKey = HandleToObject(in->keyA);

    // keyA must be an ECC key
    if(eccKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
        return TPM_RCSKEY + RC_ZGen_2Phase_keyA;

    // keyA must not be restricted and must be a decrypt key
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(eccKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted)
        || !IS_ATTRIBUTE(eccKey->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_ZGen_2Phase_keyA;

    // if the scheme of keyA is TPM_ALG_NULL, then use the input scheme; otherwise the input scheme must be the same as the scheme of keyA
    scheme = eccKey->publicArea.parameters.asymDetail.scheme.scheme;
    if(scheme != TPM_ALG_NULL)
        { if(scheme != in->inScheme)
            return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_ZGen_2Phase_inScheme;
            }
    else
        scheme = in->inScheme;

        if(scheme == TPM_ALG_NULL)
            return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_ZGen_2Phase_inScheme;

        // Input points must be on the curve of keyA
        if(!CryptEccIsPointOnCurve(eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.curveID,
                                   &in->inQsB.point))
            return TPM_RCS_ECC_POINT + RC_ZGen_2Phase_inQsB;

        if(!CryptEccIsPointOnCurve(eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.curveID,
                                   &in->inQeB.point))
```

```
```
```
return TPM_RCS_ECC_POINT + RC_ZGen_2Phase_inQeB;

if(!CryptGenerateR(
    &r, &in->counter, eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.curveID, NULL))
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_ZGen_2Phase_counter;

// Command Output
result = CryptEcc2PhaseKeyExchange(&out->outZ1.point,
    &out->outZ2.point,
    eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail.curveID,
    &eccKey->sensitive.sensitive.ecc,
    &r,
    &in->inQsB.point,
    &in->inQeB.point);

if(result == TPM_RC_SCHEME)
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_ZGen_2Phase_inScheme;

if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    CryptEndCommit(in->counter);

return result;
#endif // CC_ZGen_2Phase
14.8  TPM2_ECC_Encrypt

14.8.1  General Description

This command performs ECC encryption as described in Part 1, Annex D.
The key referenced by `keyHandle` (key) is required to be an ECC key (TPM_RC_KEY).
The TPM does not verify the `objectAttributes` of `key`.

NOTE 1  The TPM cannot check the integrity of `objectAttributes` when only the public portion of `key` is loaded.

If the default key scheme is TPM_ALG_NULL, an appropriate `inScheme` is required. If the default key scheme is not TPM_ALG_NULL, the key scheme and `inScheme` must be the same, and the scheme must be a valid encryption scheme.

NOTE 2  The key scheme and input scheme are checked in the same way for both this command and for TPM2_ECC_Decrypt(). This consistency is to simplify the TPM.

As determined by the encryption scheme, the function returns a public ephemeral key (C1), encrypted data (C2), and an integrity value (C3).
The `plainText` parameter in the command may be encrypted using parameter encryption.

NOTE 3  TPM2_ECC_Encrypt() was added in revision 01.61.

14.8.2  Command and Response

Table 57 — TPM2_ECC_Encrypt Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ECC_Encrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>keyHandle</td>
<td>reference to the public portion of ECC key to use for encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>plainText</td>
<td>Plaintext to be encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_KDF_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>the KDF to use if <code>scheme</code> associated with <code>keyHandle</code> is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 58 — TPM2_ECC_Encrypt Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>C1</td>
<td>the public ephemeral key used for ECDH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>C2</td>
<td>the data block produced by the XOR process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>C3</td>
<td>the integrity value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14.8.3 Detailed Actions

#### 14.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ECC_Encrypt.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ECC_Encrypt_fp.h"

#if CC_ECC_Encrypt  // Conditional expansion of this file

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES key referenced by 'keyHandle' is restricted
// TPM_RC_KEY keyHandle does not reference an ECC key
// TPM_RCS_SCHEME bad scheme
TPM_RC

TPM2_ECC_Encrypt(ECC_Encrypt_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                 ECC_Encrypt_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
) {

    OBJECT* pubKey = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    // Parameter validation

    if(pubKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_ECC_Encrypt_keyHandle;
    // Have to have a scheme selected
    if(!CryptEccSelectScheme(pubKey, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_ECC_Encrypt_inScheme;
    // Command Output
    return CryptEccEncrypt(      
      pubKey, &in->inScheme, &in->plainText, &out->C1.point, &out->C2, &out->C3);
}
#endif  // CC_ECC_Encrypt
```

14.9  TPM2_ECC_Decrypt

14.9.1  General Description

This command performs ECC decryption.

The key referenced by keyHandle shall be an ECC key (TPM_RC_KEY) with restricted CLEAR and decrypt SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

This command uses the private key of keyHandle for this operation and authorization is required.

If the default key scheme is TPM_ALG_NULL, an appropriate inScheme is required. If the default key scheme is not TPM_ALG_NULL, the key scheme and inScheme must be the same, and the scheme must be a valid decryption scheme.

The function returns decrypted value plainText.

The ciphertext parameter in the command may be encrypted using parameter encryption.

NOTE  TPM2_ECC_Decrypt() was added in revision 01.61.

2.2.1  Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ECC_Decrypt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| TPMI_DH_OBJECT     | @keyHandle  | ECC key to use for decryption  
|                   |             | Auth Index: 1  
|                   |             | Auth Role: USER                                                             |
| TPM2B_ECC_POINT    | C1          | the public ephemeral key used for ECDH                                         |
| TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER   | C2          | the data block produced by the XOR process                                   |
| TPM2B_DIGEST       | C3          | the integrity value                                                          |
| TPMT_KDF_SCHEME+   | inScheme    | the KDF to use if scheme associated with keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL           |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>plainText</td>
<td>decrypted output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.9.2 Detailed Actions

14.9.2.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/ECC_Decrypt.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ECC_Decrypt_fp.h"
#include "CryptEccCrypt_fp.h"

#if CC_ECC_Decrypt // Conditional expansion of this file

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//  TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES key referenced by 'keyHandle' is restricted
//  TPM_RC_KEY keyHandle does not reference an ECC key
//  TPM_RC_NO_RESULT internal error in big number processing
//  TPM_RC_SCHEME bad scheme
//  TPM_RC_VALUE C3 did not match hash of recovered data
TPM_RC TPM2_ECC_Decrypt(ECC_Decrypt_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                           ECC_Decrypt_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    OBJECT* key = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    // Parameter validation
    // Must be the correct type of key with correct attributes
    if (key->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_ECC_Decrypt_keyHandle;
    if (!CryptEccSelectScheme(key, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RC_SCHEME + RC_ECC_Decrypt_inScheme;
    // Command Output
    return CryptEccDecrypt(
        key, &in->inScheme, &out->plainText, &in->C1.point, &in->C2, &in->C3);
}
#endif // CC_ECC_Decrypt
```
15 Symmetric Primitives

15.1 Introduction

The commands in clause 14.9.2.1 provide low-level primitives for access to the symmetric algorithms implemented in the TPM that operate on blocks of data. These include symmetric encryption and decryption as well as hash and HMAC. All of the commands in this group are stateless. That is, they have no persistent state that is retained in the TPM when the command is complete.

For hashing, HMAC, and Events that require large blocks of data with retained state, the sequence commands are provided (see clause 16.2.3.1).

Some of the symmetric encryption/decryption modes use an IV. When an IV is used, it may be an initiation value or a chained value from a previous stage. The chaining for each mode is described in Table 61.
### Table 61 — Symmetric Chaining Process

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Chaining process</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| TPM_ALG_CTR  | The TPM will increment the entire IV provided by the caller. The next count value will be returned to the caller as \( \text{ivOut} \). This can be the input value to the next encrypt or decrypt operation.  
   \( \text{ivIn} \) is required to be the size of a block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{ivIn} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.  
   EXAMPLE 1  
   AES requires that \( \text{ivIn} \) be 128 bits (16 octets).  
   \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the size of a cipher block and not the size of the last encrypted block.  
   NOTE \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the value of the counter after the last block is encrypted.  
   EXAMPLE 2  
   If \( \text{ivIn} \) were 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 04 16, and four data blocks were encrypted, \( \text{ivOut} \) will have a value of 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 01 04 16.  
   All the bits of the IV are incremented as if it were an unsigned integer.                                                                 |
| TPM_ALG_OFB  | In Output Feedback (OFB), the output of the pseudo-random function (the block encryption algorithm) is XORed with a plaintext block to produce a ciphertext block. \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the value that was XORed with the last plaintext block. That value can be used as the \( \text{ivIn} \) for a next buffer.  
   \( \text{ivIn} \) is required to be the size of a block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{ivIn} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.  
   \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the size of a cipher block and not the size of the last encrypted block.                                                                 |
| TPM_ALG_CBC  | For Cipher Block Chaining (CBC), a block of ciphertext is XORed with the next plaintext block and that block is encrypted. The encrypted block is then input to the encryption of the next block. The last ciphertext block then is used as an IV for the next buffer.  
   Even though the last ciphertext block is evident in the encrypted data, it is also returned in \( \text{ivOut} \).  
   \( \text{ivIn} \) is required to be the size of a block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{ivIn} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.  
   \( \text{inData} \) is required to be an even multiple of the block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{inData} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.                                                                 |
| TPM_ALG_CFB  | Similar to CBC in that the last ciphertext block is an input to the encryption of the next block. \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the value that was XORed with the last plaintext block. That value can be used as the \( \text{ivIn} \) for a next buffer.  
   \( \text{ivIn} \) is required to be the size of a block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{ivIn} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.  
   \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the size of a cipher block and not the size of the last encrypted block.                                                                 |
| TPM_ALG_ECB  | Electronic Codebook (ECB) has no chaining. Each block of plaintext is encrypted using the key. ECB does not support chaining and \( \text{ivIn} \) shall be the Empty Buffer. \( \text{ivOut} \) will be the Empty Buffer.  
   \( \text{inData} \) is required to be an even multiple of the block encrypted by the selected algorithm and key combination. If the size of \( \text{inData} \) is not correct, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.                                                                 |
15.2  TPM2_EncryptDecrypt

15.2.1  General Description

NOTE 1 This command is deprecated, and TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2() is preferred. This should be reflected in platform-specific specifications.

NOTE 2 A TPM often will not implement this command for commercial reasons. Platform-specific specifications may provide additional details about this.

This command performs symmetric encryption or decryption using the symmetric key referenced by keyHandle and the selected mode.

keyHandle shall reference a symmetric cipher object (TPM_RC_KEY) with the restricted attribute CLEAR (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

If the decrypt parameter of the command is TRUE, then the decrypt attribute of the key is required to be SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES). If the decrypt parameter of the command is FALSE, then the sign attribute of the key is required to be SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

NOTE 3 A key is permitted to have both decrypt and sign SET.

If the mode of the key is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then that is the only mode that can be used with the key and the caller is required to set mode either to TPM_ALG_NULL or to the same mode as the key (TPM_RC_MODE). If the mode of the key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then the caller may set mode to any valid symmetric encryption/decryption mode but may not select TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_MODE).

If the TPM allows this command to be canceled before completion, then the TPM may produce incremental results and return TPM_RC_SUCCESS rather than TPM_RC_CANCELED. In such case, outData may be less than inData.

NOTE 4 If all the data is encrypted/decrypted, the size of outData will be the same as inData.
### 15.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 62 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_EncryptDecrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>the symmetric key used for the operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>decrypt</td>
<td>if YES, then the operation is decryption; if NO, the operation is encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC_CIPHER_MODE+</td>
<td>mode</td>
<td>symmetric encryption/decryption mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>this field shall match the default mode of the key or be TPM_ALG_NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_IV</td>
<td>ivIn</td>
<td>an initial value as required by the algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>inData</td>
<td>the data to be encrypted/decrypted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 63 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>outData</td>
<td>encrypted or decrypted output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_IV</td>
<td>ivOut</td>
<td>chaining value to use for IV in next round</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.2.3 Detailed Actions

15.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Symmetric/EncryptDecrypt.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "EncryptDecrypt_fp.h"
#if CC_EncryptDecrypt2
  # include "EncryptDecrypt_spt_fp.h"
#endif

#if CC_EncryptDecrypt  // Conditional expansion of this file
  /*(See part 3 specification)
  // symmetric encryption or decryption
  */
  // Return Type: TPM_RC
  // TPM_RC_KEY       is not a symmetric decryption key with both
  // public and private portions loaded
  // TPM_RC_SIZE      'IvIn' size is incompatible with the block cipher mode;
  // or 'inData' size is not an even multiple of the block
  // TPM_RC_VALUE     'keyHandle' is restricted and the argument 'mode' does
  // not match the key's mode
  TPM_RC
TPM2_EncryptDecrypt(EncryptDecrypt_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                      EncryptDecrypt_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
                      )
{
  # if CC_EncryptDecrypt2
    return EncryptDecryptShared(
      in->keyHandle, in->decrypt, in->mode, &in->ivIn, &in->inData, out);
  # else
    OBJECT*   symKey;
    UINT16    keySize;
    UINT16    blockSize;
    BYTE*     key;
    TPM_ALG_ID alg;
    TPM_ALG_ID mode;
    TPM_RC    result;
    BOOL      OK;
    TPMA_OBJECT attributes;

    // Input Validation
    symKey     = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    mode       = symKey->publicArea.parameters.symDetail.sym.mode.sym;
    attributes = symKey->publicArea.objectAttributes;
    *
    // The input key should be a symmetric key
    if(symKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER)
      return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_EncryptDecrypt_keyHandle;
    // The key must be unrestricted and allow the selected operation
    OK      = IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted) if(YES == in->decrypt)
    else OK = OK && IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_OBJECT, decrypt);
    if(!OK)
      return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_EncryptDecrypt_keyHandle;
    // If the key mode is not TPM_ALG_NULL...
    if(mode != TPM_ALG_NULL
      {
        // then the input mode has to be TPM_ALG_NULL or the same as the key
        if((in->mode != TPM_ALG_NULL) && (in->mode != mode))
```
```c
return TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_mode;
}
else
{
    // if the key mode is null, then the input can't be null
    if((in->mode == TPM_ALG_NULL)
        return TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_mode;
    mode = in->mode;
}
// The input iv for ECB mode should be an Empty Buffer. All the other modes
// should have an iv size same as encryption block size
keySize = symKey->publicArea.parameters.symDetail.sym.keyBits.sym;
alg = symKey->publicArea.parameters.symDetail.sym.algorithm;
blockSize = CryptGetSymmetricBlockSize(alg, keySize);
// reverify the algorithm. This is mainly to keep static analysis tools happy
if(blockSize == 0)
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_EncryptDecrypt_keyHandle;
// Note: When an algorithm is not supported by a TPM, the TPM_ALG_xxx for that
// algorithm is not defined. However, it is assumed that the TPM_ALG_xxx for
// the algorithm is always defined. Both have the same numeric value.
// TPM_ALG_xxx is used here so that the code does not get cluttered with
// #ifdef's. Having this check does not mean that the algorithm is supported.
// If it was not supported the unmarshaling code would have rejected it before
// this function were called. This means that, depending on the implementation,
// the check could be redundant but it doesn't hurt.
if(((mode == TPM_ALG_ECB) && (in->ivIn.t.size != 0))
    || ((mode != TPM_ALG_ECB) && (in->ivIn.t.size != blockSize)))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_ivIn;
// The input data size of CBC mode or ECB mode must be an even multiple of
// the symmetric algorithm's block size
if(((mode == TPM_ALG_CBC) || (mode == TPM_ALG_ECB))
    && ((in->inData.t.size % blockSize) != 0))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_inData;
// Copy IV
// Note: This is copied here so that the calls to the encrypt/decrypt functions
// will modify the output buffer, not the input buffer
out->ivOut = in->ivIn;
// Command Output
key = symKey->sensitive.sensitive.sym.t.buffer;
// For symmetric encryption, the cipher data size is the same as plain data
// size.
out->outData.t.size = in->inData.t.size;
if(in->decrypt == YES)
{
    // Decrypt data to output
    result = CryptSymmetricDecrypt(out->outData.t.buffer,
        alg,
        keySize,
        key,
        &out->ivOut),
        mode,
        in->inData.t.size,
        in->inData.t.buffer);
}
else
{
    // Encrypt data to output
    result = CryptSymmetricEncrypt(out->outData.t.buffer,
        alg,
        keySize,
        key,
        &out->ivOut),
        mode,
        in->inData.t.size,
        in->inData.t.buffer);
}
```
&\( out \rightarrow ivOut \),
mode,
in\( \rightarrow \)inData.t.size,
in\( \rightarrow \)inData.t.buffer);

} return result;

# endif // CC_EncryptDecrypt2

} // CC_EncryptDecrypt

#endif // CC_EncryptDecrypt2

} // CC_EncryptDecrypt2

#endif // CC_EncryptDecrypt
15.3 **TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2**

15.3.1 **General Description**

This command is identical to TPM2_EncryptDecrypt(), except that the `inData` parameter is the first parameter. This permits `inData` to be parameter encrypted.

**NOTE 1** In platform specification updates, this command is preferred and TPM2_EncryptDecrypt() should be deprecated.

**NOTE 2** A TPM often will not implement this command for commercial reasons. Platform-specific specifications may provide additional details about this.

15.3.2 **Command and Response**

**Table 64 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2 Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_EncryptDecrypt2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>the symmetric key used for the operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>inData</td>
<td>the data to be encrypted/decrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>decrypt</td>
<td>if YES, then the operation is decryption; if NO, the operation is encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_CIPHER_MODE+</td>
<td>mode</td>
<td>symmetric mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>this field shall match the default mode of the key or be TPM_ALG_NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_IV</td>
<td>ivIn</td>
<td>an initial value as required by the algorithm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 65 — TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2 Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>outData</td>
<td>encrypted or decrypted output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_IV</td>
<td>ivOut</td>
<td>chaining value to use for IV in next round</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.3.3 Detailed Actions

15.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Symmetric/EncryptDecrypt2.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "EncryptDecrypt2_fp.h"
#include "EncryptDecrypt_fp.h"
#include "EncryptDecrypt_spt_fp.h"

#if CC_EncryptDecrypt2 // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // symmetric encryption or decryption using modified parameter list
 */

 TPM_RC TPM2_EncryptDecrypt2(EncryptDecrypt2_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
   EncryptDecrypt2_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
  TPM_RC result;
  // EncryptDecryptShared() performs the operations as shown in
  // TPM2_EncryptDecrypt
  result = EncryptDecryptShared(in-&gt;keyHandle,
    in-&gt;decrypt,
    in-&gt;mode,
    &in-&gt;ivIn,
    &in-&gt;inData,
    (EncryptDecrypt_Out*)out);
  // Handle response code swizzle.
  switch(result)
  {
    case TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_mode:
      result = TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_EncryptDecrypt2_mode;
      break;
    case TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_ivIn:
      result = TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt2_ivIn;
      break;
    case TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt_inData:
      result = TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_EncryptDecrypt2_inData;
      break;
    default:
      break;
  }
  return result;
}
#endif // CC_EncryptDecrypt2
```
15.4 TPM2_Hash

15.4.1 General Description

This command performs a hash operation on a data buffer and returns the results.

NOTE If the data buffer to be hashed is larger than will fit into the TPM’s input buffer, then the sequence hash commands will need to be used.

If the results of the hash will be used in a signing operation that uses a restricted signing key, then the ticket returned by this command can indicate that the hash is safe to sign.

If the digest is not safe to sign, then the TPM will return a TPMT_TK_HASHCHECK with the hierarchy set to TPM_RH_NULL and digest set to the Empty Buffer.

If hierarchy is TPM_RH_NULL, then digest in the ticket will be the Empty Buffer.
15.4.2 Command and Response

### Table 66 — TPM2_Hash Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, decrypt, or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Hash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>data to be hashed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>algorithm for the hash being computed – shall not be TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY</td>
<td>hierarchy</td>
<td>hierarchy to use for the ticket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 67 — TPM2_Hash Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>outHash</td>
<td>results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_HASHCHECK</td>
<td>validation</td>
<td>ticket indicating that the sequence of octets used to compute <em>outHash</em> did not start with TPM_GENERATED_VALUE will be a NULL ticket if the digest may not be signed with a restricted key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.4.3 Detailed Actions

15.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Symmetric/Hash.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Hash_fp.h"

#if CC_Hash  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Hash a data buffer
 */
TPM_RC TPM2_Hash(Hash_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                  Hash_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    // Command Output
    // Output hash
    // Start hash stack
    out->outHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, in->hashAlg);
    // Adding hash data
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->data.b);
    // Complete hash
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &out->outHash.b);
    // Output ticket
    out->validation.tag = TPM_ST_HASHCHECK;
    out->validation.hierarchy = in->hierarchy;
    if(in->hierarchy == TPM_RH_NULL) {
        // Ticket is not required
        out->validation.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
        out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
    } else if((in->data.t.size >= sizeof(TPM_GENERATED_VALUE) && !TicketIsSafe(in->data.b)) {
        // Ticket is not safe
        out->validation.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
        out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
    } else {
        TPM_RC result;
        // Compute ticket
        result = TicketComputeHashCheck(
            in->hierarchy, in->hashAlg, &out->outHash, &out->validation);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    }
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_Hash
```
15.5 TPM2_HMAC

15.5.1 General Description

This command performs an HMAC on the supplied data using the indicated hash algorithm.

NOTE 1 A TPM can implement either TPM2_HMAC() or TPM2_MAC() but not both, as they have the same command code and there is no way to distinguish them. A TPM that supports TPM2_MAC() will support any code that was written to use TPM2_HMAC(), but a TPM that supports TPM2_HMAC() will not support a MAC based on symmetric block ciphers.

The caller shall provide proper authorization for use of handle.

If the sign attribute is not SET in the key referenced by handle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.
If the key type is not TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE. If the key referenced by handle has the restricted attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 2 For symmetric signing with a restricted key, see TPM2_Sign(). TPM2_HMAC() has no ticket parameter, which is required with a restricted key.

If the default scheme of the key referenced by handle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the hashAlg parameter is required to be either the same as the key’s default or TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE).
If the default scheme of the key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then hashAlg is required to be a valid hash and not TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE) (see hash selection matrix in Table 76).

NOTE 3 A key can only have both sign and decrypt SET if the key is unrestricted. When both sign and decrypt are set, there is no default scheme for the key and the hash algorithm must be specified.
### 15.5.2 Command and Response

**Table 68 — TPM2_HMAC Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_HMAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@handle</td>
<td>handle for the symmetric signing key providing the HMAC key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>buffer</td>
<td>HMAC data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>algorithm to use for HMAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 69 — TPM2_HMAC Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>outHMAC</td>
<td>the returned HMAC in a sized buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.5.3 Detailed Actions

15.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Symmetric/HMAC.c

1
#include "Tpm.h"
2
#include "HMAC_fp.h"
3
#if CC_HMAC // Conditional expansion of this file
4*/(See part 3 specification)
5 // Compute HMAC on a data buffer
6 */
7 // Return Type: TPM_RC
8 // TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES key referenced by 'handle' is a restricted key
9 // TPM_RC_KEY 'handle' does not reference a signing key
10 // TPM_RC_TYPE key referenced by 'handle' is not an HMAC key
11 // TPM_RC_VALUE 'hashAlg' is not compatible with the hash algorithm
12 // of the scheme of the object referenced by 'handle'
13 TPM_RC
14 TPM2_HMAC(HMAC_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
15 HMAC_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
16 )
17 {
18 
19 HMAC_STATE hmacState;
20 OBJECT* hmacObject;
21 TPMI_ALG_HASH hashAlg;
22 TPMT_PUBLIC* publicArea;
23 
24 // Input Validation
25 
26 // Get HMAC key object and public area pointers
27 hmacObject = HandleToObject(in->handle);
28 publicArea = &hmacObject->publicArea;
29 // Make sure that the key is an HMAC key
30 if(publicArea->type != TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH)
31 return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_HMAC_handle;
32 33 // and that it is unrestricted
34 if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
35 return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_HMAC_handle;
36 37 // and that it is a signing key
38 if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign))
39 return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_HMAC_handle;
40 41 // See if the key has a default
42 if(publicArea->parameters.keyedHashDetail.scheme.scheme == TPM_ALG_NULL)
43 // it doesn’t so use the input value
44 hashAlg = in->hashAlg;
45 else
46 {
47 // key has a default so use it
48 hashAlg = publicArea->parameters.keyedHashDetail.scheme.details.hmac.hashAlg;
49 // and verify that the input was either the TPM_ALG_NULL or the default
50 if(in->hashAlg != TPM_ALG_NULL && in->hashAlg != hashAlg)
51 hashAlg = TPM_ALG_NULL;
52 }
53 // if we ended up without a hash algorithm then return an error
54 if(hashAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
55 return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_HMAC_hashAlg;
56 57 // Command Output
// Start HMAC stack
out->outHMAC.t.size = CryptHmacStart2B(
    &hmacState, hashAlg, &hmacObject->sensitive.sensitive.bits.b);

// Adding HMAC data
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hmacState.hashState, &in->buffer.b);

// Complete HMAC
CryptHmacEnd2B(&hmacState, &out->outHMAC.b);

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif  // CC_HMAC
15.6 TPM2_MAC

15.6.1 General Description

This command performs an HMAC or a block cipher MAC on the supplied data using the indicated algorithm.

NOTE 1 A TPM can implement either TPM2_HMAC() or TPM2_MAC() but not both as they have the same command code and there is no way to distinguish them. A TPM that supports TPM2_MAC() will support any code that was written to use TPM2_HMAC() but a TPM that supports TPM2_HMAC() will not support a MAC based on symmetric block ciphers.

The caller shall provide proper authorization for use of handle.

If the sign attribute is not SET in the key referenced by handle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

If the key type is neither TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH nor TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE. If the key referenced by handle has the restricted attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 2 For symmetric signing with a restricted key, see TPM2_Sign(). TPM2_MAC() has no ticket parameter, which is required with a restricted key.

If the default scheme or mode of the key referenced by handle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the inScheme parameter is required to be either the same as the key’s default or TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE).

If the default scheme of an HMAC key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then inScheme is required to be a valid hash and not TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE) (see algorithm selection matrix in Table 79).

If the default mode of a symmetric cipher key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then inScheme is required to be a valid block cipher mode for authentication and not TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE)

NOTE 3 A key can only have both sign and decrypt SET if the key is unrestricted. When both sign and decrypt are set, there is no default scheme for the key and inScheme may not be TPM_ALG_NULL.

NOTE 4 TPM2_MAC() was added in revision 01.43.
### 15.6.2 Command and Response

#### Table 70 — TPM2_MAC Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_MAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| TPMI_DH_OBJECT              | @handle        | handle for the symmetric signing key providing the MAC key  
|                             |                | Auth Index: 1                                          |
|                             |                | Auth Role: USER                                        |
| TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER            | buffer         | MAC data                                              |
| TPMI_ALG_MAC_SCHEME+        | inScheme       | algorithm to use for MAC                              |

#### Table 71 — TPM2_MAC Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>outMAC</td>
<td>the returned MAC in a sized buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.6.3 Detailed Actions

15.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Symmetric/MAC.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "MAC_fp.h"

#if CC_MAC // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Compute MAC on a data buffer
 */
TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES       key referenced by 'handle' is a restricted key
TPM_RC_KEY              'handle' does not reference a signing key
TPM_RC_TYPE             key referenced by 'handle' is not an HMAC key
TPM_RC_VALUE           'hashAlg' is not compatible with the hash algorithm
TPM_RC

TPM2_MAC(MAC_In*  in, // IN: input parameter list
MAC_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    OBJECT*      keyObject;
    HMAC_STATE   state;
    TPMT_PUBLIC* publicArea;
    TPM_RC       result;

    // Input Validation
    // Get MAC key object and public area pointers
    keyObject  = HandleToObject(in->handle);
    publicArea = &keyObject->publicArea;

    // If the key is not able to do a MAC, indicate that the handle selects an
    // object that can't do a MAC
    result = CryptSelectMac(publicArea, &in->inScheme);
    if(result == TPM_RCS_TYPE)
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_MAC_handle;
    // If there is another error type, indicate that the scheme and key are not
    // compatible
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_MAC_inScheme);

    // Make sure that the key is not restricted
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign))
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_MAC_handle;

    // Command Output
    out->outMAC.t.size = CryptMacStart(&state,
                        &publicArea->parameters,
                        in->inScheme,
                        &keyObject->sensitive.sensitive.any.b);

    // If the mac can't start, treat it as a fatal error
    if(out->outMAC.t.size == 0)
        return TPM_RC_FAILURE;
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&state.hashState, &in->buffer.b);
    // If the MAC result is not what was expected, it is a fatal error
    if(CryptHmacEnd2B(&state, &out->outMAC.b) != out->outMAC.t.size)
        return TPM_RC_FAILURE;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
```

#endif // CC_MAC


16 Random Number Generator

16.1 TPM2_GetRandom

16.1.1 General Description

This command returns the next $\text{bytesRequested}$ octets from the random number generator (RNG).

NOTE 1 It is recommended that a TPM implement the RNG in a manner that would allow it to return RNG octets such that, as long as the value of $\text{bytesRequested}$ is not greater than the maximum digest size, the frequency of $\text{bytesRequested}$ being more than the number of octets available is an infrequent occurrence.

If $\text{bytesRequested}$ is more than will fit into a TPM2B_DIGEST on the TPM, no error is returned but the TPM will only return as much data as will fit into a TPM2B_DIGEST buffer for the TPM.

NOTE 2 TPM2B_DIGEST is large enough to hold the largest digest that may be produced by the TPM. Because that digest size changes according to the implemented hashes, the maximum amount of data returned by this command is TPM implementation-dependent.
### 16.1.2 Command and Response

#### Table 72 — TPM2_GetRandom Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetRandom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>bytesRequested</td>
<td>number of octets to return</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 73 — TPM2_GetRandom Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>randomBytes</td>
<td>the random octets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.1.3 Detailed Actions

16.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Random/GetRandom.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "GetRandom_fp.h"

#if CC_GetRandom  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// random number generator
*/

TPM_RC TPM2_GetRandom(GetRandom_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                       GetRandom_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
                     )
{
    // Command Output
    // if the requested bytes exceed the output buffer size, generates the
    // maximum bytes that the output buffer allows
    if(in->bytesRequested > sizeof(TPMU_HA))
        out->randomBytes.t.size = sizeof(TPMU_HA);
    else
        out->randomBytes.t.size = in->bytesRequested;
    CryptRandomGenerate(out->randomBytes.t.size, out->randomBytes.t.buffer);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_GetRandom
```
16.2  TPM2_StirRandom

16.2.1  General Description

This command is used to add additional entropy to the RNG state.

NOTE  The "additional input" is as defined in SP800-90A.

The inData parameter may not be larger than 128 octets.
### 16.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 74 — TPM2_StirRandom Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_StirRandom {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE_DATA</td>
<td>inData</td>
<td>additional input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 75 — TPM2_StirRandom Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.2.3 Detailed Actions

16.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Random/StirRandom.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "StirRandom_fp.h"

#if CC_StirRandom // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 specification)
 // add entropy to the RNG state */
#endif

TPM2_StirRandom(StirRandom_In* in // IN: input parameter list
{  // Internal Data Update
    CryptRandomStir(in->inData.t.size, in->inData.t.buffer);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_StirRandom
```
17 Hash/HMAC/Event Sequences

17.1 Introduction

All of the commands in this group are to support sequences for which an intermediate state must be maintained. For a description of sequences, see “Hash, MAC, and Event Sequences” in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

A TPM may implement either TPM2_HMAC_Start() or TPM2_MAC_Start() but not both as they have the same command code and there is no way to distinguish them. A TPM that supports TPM2_MAC_Start() will support any code that was written to use TPM2_HMAC_Start() but a TPM that supports TPM2_HMAC_Start() will not support a MAC based on symmetric block ciphers.

17.2 TPM2_HMAC_Start

17.2.1 General Description

This command starts an HMAC sequence. The TPM will create and initialize an HMAC sequence structure, assign a handle to the sequence, and set the authValue of the sequence object to the value in auth.

NOTE 1 The structure of a sequence object is vendor-dependent.

The caller shall provide proper authorization for use of handle.

If the sign attribute is not SET in the key referenced by handle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.
If the key type is not TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE. If the key referenced by handle has the restricted attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 2 For symmetric signing with a restricted key, see TPM2_Sign(). TPM2_HMAC_Start() has no ticket parameter, which is required with a restricted key.

If the default scheme of the key referenced by handle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the hashAlg parameter is required to be either the same as the key's default or TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE).
If the default scheme of the key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then hashAlg is required to be a valid hash and not TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE).

Table 76 — Hash Selection Matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>handle→restricted (key's restricted attribute)</th>
<th>handle→scheme (hash algorithm from key's scheme)</th>
<th>hashAlg</th>
<th>hash used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR (unrestricted)</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>error(1) (TPM_RC_VALUE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>valid hash</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>valid hash</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL or same as handle→scheme</td>
<td>handle→scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>valid hash</td>
<td>valid hash</td>
<td>error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if hashAlg != handle→scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET (restricted)</td>
<td>don't care</td>
<td>don't care</td>
<td>TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE 1) A hash algorithm is required for the HMAC.

NOTE 2 A TPM may implement either TPM2_HMAC_Start() or TPM2_MAC_Start() but not both, as they have the same command code and there is no way to distinguish them. A TPM that supports TPM2_MAC_Start() will support any code that was written to use TPM2_HMAC_Start(), but a TPM that supports TPM2_HMAC_Start() will not support a MAC based on symmetric block ciphers.
17.2.2 Command and Response

Table 77 — TPM2_HMAC_Start Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_HMAC_Start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@handle</td>
<td>handle of an HMAC key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>authorization value for subsequent use of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>the hash algorithm to use for the HMAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 78 — TPM2_HMAC_Start Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>sequenceHandle</td>
<td>a handle to reference the sequence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 17.2.3 Detailed Actions

## 17.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/HMAC_Start.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "HMAC_Start_fp.h"

#if CC_HMAC_Start  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Initialize a HMAC sequence and create a sequence object
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES key referenced by 'handle' is not a signing key
// or is restricted
// TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY no space to create an internal object
// TPM_RC_KEY key referenced by 'handle' is not an HMAC key
// TPM_RC_VALUE 'hashAlg' is not compatible with the hash algorithm
// of the scheme of the object referenced by 'handle'

TPM_RC TPM2_HMAC_Start(HMAC_Start_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
            HMAC_Start_Out* out,  // OUT: output parameter list
) {

    OBJECT*      keyObject;
    TPM_PUBLIC*  publicArea;
    TPM_ALG_ID   hashAlg;

    // Input Validation
    // Get HMAC key object and public area pointers
    keyObject  = HandleToObject(in->handle);
    publicArea = &keyObject->publicArea;

    // Make sure that the key is an HMAC key
    if(publicArea->type != TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH)
        return TPM_RC_TYPE + RC_HMAC_Start_handle;

    // and that it is unrestricted
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_HMAC_Start_handle;

    // and that it is a signing key
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign))
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_HMAC_Start_handle;

    // See if the key has a default
    if(publicArea->parameters.keyedHashDetail.scheme.scheme == TPM_ALG_NULL)
        // it doesn't so use the input value
        hashAlg = in->hashAlg;
    else
        {
            // key has a default so use it
            hashAlg = publicArea->parameters.keyedHashDetail.scheme.details.hmac.hashAlg;
            // and verify that the input was either the TPM_ALG_NULL or the default
            if(in->hashAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL || in->hashAlg == hashAlg)
                hashAlg = TPM_ALG_NULL;
        }
    // if we ended up without a hash algorithm then return an error
    if(hashAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
        return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_HMAC_Start_hashAlg;

    // Internal Data Update
```

---

**Family “2.0”**

**TCG Public Review**

**Level 00 Revision 01.81**

**Copyright © TCG 2006-2023**

**November 29, 2023**
60     // Create a HMAC sequence object. A TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY error may be
61     // returned at this point
62     return ObjectCreateHMACSequence(
63             hashAlg, keyObject, &in->auth, &out->sequenceHandle);
64 }
65 #endif  // CC_HMAC_Start
66
67 #endif  // CC_HMAC_Start
17.3 TPM2_MAC_Start

17.3.1 General Description

This command starts a MAC sequence. The TPM will create and initialize a MAC sequence structure, assign a handle to the sequence, and set the authValue of the sequence object to the value in auth.

NOTE 1 The structure of a sequence object is vendor-dependent.

The caller shall provide proper authorization for use of handle.

If the sign attribute is not SET in the key referenced by handle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

If the key type is not TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH or TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE. If the key referenced by handle has the restricted attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 2 For symmetric signing with a restricted key, see TPM2_Sign(). TPM2_MAC_Start() has no ticket parameter, which is required with a restricted key.

If the default scheme of the key referenced by handle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the inScheme parameter is required to be either the same as the key's default or TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE). If the default scheme of the key is TPM_ALG_NULL, then inScheme is required to be a valid hash or symmetric MAC scheme and not TPM_ALG_NULL (TPM_RC_VALUE).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>handle→restricted (key's restricted attribute)</th>
<th>handle→scheme (algorithm from key's scheme)</th>
<th>inScheme</th>
<th>algorithm used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR (unrestricted)</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL(1)</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>error(1) (TPM_RC_VALUE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>valid hash or symmetric MAC</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>not TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL or same as handle→scheme</td>
<td>handle→scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEAR</td>
<td>not TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
<td>not TPM_AGL_NULL</td>
<td>error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if inScheme!= handle→scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET (restricted)</td>
<td>don't care</td>
<td>don't care</td>
<td>TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:
1) A hash algorithm is required for the HMAC.
2) hashAlg shall be TPM_ALG_NULL for handle referencing a CMAC key.

NOTE 3 For a TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER key, the symmetric block cipher algorithm is part of the key definition.

NOTE 4 TPM2_MAC_Start() was added in revision 01.43.
17.3.2 Command and Response

Table 80 — TPM2_MAC_Start Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CCM</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_MAC_Start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@handle</td>
<td>handle of a MAC key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>authorization value for subsequent use of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_MAC_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>the algorithm to use for the MAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 81 — TPM2_MAC_Start Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>sequenceHandle</td>
<td>a handle to reference the sequence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.3.3 Detailed Actions

17.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/MAC_Start.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "MAC_Start_fp.h"

#if CC_MAC_Start // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)
   // Initialize a HMAC sequence and create a sequence object
  */
#if
   // Return Type: TPM_RC
   // TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES       key referenced by 'handle' is not a signing key
   // or is restricted
   // TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY    no space to create an internal object
   // TPM_RC_KEY              key referenced by 'handle' is not an HMAC key
   // TPM_RC_VALUE            'hashAlg' is not compatible with the hash algorithm
   // of the scheme of the object referenced by 'handle'
   TPM_RC
   TPM2_MAC_Start(MAC_Start_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                  MAC_Start_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
   )
{
   OBJECT* keyObject;
   TPM_PUBLIC* publicArea;
   TPM_RC result;

   // Input Validation
   // Get HMAC key object and public area pointers
   keyObject = HandleToObject(in->handle);
   publicArea = &keyObject->publicArea;

   // Make sure that the key can do what is required
   result = CryptSelectMac(publicArea, &in->inScheme);
   // If the key is not able to do a MAC, indicate that the handle selects an
   // object that can't do a MAC
   if(result == TPM_RCS_TYPE)
      return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_MAC_Start_handle;
   // If there is another error type, indicate that the scheme and key are not
   // compatible
   if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
      return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_MAC_Start_inScheme);
   // Make sure that the key is not restricted
   if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
      return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_MAC_Start_handle;
   // and that it is a signing key
   if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(publicArea->objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign))
      return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_MAC_Start_handle;

   // Internal Data Update
   // Create a HMAC sequence object. A TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY error may be
   // returned at this point
   return ObjectCreateHMACSequence(
      in->inScheme, keyObject, &in->auth, &out->sequenceHandle);
}
#endif // CC_MAC_Start
```
17.4 TPM2_HashSequenceStart

17.4.1 General Description

This command starts a hash or an Event Sequence. If hashAlg is an implemented hash, then a hash sequence is started. If hashAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, then an Event Sequence is started. If hashAlg is neither an implemented algorithm nor TPM_ALG_NULL, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HASH.

Depending on hashAlg, the TPM will create and initialize a Hash Sequence context or an Event Sequence context. Additionally, it will assign a handle to the context and set the authValue of the context to the value in auth. A sequence context for an Event (hashAlg = TPM_ALG_NULL) contains a hash context for each of the PCR banks implemented on the TPM.
17.4.2 Command and Response

Table 82 — TPM2_HashSequenceStart Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_HashSequenceStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>authorization value for subsequent use of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>the hash algorithm to use for the hash sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>An Event Sequence starts if this is TPM_ALG_NULL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 83 — TPM2_HashSequenceStart Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>sequenceHandle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.4.3 Detailed Actions

17.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/HashSequenceStart.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "HashSequenceStart_fp.h"

#if CC_HashSequenceStart // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Start a hash or an event sequence
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY no space to create an internal object
TPM_RC
TPM2_HashSequenceStart(HashSequenceStart_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
HashSequenceStart_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
   // Internal Data Update
   if(in->hashAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
      // Start a event sequence.  A TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY error may be
      // returned at this point
      return ObjectCreateEventSequence(&in->auth, &out->sequenceHandle);
   // Start a hash sequence.  A TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY error may be
   // returned at this point
   return ObjectCreateHashSequence(in->hashAlg, &in->auth, &out->sequenceHandle);
}
#endif // CC_HashSequenceStart
```
17.5 TPM2_SequenceUpdate

17.5.1 General Description

This command is used to add data to a hash or HMAC sequence. The amount of data in buffer may be any size up to the limits of the TPM.

NOTE 1 In all TPMs, a buffer size of 1,024 octets is allowed.

Proper authorization for the sequence object associated with sequenceHandle is required. If an authorization or audit of this command requires computation of a cpHash and an rpHash, the Name associated with sequenceHandle will be the Empty Buffer.

If the command does not return TPM_RC_SUCCESS, the state of the sequence is unmodified.

If the sequence is intended to produce a digest that will be signed by a restricted signing key, then the first block of data shall contain at least size of (TPM_GENERATED) octets and the first octets shall not be TPM_GENERATED_VALUE.

NOTE 2 This requirement allows the TPM to validate that the first block is safe to sign without having to accumulate octets over multiple calls.
17.5.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SequenceUpdate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@sequenceHandle</td>
<td>handle for the sequence object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>buffer</td>
<td>data to be added to hash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.5.3 Detailed Actions

17.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/SequenceUpdate.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SequenceUpdate_fp.h"

#if CC_SequenceUpdate  // Conditional expansion of this file
  /*(See part 3 specification)
  // This function is used to add data to a sequence object.
  */
  // Return Type: TPM_RC
  // TPM_RC_MODE            'sequenceHandle' does not reference a hash or HMAC
  // sequence object
  TPM_RC
  TPM2_SequenceUpdate(SequenceUpdate_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
                      )
  {
    OBJECT*      object;
    HASH_OBJECT* hashObject;

    // Input Validation
    // Get sequence object pointer
    object     = HandleToObject(in->sequenceHandle);
    hashObject = (HASH_OBJECT*)object;

    // Check that referenced object is a sequence object.
    if(!ObjectIsSequence(object))
      return TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_SequenceUpdate_sequenceHandle;

    // Internal Data Update
    if(object->attributes.eventSeq == SET)
      {
        // Update event sequence object
        UINT32 i;
        for(i = 0; i < HASH_COUNT; i++)
          {
            // Update sequence object
            CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hashState[i], &in->buffer.b);
          }
      }
    else
      {
        // Update hash/HMAC sequence object
        if(hashObject->attributes.hashSeq == SET)
          {
            // Is this the first block of the sequence
            if(hashObject->attributes.firstBlock == CLEAR)
              {
                // If so, indicate that first block was received
                hashObject->attributes.firstBlock = SET;

                // Check the first block to see if the first block can contain
                // the TPM_GENERATED_VALUE. If it does, it is not safe for
                // a ticket.
                if(TicketIsSafe(&in->buffer.b))
                  hashObject->attributes.ticketSafe = SET;
              }

            // Update sequence object hash/HMAC stack
            CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hashState[0], &in->buffer.b);
          }
        }
  }
```

else if (object->attributes.hmacSeq == SET)
{
    // Update sequence object HMAC stack
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hmacState.hashState,
            &in->buffer.b);
}

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_SequenceUpdate
17.6  TPM2_SequenceComplete

17.6.1  General Description

This command adds the last part of data, if any, to a hash/HMAC sequence and returns the result.

NOTE 1  This command is not used to complete an Event Sequence. TPM2_EventSequenceComplete() is used for that purpose.

For a hash sequence, if the results of the hash will be used in a signing operation that uses a restricted signing key, then the ticket returned by this command can indicate that the hash is safe to sign. The hierarchy parameter determines the ticket lifetime, since the ticket is integrity protected with the hierarchy proof.

NOTE 2  The hierarchy parameter is not related to the signing key hierarchy.

If the digest is not safe to sign, then validation will be a TPMT_TK_HASHCHECK with the hierarchy set to TPM_RH_NULL and digest set to the Empty Buffer.

If hierarchy is TPM_RH_NULL, then digest in the ticket will be the Empty Buffer.

NOTE 3  Regardless of the contents of the first octets of the hashed message, if the first buffer sent to the TPM had fewer than sizeof(TPM_GENERATED) octets, then the TPM will operate as if digest is not safe to sign.

NOTE 4  The ticket is only required for a signing operation that uses a restricted signing key. It is always returned but can be ignored if not needed.

If sequenceHandle references an Event Sequence, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_MODE.

Proper authorization for the sequence object associated with sequenceHandle is required. If an authorization or audit of this command requires computation of a cpHash and an rpHash, the Name associated with sequenceHandle will be the Empty Buffer.

If this command completes successfully, the sequenceHandle object will be flushed.
### 17.6.2 Command and Response

#### Table 86 — TPM2_SequenceComplete Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SequenceComplete (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@sequenceHandle</td>
<td>authorization for the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>buffer</td>
<td>data to be added to the hash/HMAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY</td>
<td>hierarchy</td>
<td>hierarchy of the ticket for a hash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 87 — TPM2_SequenceComplete Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>result</td>
<td>the returned HMAC or digest in a sized buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_HASHCHECK</td>
<td>validation</td>
<td>ticket indicating that the sequence of octets used to compute result did not start with TPM_GENERATED_VALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This is a NULL Ticket when the sequence is HMAC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.6.3 Detailed Actions

17.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/SequenceComplete.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SequenceComplete_fp.h"

#if CC_SequenceComplete // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Complete a sequence and flush the object.
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RCS_MODE 'sequenceHandle' does not reference a hash or HMAC
// sequence object
TPM_RC TPM2_SequenceComplete(SequenceComplete_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                             SequenceComplete_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    HASH_OBJECT* hashObject;
    // Input validation
    // Get hash object pointer
    hashObject = (HASH_OBJECT*)HandleToObject(in->sequenceHandle);
    // input handle must be a hash or HMAC sequence object.
    if(hashObject->attributes.hashSeq == CLEAR
        && hashObject->attributes.hmacSeq == CLEAR)
        return TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_SequenceComplete_sequenceHandle;
    // Command Output
    if(hashObject->attributes.hashSeq == SET) // sequence object for hash
        {
            // Get the hash algorithm before the algorithm is lost in CryptHashEnd
            TPM_ALG_ID hashAlg = hashObject->state.hashState[0].hashAlg;
            // Update last piece of the data
            CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hashState[0], &in->buffer.b);
            // Complete hash
            out->result.t.size = CryptHashEnd(&hashObject->state.hashState[0],
                                            sizeof(out->result.t.buffer),
                                            out->result.t.buffer);
            // Check if the first block of the sequence has been received
            if(hashObject->attributes.firstBlock == CLEAR)
                {
                    // If not, then this is the first block so see if it is 'safe'
                    // to sign.
                    if(TicketIsSafe(&in->buffer.b))
                        hashObject->attributes.ticketSafe = SET;
                }
            // Output ticket
            out->validation.tag       = TPM_ST_HASHCHECK;
            out->validation.hierarchy = in->hierarchy;
            if(in->hierarchy == TPM_RH_NULL)
                {
                    // Ticket is not required
                    out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
                }
            else if(hashObject->attributes.ticketSafe == CLEAR)
                {
                    // Ticket is not safe to generate
                    out->validation.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
                }
        }
```
out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
}
else
{
    TPM_RC result;
    // Compute ticket
    result = TicketComputeHashCheck(
        out->validation.hierarchy, hashAlg, &out->result, &out->validation);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
}
else
{
    // Update last piece of data
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hmacState.hashState, &in->buffer.b);
    if(!SMAC_IMPLEMENTED)
        // Complete HMAC
        out->result.t.size = CryptHmacEnd(&hashObject->state.hmacState),
            sizeof(out->result.t.buffer),
            out->result.t.buffer);
    else
        // Complete the MAC
        out->result.t.size = CryptMacEnd(&hashObject->state.hmacState,
            sizeof(out->result.t.buffer),
            out->result.t.buffer);
    // No ticket is generated for HMAC sequence
    out->validation.tag = TPM_ST_HASHCHECK;
    out->validation.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
    out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
}
    // Internal Data Update
    // mark sequence object as evict so it will be flushed on the way out
    hashObject->attributes.evict = SET;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
} #endif // CC_SequenceComplete
17.7 TPM2_EventSequenceComplete

17.7.1 General Description

This command adds the last part of data, if any, to an Event Sequence and returns the result in a digest list. If pcrHandle references a PCR and not TPM_RH_NULL, then the returned digest list is processed in the same manner as the digest list input parameter to TPM2_PCR_Extend(). That is, if a bank contains a PCR associated with pcrHandle, it is extended with the associated digest value from the list.

If sequenceHandle references a hash or HMAC sequence, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_MODE.

Proper authorization for the sequence object associated with sequenceHandle is required. If an authorization or audit of this command requires computation of a cpHash and an rpHash, the Name associated with sequenceHandle will be the Empty Buffer.

If this command completes successfully, the sequenceHandle object will be flushed.

NOTE: Unlike TPM2_PCR_Event(), a digest is always returned for each implemented hash algorithm. There is no option to only return digests for which pcrHandle is allocated.
### 17.7.2 Command and Response

#### Table 88 — TPM2_EventSequenceComplete Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_EventSequenceComplete (NV F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR+</td>
<td>@pcrHandle</td>
<td>PCR to be extended with the Event data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@sequenceHandle</td>
<td>authorization for the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>buffer</td>
<td>data to be added to the Event</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 89 — TPM2_EventSequenceComplete Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_DIGEST_VALUES</td>
<td>results</td>
<td>list of digests computed for the PCR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.7.3 Detailed Actions

17.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/HashHMAC/EventSequenceComplete.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "EventSequenceComplete_fp.h"

#if CC_EventSequenceComplete  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
Complete an event sequence and flush the object.
*/
//  Return Type: TPM_RC
//      TPM_RC_LOCALITY     PCR extension is not allowed at the current locality
//      TPM_RC_MODE         input handle is not a valid event sequence object
TPM_RC
TPM2_EventSequenceComplete(
EventSequenceComplete_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
EventSequenceComplete_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    HASH_OBJECT* hashObject;
    UINT32 i;
    TPM_ALG_ID hashAlg;
    // Input validation
    // get the event sequence object pointer
    hashObject = (HASH_OBJECT*)HandleToObject(in->sequenceHandle);
    // input handle must reference an event sequence object
    if(hashObject->attributes.eventSeq != SET)
        return TPM_RCS_MODE + RC_EventSequenceComplete_sequenceHandle;
    // see if a PCR extend is requested in call
    if(in->pcrHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
        { // see if extend of the PCR is allowed at the locality of the command,
            if(!PCRIsExtendAllowed(in->pcrHandle))
                return TPM_RC_LOCALITY;
            // if an extend is going to take place, then check to see if there has
            // been an orderly shutdown. If so, and the selected PCR is one of the
            // state saved PCR, then the orderly state has to change. The orderly state
            // does not change for PCR that are not preserved.
            // NOTE: This doesn't just check for Shutdown(STATE) because the orderly
            // state will have to change if this is a state-saved PCR regardless
            // of the current state. This is because a subsequent Shutdown(STATE) will
            // check to see if there was an orderly shutdown and not do anything if
            // there was. So, this must indicate that a future Shutdown(STATE) has
            // something to do.
            if(PCRIsStateSaved(in->pcrHandle))
                RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;
        }
    // Command Output
    out->results.count = 0;
    for(i = 0; i < HASH_COUNT; i++)
        {
            hashAlg = CryptHashGetAlgByIndex(i);
            // Update last piece of data
            CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashObject->state.hashState[i], &in->buffer.b);
            // Complete hash
            out->results.digests[out->results.count].hashAlg = hashAlg;
            CryptHashEnd(&hashObject->state.hashState[i],
                          CryptHashGetDigestSize(hashAlg),
```
60  (BYTE*)&out->results.digests[out->results.count].digest);
61  // Extend PCR
62  if(in->pcrHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
63      PCRExtend(in->pcrHandle,
64            hashAlg,
65            CryptHashGetDigestSize(hashAlg),
66            (BYTE*)&out->results.digests[out->results.count].digest);
67  out->results.count++;
68  }
69  // Internal Data Update
70  // mark sequence object as evict so it will be flushed on the way out
71  hashObject->attributes.evict = SET;
72
73  return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
74 }
75
76 #endif // CC_EventSequenceComplete
77
18 Attestation Commands

18.1 Introduction

The attestation commands cause the TPM to sign an internally generated data structure. The contents of the data structure vary according to the command.

If the *sign* attribute is not SET in the key referenced by *signHandle* then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

All signing commands include a parameter (typically *inScheme*) for the caller to specify a scheme to be used for the signing operation. This scheme will be applied only if the scheme of the key is TPM_ALG_NULL or the key handle is TPM_RH_NULL. If the scheme for *signHandle* is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then *inScheme.scheme* shall be TPM_ALG_NULL or the same as *scheme* in the public area of the key. If the scheme for *signHandle* is TPM_ALG_NULL or the key handle is TPM_RH_NULL, then *inScheme* will be used for the signing operation and may not be TPM_ALG_NULL. The TPM shall return TPM_RC_SCHEME to indicate that the scheme is not appropriate.

For a signing key that is not restricted, the caller may specify the scheme to be used as long as the scheme is compatible with the family of the key (for example, TPM_ALG_RSAPSS cannot be selected for an ECC key). If the caller sets *scheme* to TPM_ALG_NULL, then the default scheme of the key is used.

For a restricted signing key, the key’s scheme cannot be TPM_ALG_NULL and cannot be overridden.

If the handle for the signing key (*signHandle*) is TPM_RH_NULL, then all of the actions of the command are performed, and the attestation block is “signed” with the NULL Signature.

NOTE 1 This mechanism is provided so that additional commands are not required to access the data that might be in an attestation structure.

NOTE 2 When *signHandle* is TPM_RH_NULL, *scheme* is still required to be a valid signing scheme (may be TPM_ALG_NULL), but the scheme will have no effect on the format of the signature. It will always be the NULL Signature.

NOTE 3 For TPM2_Quote, a TPM may optionally return TPM_RC_SCHEME if *signHandle* is TPM_RH_NULL.

NOTE 4 Attestation commands typically use a restricted signing key. A key that is not restricted can sign any digest and would permit a forged attestation. It is common to use a fixed *TPM* key.

TPM2_NV_Certify() is an attestation command that is documented in 31.15.3.1. The remaining attestation commands are collected in the remainder of clause 17.7.3.1.

Each of the attestation structures contains a TPMS_CLOCK_INFO structure and a firmware version number. These values may be considered privacy-sensitive because they would aid in the correlation of attestations by different keys. To provide improved privacy, the *resetCount*, *restartCount*, and *firmwareVersion* numbers are obfuscated when the signing key is not in the Endorsement or Platform hierarchies.

The obfuscation value is computed by:

\[
\text{obfuscation} \equiv \text{KDFa}(\text{signHandle} \to \text{nameAlg}, shProof, "OBFUSCATE", \text{signHandle} \to QN, 0, 128) \quad (3)
\]

Of the returned 128 bits, 64 bits are added to the *versionNumber* field of the attestation structure; 32 bits are added to the *clockInfo.resetCount* and 32 bits are added to the *clockInfo.restartCount*. The order in which the bits are added is implementation-dependent.

NOTE 5 The obfuscation value for each signing key will be unique to that key in a specific location. That is, each version of a duplicated signing key will have a different obfuscation value.

When the signing key is TPM_RH_NULL, the data structure is produced but not signed; and the values in the signed data structure are obfuscated. When computing the obfuscation value for TPM_RH_NULL, the hash used for context integrity is used.
NOTE 6 The QN for TPM_RH_NULL is TPM_RH_NULL.

If the signing scheme of `signHandle` is an anonymous scheme, then the attestation blocks will not contain the Qualified Name of the `signHandle`.

Each of the attestation structures allows the caller to provide some qualifying data (`qualifyingData`). For most signing schemes, this value will be placed in the TPMS_ATTEST.extraData parameter that is then hashed and signed. However, for some schemes such as ECDAA, the `qualifyingData` is used in a different manner (for details, see “ECDAA” in TPM 2.0 Part 1).
18.2 TPM2_Certify

18.2.1 General Description

The purpose of this command is to prove that an object with a specific Name is loaded in the TPM. By certifying that the object is loaded, the TPM warrants that a public area with a given Name is self-consistent and associated with a valid sensitive area. If a relying party has a public area that has the same Name as a Name certified with this command, then the values in that public area are correct.

NOTE 1 See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

Authorization for objectHandle requires ADMIN role authorization. If performed with a policy session, the session shall have a policySession→commandCode set to TPM_CC_Certify. This indicates that the policy that is being used is a policy that is for certification, and not a policy that would approve another use. That is, authority to use an object does not grant authority to certify the object.

The object may be any object that is loaded with TPM2_Load() or TPM2_CreatePrimary(). An object that only has its public area loaded cannot be certified.

NOTE 2 The restriction occurs because the Name is used to identify the object being certified. If the TPM has not validated that the public area is associated with a matched sensitive area, then the public area may not represent a valid object and cannot be certified.

The certification includes the Name and Qualified Name of the certified object as well as the Name and the Qualified Name of the certifying object.

NOTE 3 If signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned and signature is a NULL Signature.
18.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 90 — TPM2_Certify Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of the object to be certified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the key used to sign the attestation structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>user provided qualifying data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 91 — TPM2_Certify Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>certifyInfo</td>
<td>the structure that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the asymmetric signature over certifyInfo using the key referenced by signHandle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.2.3 Detailed Actions

18.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/Certify.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "Certify_fp.h"

#if CC_Certify // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// prove an object with a specific Name is loaded in the TPM
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_KEY key referenced by 'signHandle' is not a signing key
// TPM_RC_SCHEME 'inScheme' is not compatible with 'signHandle'
// TPM_RC_VALUE digest generated for 'inScheme' is greater or has larger
// size than the modulus of 'signHandle', or the buffer for
// the result in 'signature' is too small (for an RSA key);
// invalid commit status (for an ECC key with a split scheme)

TPM_RC

TPM2_Certify(Certify_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
              Certify_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
              )
{
    TPMS_ATTEST certifyInfo;
    OBJECT* signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    OBJECT* certifiedObject = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);

    // Input validation
    if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_Certify_signHandle;
    if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RC_SCHEME + RC_Certify_inScheme;

    // Command Output
    // Filling in attest information
    // Common fields
    FillInAttestInfo(
        in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &certifyInfo);

    // Certify specific fields
    certifyInfo.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_CERTIFY;
    // NOTE: the certified object is not allowed to be TPM_ALG_NULL so
    // 'certifiedObject' will never be NULL
    certifyInfo.attested.certify.name = certifiedObject->name;

    // When using an anonymous signing scheme, need to set the qualified Name to the
    // empty buffer to avoid correlation between keys
    if(CryptIsSchemeAnonymous(in->inScheme.scheme))
        certifyInfo.attested.certify.qualifiedName.t.size = 0;
    else
        certifyInfo.attested.certify.qualifiedName = certifiedObject->qualifiedName;

    // Sign attest structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
    // signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE, TPM_RC_NV_RATE,
    // TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_SCHEME or TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES error may be returned
    // by SignAttestInfo()
    return SignAttestInfo(
        signObject,
        &in->inScheme,        // IN: input parameter list
        &certifyInfo,
        &in->qualifyingData,
        &out->certifyInfo,
        &out->signature);
```
60 } 
61 
62 #endif // CC_Certify 
63
18.3 TPM2_CertifyCreation

18.3.1 General Description

This command is used to prove the association between an object and its creation data. The TPM will validate that the ticket was produced by the TPM and that the ticket validates the association between a loaded public area and the provided hash of the creation data (creationHash).

NOTE 1 See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

NOTE 2 This command is more straightforward for child keys. Since primary keys are repeatable, the same key can be generated with different creation data. The outsideInfo parameter can be used to provide creation ticket freshness.

The TPM will create a test ticket using the Name associated with objectHandle and creationHash as:

\[
\text{HMAC}(\text{proof}, (\text{TPM_ST_CREATION} || \text{objectHandle} \rightarrow \text{Name} || \text{creationHash}))
\] (4)

This ticket is then compared to creation ticket. If the tickets are not the same, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TICKET.

If the ticket is valid, then the TPM will create a TPMS_ATTEST structure and place creationHash of the command in the creationHash field of the structure. The Name associated with objectHandle will be included in the attestation data that is then signed using the key associated with signHandle.

NOTE 3 If signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned and signature is a NULL Signature.

objectHandle may be any object that is loaded with TPM2_Load() or TPM2_CreatePrimary().
18.3.2 Command and Response

Table 92 — TPM2_CertifyCreation Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_CertifyCreation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the key that will sign the attestation block Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>the object associated with the creation data Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>user-provided qualifying data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>creationHash</td>
<td>hash of the creation data produced by TPM2_Create() or TPM2_CreatePrimary()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_CREATION</td>
<td>creationTicket</td>
<td>ticket produced by TPM2_Create() or TPM2_CreatePrimary()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 93 — TPM2_CertifyCreation Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>certifyInfo</td>
<td>the structure that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the signature over certifyInfo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.3.3 Detailed Actions

18.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/CertifyCreation.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "CertifyCreation_fp.h"

#if CC_CertifyCreation // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 specification)
// Prove the association between an object and its creation data
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//      TPM_RC_KEY          key referenced by 'signHandle' is not a signing key
//      TPM_RC_SCHEME       'inScheme' is not compatible with 'signHandle'
//      TPM_RC_TICKET       'creationTicket' does not match 'objectHandle'
//      TPM_RC_VALUE        digest generated for 'inScheme' is greater or has larger
//                          size than the modulus of 'signHandle', or the buffer for
//                          the result in 'signature' is too small (for an RSA key);
//                          invalid commit status (for an ECC key with a split
//                          scheme).
TPM_RC

TPM2_CertifyCreation(CertifyCreation_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                      CertifyCreation_Out* out, // OUT: output parameter list
                      )
{
    TPM_RC           result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    TPMT_TK_CREATION ticket;
    TPMS_ATTEST      certifyInfo;
    OBJECT*          certified  = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);
    OBJECT*          signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    // Input Validation
    if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_CertifyCreation_signHandle;
    if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_CertifyCreation_inScheme;
    // CertifyCreation specific input validation
    // Re-compute ticket
    result = TicketComputeCreation(
            in->creationTicket.hierarchy, &certified->name, &in->creationHash, &ticket);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
    // Compare ticket
    if(!MemoryEqual2B(&ticket.digest.b, &in->creationTicket.digest.b))
        return TPM_RCS_TICKET + RC_CertifyCreation_creationTicket;
    // Command Output
    // Common fields
    FillInAttestInfo(
            in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &certifyInfo);
    // CertifyCreation specific fields
    // Attestation type
    certifyInfo.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_CREATION;
    certifyInfo.attested.creation.objectName = certified->name;
    // Copy the creationHash
    certifyInfo.attested.creation.creationHash = in->creationHash;
    // Sign attestation structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
```
// signObject is TPM_RH_NULL. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE, TPM_RC_NV_RATE,
// TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_SCHEMA or TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES error may be returned at
// this point
return SignAttestInfo(signObject,
    &in->inScheme,
    &certifyInfo,
    &in->qualifyingData,
    &out->certifyInfo,
    &out->signature);
}
#endif // CC_CertifyCreation

#endif // CC_CertifyCreation
18.4 TPM2_Quote

18.4.1 General Description

This command is used to quote PCR values.

The TPM will hash the list of PCR selected by PCRselect using the hash algorithm in the selected signing scheme. If the selected signing scheme or the scheme hash algorithm is TPM_ALG_NULL, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SCHEME.

NOTE 1 See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

The digest is computed as the hash of the concatenation of all of the digest values of the selected PCR. The concatenation of PCR is described in TPM 2.0 Part 1, Selecting Multiple PCR.

NOTE 2 If signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned and signature is a NULL Signature.

NOTE 3 A TPM may optionally return TPM_RC_SCHEME if signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL.

NOTE 4 Unlike TPM 1.2, TPM2_Quote does not return the PCR values. See Part 1, “Attesting to PCR” for a discussion of this issue.
18.4.2 Command and Response

Table 94 — TPM2_Quote Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Quote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of key that will perform signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>data supplied by the caller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>PCRselect</td>
<td>PCR set to quote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 95 — TPM2_Quote Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>quoted</td>
<td>the quoted information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the signature over quoted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "Quote_fp.h"

#ifdef CC_Quote // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_KEY  'signHandle' does not reference a signing key;
// TPM_RC_SCHEME the scheme is not compatible with sign key type,
// or input scheme is not compatible with default
// scheme, or the chosen scheme is not a valid
// sign scheme
TPM_RC

TPM2_Quote(Quote_In*  in,  // IN: input parameter list
Quote_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{

TPMI_ALG_HASH hashAlg;
TPMS_ATTEST quoted;
OBJECT* signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);

// Input Validation
if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_Quote_signHandle;
if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_Quote_inScheme;

// Command Output
// Filling in attest information
// Common fields
FillInAttestInfo(in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &quoted);

// Quote specific fields
// Attestation type
quoted.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_QUOTE;

// Get hash algorithm in sign scheme. This hash algorithm is used to
// compute PCR digest. If there is no algorithm, then the PCR cannot
// be digested and this command returns TPM_RC_SCHEME
hashAlg = in->inScheme.details.any.hashAlg;

if(hashAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_Quote_inScheme;

// Compute PCR digest
PCRComputeCurrentDigest(
    hashAlg, &in->PCRselect, &quoted.attested.quote.pcrDigest);

// Copy PCR select. "PCRselect" is modified in PCRComputeCurrentDigest
// function
quoted.attested.quote.pcrSelect = in->PCRselect;

// Sign attestation structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
// signObject is NULL.
return SignAttestInfo(signObject,);
&in->inScheme,
&quoted,
&in->qualifyingData,
&out->quoted,
&out->signature);
}
#endif // CC_Quote

18.5 TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest

18.5.1 General Description

This command returns a digital signature of the audit session digest.

NOTE 1 See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

If sessionHandle is not an audit session, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_TYPE.

NOTE 2 A session does not become an audit session until the successful completion of the command in which the session is first used as an audit session.

This command requires authorization from the privacy administrator of the TPM (expressed with Endorsement Authorization) as well as authorization to use the key associated with signHandle.

If this command is audited, then the audit digest that is signed will not include the digest of this command because the audit digest is only updated when the command completes successfully.

This command does not cause the audit session to be closed and does not reset the digest value.

NOTE 3 If sessionHandle is used as an audit session for this command, the command is audited in the same manner as any other command.

NOTE 4 If signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned and signature is a NULL Signature.
## 18.5.2 Command and Response

### Table 96 — TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetSessionAuditDigest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_ENDORSEMENT</td>
<td>@privacyAdminHandle</td>
<td>handle of the privacy administrator (TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the signing key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_HMAC</td>
<td>sessionHandle</td>
<td>handle of the audit session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>user-provided qualifying data – may be zero-length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG.Scheme+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 97 — TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>auditInfo</td>
<td>the audit information that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the signature over auditInfo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 18.5.3 Detailed Actions

#### 18.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/GetSessionAuditDigest.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "GetSessionAuditDigest_fp.h"

#include "GetSessionAuditDigest_fp.h"

// Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)

Get audit session digest
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC

// TPM_RC_KEY key referenced by 'signHandle' is not a signing key
// TPM_RC_SCHEME 'inScheme' is incompatible with 'signHandle' type; or
// 'scheme' is empty while key's default scheme requires
// explicit input scheme (split signing); or
// non-empty default key scheme differs from 'scheme'
// TPM_RC_TYPE 'sessionHandle' does not reference an audit session
// TPM_RC_VALUE digest generated for the given 'scheme' is greater than
// the modulus of 'signHandle' (for an RSA key);
// invalid commit status or failed to generate "r" value
// (for an ECC key)

TPM_RC

TPM2_GetSessionAuditDigest(
    GetSessionAuditDigest_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    GetSessionAuditDigest_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    SESSION* session = SessionGet(in->sessionHandle);
    TPM2_ATTEST auditInfo;
    OBJECT* signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    // Input Validation
    if (!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_GetSessionAuditDigest_signHandle;
    if (!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_GetSessionAuditDigest_inScheme;

    // session must be an audit session
    if (session->attributes.isAudit == CLEAR)
        return TPM_RCS_TYPE + RC_GetSessionAuditDigest_sessionHandle;

    // Command Output
    // Fill in attest information common fields
    FillInAttestInfo(in->signHandle, in->inScheme, in->qualifyingData, &auditInfo);
    // SessionAuditDigest specific fields
    auditInfo.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_SESSION_AUDIT;
    auditInfo.attested.sessionAudit.sessionDigest = session->u2.auditDigest;
    // Exclusive audit session
    auditInfo.attested.sessionAudit.exclusiveSession =
        (g_exclusiveAuditSession == in->sessionHandle);
    // Sign attestation structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
    // signObject is NULL.
    return SignAttestInfo(signObject,
        &in->inScheme,
        &auditInfo,
        &in->qualifyingData,
        &out->auditInfo,
```
&out->signature);
}
#endif  // CC_GetSessionAuditDigest
18.6 TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest

18.6.1 General Description

This command returns the current value of the command audit digest, a digest of the commands being audited, and the audit hash algorithm. These values are placed in an attestation structure and signed with the key referenced by \( \text{signHandle} \).

NOTE 1 See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

When this command completes successfully, and \( \text{signHandle} \) is not \( \text{TPM}_\text{RH\_NULL} \), the audit digest is cleared. If \( \text{signHandle} \) is \( \text{TPM}_\text{RH\_NULL} \), \( \text{signature} \) is the Empty Buffer and the audit digest is not cleared.

NOTE 2 The way that the TPM tracks that the digest is clear is vendor-dependent. The reference implementation resets the size of the digest to zero.

If this command is being audited, then the signed digest produced by the command will not include the command. At the end of this command, the audit digest will be extended with \( \text{cpHash} \) and the \( \text{rpHash} \) of the command, which would change the command audit digest signed by the next invocation of this command.

This command requires authorization from the privacy administrator of the TPM (expressed with Endorsement Authorization) as well as authorization to use the key associated with \( \text{signHandle} \).
### 18.6.2 Command and Response

**Table 98 — TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetCommandAuditDigest {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_ENDORSEMENT</td>
<td>@privacyHandle</td>
<td>handle of the privacy administrator (TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>the handle of the signing key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>other data to associate with this audit digest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 99 — TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>auditInfo</td>
<td>the auditInfo that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the signature over auditInfo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.6.3 Detailed Actions

18.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/GetCommandAuditDigest.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "GetCommandAuditDigest_fp.h"

#if CC_GetCommandAuditDigest  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Get current value of command audit log
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_KEY  key referenced by 'signHandle' is not a signing key
// TPM_RC_SCHEME 'inScheme' is incompatible with 'signHandle' type; or
// both 'scheme' and key's default scheme are empty; or
// 'scheme' is empty while key's default scheme requires
// explicit input scheme (split signing); or
// non-empty default key scheme differs from 'scheme'
// TPM_RC_VALUE digest generated for the given 'scheme' is greater than
// the modulus of 'signHandle' (for an RSA key);
// invalid commit status or failed to generate "r" value
// (for an ECC key)

TPM_RC

TPM2_GetCommandAuditDigest()
GetCommandAuditDigest_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
GetCommandAuditDigest_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
{
    TPM_RC      result;
    TPMS_ATTEST auditInfo;
    OBJECT*     signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    // Input validation
    if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_GetCommandAuditDigest_signHandle;
    if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_GetCommandAuditDigest_inScheme;

    // Command Output
    // Fill in attest information common fields
    FillInAttestInfo(in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &auditInfo);
    // CommandAuditDigest specific fields
    auditInfo.type       = TPM_ST_ATTEST_COMMAND_AUDIT;
    auditInfo.attested.commandAudit.digestAlg = gp.auditHashAlg;
    auditInfo.attested.commandAudit.auditCounter = gp.auditCounter;
    // Copy command audit log
    auditInfo.attested.commandAudit.auditDigest = gr.commandAuditDigest;
    CommandAuditGetDigest(&auditInfo.attested.commandAudit.commandDigest);
    // Sign attestation structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
    // signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE, TPM_RC_NV_RATE,
    // TPM_RC_VALUE, TPM_RC_SCHEME or TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES error may be returned at
    // this point
    result = SignAttestInfo(signObject,
        &in->inScheme,
        &auditInfo,
        &in->qualifyingData,
        &out->auditInfo,
        &out->signature);
    // Internal Data Update
```

```

```
if (result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS && in->signHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
    // Reset log
    gr.commandAuditDigest.t.size = 0;

return result;

#endif // CC_GetCommandAuditDigest
18.7  TPM2_GetTime

18.7.1  General Description

This command returns the current values of Time and Clock.

NOTE 1  See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

The values of Clock, resetCount and restartCount appear in two places in timeInfo: once in TPMS_ATTEST.clockInfo and again in TPMS_ATTEST.attested.time.clockInfo. The firmware version number also appears in two places (TPMS_ATTEST.firmwareVersion and TPMS_ATTEST.attested.time.firmwareVersion). If signHandle is in the endorsement or platform hierarchies, both copies of the data will be the same. However, if signHandle is in the storage hierarchy or is TPM_RH_NULL, the values in TPMS_ATTEST.clockInfo and TPMS_ATTEST.firmwareVersion are obfuscated but the values in TPMS_ATTEST.attested.time are not.

NOTE 2  The purpose of this duplication is to allow an entity who is trusted by the privacy Administrator to correlate the obfuscated values with the clear-text values. This command requires Endorsement Authorization.

NOTE 3  If signHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned and signature is a NULL Signature.
18.7.2 Command and Response

Table 100 — TPM2_GetTime Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_ENDORSEMENT</td>
<td>@privacyAdminHandle</td>
<td>handle of the privacy administrator (TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>the keyHandle identifier of a loaded key that can perform digital signatures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>data to tick stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 101 — TPM2_GetTime Response

| Type                      | Name      | Description                                                          |
|---------------------------|-----------|                                                                    |
| TPM_ST                    | tag       | see clause 6                                                        |
| UINT32                    | responseSize|                                                                  |
| TPM_RC                    | responseCode| .                                                                    |
| TPM2B_ATTEST              | timeInfo  | standard TPM-generated attestation block                             |
| TPMT_SIGNATURE            | signature | the signature over timeInfo                                          |
18.7.3 Detailed Actions

18.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/GetTime.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "GetTime_fp.h"

#if CC_GetTime  // Conditional expansion of this file
	/*(See part 3 specification)

// Applies a time stamp to the passed blob (qualifyingData).
*/
#endif  // CC_GetTime

TPM_RC TPM2_GetTime(GetTime_In*  in,  // IN: input parameter list
                    GetTime_Out* out)  // OUT: output parameter list
{
    TPMS_ATTEST timeInfo;
    OBJECT*     signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    // Input Validation
    if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RC_KEY + RC_GetTime_signHandle;
    if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RC_SCHEME + RC_GetTime_inScheme;
    // Command Output
    // Fill in attest common fields
    FillInAttestInfo(in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &timeInfo);
    // GetClock specific fields
    timeInfo.type                    = TPM_ST_ATTEST_TIME;
    timeInfo.attested.time.time.time = g_time;
    TimeFillInfo(&timeInfo.attested.time.time.clockInfo);
    // Firmware version in plain text
    timeInfo.attested.time.firmwareVersion = (((UINT64)gp.firmwareV1) << 32) + gp.firmwareV2;
    // Sign attestation structure.  A NULL signature will be returned if
    // signObject is NULL.
    return SignAttestInfo(signObject,
                          &in->inScheme,
                          &timeInfo,
                          &in->qualifyingData,
                          &out->timeInfo,
                          &out->signature);
}
#endif  // CC_GetTime
```
18.8  TPM2_CertifyX509

18.8.1 General Description

The purpose of this command is to generate an X.509 certificate that proves an object with a specific public key and attributes is loaded in the TPM. In contrast to TPM2_Certify, which uses a TCG-defined data structure to convey attestation information, TPM2_CertifyX509() encodes the attestation information in a DER-encoded X.509 certificate that is compliant with RFC5280 Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Profile.

As described in RFC, an X.509 certificate contains a collection of data that is hashed and signed. The full signature is the combination of the to be signed (TBS) data, a description of the signature algorithm, and the signature over the TBS data. The elements of the TBS data structure are DER-encoded values. They are:

1) Version [0] – integer value of 2 indicating version 3
2) Certificate Serial Number – integer value
3) Signature Algorithm Identifier – values (usually a collection of OIDs) identifying the algorithm used for the signature
4) Issuer Name – X.501 type Name to identify the entity that has authorized the use of signHandle to create the certificate.
5) Validity – two time values indicating the period during which the certificate is valid
6) Subject Name – X.501 type Name that identifies the entity that authorized the use of objectHandle
7) Subject Public Key Info – the public key associated with objectHandle,
8) Extensions [3] – a set of values that “provide methods for associating additional attributes with users or public keys and for managing relationships between CAs.”

NOTE 1: The numbers in square brackets (e.g., [0]) indicate application-specific tag values that are used to identify the type of the field.

NOTE 2: RFC 5280 describes two fields (issuerUniqueID and subjectUniqueID) but goes on to say: “CAs conforming to this profile MUST NOT generate certificates with unique identifiers.” The TPM does not allow them to be present.

The caller provides a partial certificate (partialCertificate) parameter that contains four or five of the elements enumerated above in a DER encoded SEQUENCE. They are:

1) Signature Algorithm Identifier (optional)
2) Issuer (mandatory)
3) Validity (mandatory)
4) Subject Name (mandatory)
5) Extensions (mandatory)

The fields are required to be in the order in which they are listed above.

NOTE 3: If one or more mandatory fields (Issuer, Validity, Subject Name, Extensions) are duplicated in the partialCertificate, the result of the command is unspecified.

If the fields listed above are not in the order listed, the command, the result of the command is unspecified.
If the Validity field is not compliant with RFC5280, the command can return successfully if the TPM does not parse the field.

**NOTE 4:** The TPM determines if the Signature Algorithm Identifier element is present by counting the elements.

The optional Signature Algorithm Identifier may be provided by the caller. If it is not present, the TPM will generate the value based on the selected signing scheme. If the caller provides this value, then the TPM will use it in the completed TBS. The TPM will not validate that the provided values are compatible with the signing scheme. If the caller does not provide this field and the TPM does not have OID values for the signing scheme, then the TPM will return an error (TPM_RC_SCHEME).

**NOTE 5:** The TPM may implement signing schemes for which OIDs are not defined at the time the TPM was manufactured. Those schemes may still be used if the caller can provide the Signature Algorithm Identifier.

The Extensions element is required to contain a Key Usage extension. The TPM will extract the Key Usage values and verify that the attributes of `objectHandle` are consistent with the selected values (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES) (see TPM 2.0 Part 2, TPMA_X509_KEY_USAGE).

The Extensions element may contain a TPMA_OBJECT extension. If present, the TPM will extract the value and verify that the extension value exactly matches the TPMA_OBJECT of `objectKey` (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES). The element uses the TCG OID tcg-tpmaObject, 2.23.133.10.1.1.1. It is a SEQUENCE containing that OID and an OCTET STRING encapsulating a 4-byte BIT STRING holding the big endian TPMA_OBJECT.

`signHandle` is required to have the `sign` attribute SET (TPM_RC_KEY).

**NOTE 6:** See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

Authorization for `objectHandle` requires ADMIN role authorization. If performed with a policy session, the session shall have a `commandCode` set to TPM_CC_CertifyX509. This indicates that the policy that is being used is a policy that is for certification, and not a policy that would approve another use. That is, authority to use an object does not grant authority to certify the object.

If `objectHandle` does not have a sensitive area loaded, the TPM will return an error (TPM_RC_AUTH_UNAVAILABLE).

**NOTE 7:** The command requires that authorization be provided for use of `objectHandle`. An object that only has its `publicArea` loaded does not have an authorization value and the `authPolicy` has no meaning as the sensitive area is not present.

The TPM will create the Version, the Certificate Serial Number, the Subject Public Key Info, and, if not provided by the caller, the Signature Algorithm Identifier. These TPM-created values will be combined with the provided values to make a full TBSCertificate structure (see RFC 5280, clause 4.1). The TPM will then sign the certificate using the selected signing scheme.

The TPM-created values will be returned in `addedToCertificate`. If the TPM creates the Signature Algorithm Identifier, it will be in `addedToCertificate` before the Subject Public Key Info. The TPM returns `tbsDigest` as a debugging aid.

**NOTE 8:** These returned fields allow the caller to unambiguously create a full RFC5280-defined TBSCertificate.

**NOTE 9:** This command was added in revision 01.53.
### 18.8.2 Command and Response

**Table 102 — TPM2_CertifyX509 Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_CertifyX509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of the object to be certified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1  Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the key used to sign the attestation structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2  Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>shall be an Empty Buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the <code>scheme for signHandle</code> is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>partialCertificate</td>
<td>a DER encoded partial certificate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 103 — TPM2_CertifyX509 Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>addedToCertificate</td>
<td>a DER encoded SEQUENCE containing the DER encoded fields added to partialCertificate to make it a complete RFC5280 TBSCertificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>tbsDigest</td>
<td>the digest that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>The signature over <code>tbsDigest</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.8.3 Detailed Actions

18.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Attestation/CertifyX509.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "CertifyX509_fp.h"
#include "X509.h"
#include "TpmASN1_fp.h"
#include "X509_spt_fp.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#if CERTIFYX509_DEBUG
  // TODO_RENAME_TNC_FOLDER:platform_interface refers to the TPM_CoreLib platform interface
  # include <platform_interface/tpm_to_platform_interface.h>
#endif
#if CC_CertifyX509
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Certify using an X509-formatted certificate
*/
// return type: TPM_RC

TPM_RC TPMS_CertifyX509(CertifyX509_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                       CertifyX509_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
                       )
{
    TPM_RC result;
    OBJECT* signKey = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    OBJECT* object = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);
    HASH_STATE hash;
    INT16 length; // length for a tagged element
    ASN1UnmarshalContext ctx;
    ASN1MarshalContext ctxOut;
    // certTBS holds an array of pointers and lengths. Each entry references the corresponding value in a TBSCertificate structure. For example, the 1th element references the version number
    stringRef certTBS[REF_COUNT] = {{0}};
    # define ALLOWED_SEQUENCES (SUBJECT_PUBLIC_KEY_REF - SIGNATURE_REF)
    stringRef partial[ALLOWED_SEQUENCES] = {{0}};
    INT16 countOfSequences = 0;
    INT16 i;
    //
#if CERTIFYX509_DEBUG
  DebugFileInit();
  DebugDumpBuffer(in->partialCertificate.t.size,
                   in->partialCertificate.t.buffer,
                   "partialCertificate");
#endif
```
59  // Input Validation
60  if ((in->reserved.b.size != 0))
61      return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_CertifyX509_reserved;
62  // signing key must be able to sign
63  if (!IsSigningObject(signKey))
64      return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_CertifyX509_signHandle;
65  // Pick a scheme for sign. If the input sign scheme is not compatible with
66  // the default scheme, return an error.
67  if (!CryptSelectSignScheme(signKey, &in->inScheme))
68      return TPM_RC_SCHEME + RC_CertifyX509_inScheme;
69  // Make sure that the public Key encoding is known
70  if (X509AddPublicKey(NULL, object) == 0)
71      return TPM_RC_ASYMMETRIC + RC_CertifyX509_objectHandle;
72  // Unbundle 'partialCertificate'.
73  // Initialize the unmarshaling context
74  if (!ASN1UnmarshalContextInitialize(
75      &ctx, in->partialCertificate.t.size, in->partialCertificate.t.buffer))
76      return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate;
77  // Make sure that this is a constructed SEQUENCE
78  length = ASN1NextTag(&ctx);
79  // Must be a constructed SEQUENCE that uses all of the input parameter
80  if ((ctx.tag != (ASN1_CONSTRUCTED_SEQUENCE))
81      || ((ctx.offset + length) != in->partialCertificate.t.size))
82      return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate;
83  // This scans through the contents of the outermost SEQUENCE. This would be the
84  // 'issuer', 'validity', 'subject', 'issuerUniqueID' (optional),
85  // 'subjectUniqueID' (optional), and 'extensions.'
86  while (ctx.offset < ctx.size)
87  {
88      INT16 startOfElement = ctx.offset;
89      // Read the next tag and length field.
90      length = ASN1NextTag(&ctx);
91      if (length < 0)
92          break;
93      if (ctx.tag == (ASN1_CONSTRUCTED_SEQUENCE))
94      {
95          if (countOfSequences < ALLOWED_SEQUENCES)
96          {
97              partial[countOfSequences].buf = &ctx.buffer[startOfElement];
98              partial[countOfSequences].len = (INT16)ctx.offset - startOfElement;
99          }
100         countOfSequences++;
101        if (countOfSequences > ALLOWED_SEQUENCES)
102            break;
103      }
104  else if (ctx.tag == X509_EXTENSIONS)
105  {
106        if (certTBS[EXTENSIONS_REF].len != 0)
107            return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate;
108        certTBS[EXTENSIONS_REF].buf = &ctx.buffer[startOfElement];
109        certTBS[EXTENSIONS_REF].len = (INT16)ctx.offset - startOfElement;
110    }
111  else
112      return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate;
113  // Make sure that we used all of the data and found at least the required
114  // number of elements.
115  if ((ctx.offset != ctx.size) || (countOfSequences < 3) || (countOfSequences > 4)
116      || (certTBS[EXTENSIONS_REF].buf == NULL))
117      return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate;
118  // Now that we know how many sequences there were, we can put them where they
119  // belong
for(i = 0; i < countOfSequences; i++)
    certTBS[SUBJECT_KEY_REF - i] = partial[countOfSequences - 1 - i];

// If only three SEQUENCES, then the TPM needs to produce the signature algorithm.
// See if it can
if((countOfSequences == 3)
   && (X509AddSigningAlgorithm(NULL, signKey, &in->inScheme) == 0))
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_CertifyX509_signHandle;

// Process the extensions
result = X509ProcessExtensions(object, &certTBS[EXTENSIONS_REF]);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result + ((result == TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES) ? RC_CertifyX509_objectHandle
                         : RC_CertifyX509_partialCertificate);

// Command Output
// Create the addedToCertificate values
// Build the addedToCertificate from the bottom up.
// Initialize the context structure
ASN1InitialializeMarshalContext(&ctxOut,
                                      sizeof(out->addedToCertificate.t.buffer),
                                      out->addedToCertificate.t.buffer);
// Place a marker for the overall context
ASN1StartMarshalContext(&ctxOut);
// SEQUENCE for addedToCertificate
// Add the subject public key descriptor
certTBS[SUBJECT_PUBLIC_KEY_REF].len = X509AddPublicKey(&ctxOut, object);
certTBS[SUBJECT_PUBLIC_KEY_REF].buf = ctxOut.buffer + ctxOut.offset;
// If the caller didn’t provide the algorithm identifier, create it
if(certTBS[SIGNATURE_REF].len == 0)
{
    certTBS[SIGNATURE_REF].len =
        X509AddSigningAlgorithm(&ctxOut, signKey, &in->inScheme);
    certTBS[SIGNATURE_REF].buf = ctxOut.buffer + ctxOut.offset;
}
// Create the serial number value. Use the out->tbsDigest as scratch.
{
    TPM2B* digest = &out->tbsDigest.b;
    //
    digest->size = (INT16)CryptHashStart(&hash, signKey->publicArea.nameAlg);
    pAssert(digest->size != 0);
    // The serial number size is the smaller of the digest and the vendor-defined
    // value
    digest->size = MIN(digest->size, SIZE_OF_X509_SERIAL_NUMBER);
    // Add all the parts of the certificate other than the serial number
    // and version number
    for(i = SIGNATURE_REF; i < REF_COUNT; i++)
        CryptDigestUpdate(&hash, certTBS[i].len, certTBS[i].buf);
    // throw in the Name of the signing key...
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hash, &signKey->name.b);
    // ...and the Name of the signed key.
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hash, &object->name.b);
    // Done
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hash, digest);
}
// Add the serial number
certTBS[SERIAL_NUMBER_REF].len =
    ASN1PushInteger(&ctxOut, out->tbsDigest.t.size, out->tbsDigest.t.buffer);
certTBS[SERIAL_NUMBER_REF].buf = ctxOut.buffer + ctxOut.offset;
// Add the static version number
ASN1StartMarshalContext(&ctxOut);
ASN1PushUINT(&ctxOut, 2);
certTBS[VERSION_REF].len =
    ASN1EndEncapsulation(&ctxOut, ASN1_APPLICATION_SPECIFIC);
certTBS[VERSION_REF].buf = ctxOut.buffer + ctxOut.offset;

// Create a fake tag and length for the TBS in the space used for
// 'addedToCertificate'

// Sanity check
if(ctxOut.offset < 0)
    return TPM_RC_FAILURE;

// Create the tbsDigest to sign
out->tbsDigest.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hash, in->inScheme.details.any.hashAlg);
for(i = 0; i < REF_COUNT; i++)
    CryptDigestUpdate(&hash, certTBS[i].len, certTBS[i].buf);
CryptHashEnd2B(&hash, &out->tbsDigest.b);

#if CERTIFYX509_DEBUG

BYTE fullTBS[4096];
BYTE* fill = fullTBS;
int j;
for(j = 0; j < REF_COUNT; j++)
{
    MemoryCopy(fill, certTBS[j].buf, certTBS[j].len);
    fill += certTBS[j].len;
}
DebugDumpBuffer((int)(fill - &fullTBS[0]), fullTBS, "\nfull TBS");
#endif

// Finish up the processing of addedToCertificate

// Create the actual tag and length for the addedToCertificate structure
out->addedToCertificate.t.size =
    ASN1EndEncapsulation(&ctxOut, ASN1_CONSTRUCTED_SEQUENCE);
// Now move all the addedToContext to the start of the buffer
MemoryCopy(out->addedToCertificate.t.buffer,
    ctxOut.buffer + ctxOut.offset,
    out->addedToCertificate.t.size);

#if CERTIFYX509_DEBUG

DebugDumpBuffer(out->addedToCertificate.t.size,
    out->addedToCertificate.t.buffer,
    "\naddedToCertificate");
#endif

// only thing missing is the signature
result = CryptSign(signKey, &in->inScheme, &out->tbsDigest, &out->signature);
return result;

#endif // CC_CertifyX509
19 Ephemeral EC Keys

19.1 Introduction

The TPM generates keys that have different lifetimes. TPM keys in a hierarchy can be persistent for as long as the seed of the hierarchy is unchanged and these keys may be used multiple times. Other TPM-generated keys are only useful for a single operation. Some of these single-use keys are used in the command in which they are created. Examples of this use are TPM2_Duplicate() where an ephemeral key is created for a single pass key exchange with another TPM. However, there are other cases, such as anonymous attestation, where the protocol requires two passes where the public part of the ephemeral key is used outside of the TPM before the final command "consumes" the ephemeral key.

For these uses, TPM2_Commit() or TPM2_EC_Ephemeral() may be used to have the TPM create an ephemeral EC key and return the public part of the key for external use. Then in a subsequent command, the caller provides a reference to the ephemeral key so that the TPM can retrieve or recreate the associated private key.

When an ephemeral EC key is created, it is assigned a number and that number is returned to the caller as the identifier for the key. This number is not a handle. A handle is assigned to a key that may be context saved but these ephemeral EC keys may not be saved and do not have a full key context. When a subsequent command uses the ephemeral key, the caller provides the number of the ephemeral key. The TPM uses that number to either look up or recompute the associated private key. After the key is used, the TPM records the fact that the key has been used so that it cannot be used again.

As mentioned, the TPM can keep each assigned private ephemeral key in memory until it is used. However, this could consume a large amount of memory. To limit the memory size, the TPM is allowed to restrict the number of pending private keys – keys that have been allocated but not used.

NOTE The minimum number of ephemeral keys is determined by a platform specific specification

To further reduce the memory requirements for the ephemeral private keys, the TPM is allowed to use pseudo-random values for the ephemeral keys. Instead of keeping the full value of the key in memory, the TPM can use a counter as input to a KDF. Incrementing the counter will cause the TPM to generate a new pseudo-random value.

Using the counter to generate pseudo-random private ephemeral keys greatly simplifies tracking of key usage. When a counter value is used to create a key, a bit in an array may be set to indicate that the key use is pending. When the ephemeral key is consumed, the bit is cleared. This prevents the key from being used more than once.

Since the TPM is allowed to restrict the number of pending ephemeral keys, the array size can be limited. For example, a 128-bit array would allow 128 keys to be "pending".

The management of the array is described in greater detail in the Split Operations clause in Annex C of TPM 2.0 Part 1.
19.2 TPM2_Commit

19.2.1 General Description

TPM2_Commit() performs the first part of an ECC anonymous signing operation. The TPM will perform
the point multiplications on the provided points and return intermediate signing values. The signHandle
parameter shall refer to an ECC key and the signing scheme must be anonymous (TPM_RC_SCHEME).

NOTE 1 Currently, TPM_ALG_ECDAA is the only defined anonymous scheme.

NOTE 2 This command cannot be used with a sign+decrypt key because that type of key is required to have
 a scheme of TPM_ALG_NULL.

For this command, p1, s2 and y2 are optional parameters. If s2 is an Empty Buffer, then the TPM shall
return TPM_RC_SIZE if y2 is not an Empty Buffer.

The algorithm is specified in the TPM 2.0 Part 1 Annex for ECC, TPM2_Commit().
## 19.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 104 — TPM2_Commit Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the key that will be used in the signing operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>P1</td>
<td>a point ((M)) on the curve used by signHandle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE_DATA</td>
<td>s2</td>
<td>octet array used to derive x-coordinate of a base point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER</td>
<td>y2</td>
<td>y coordinate of the point associated with s2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 105 — TPM2_Commit Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>ECC point (K := [d_s](x_2, y_2))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>ECC point (L := [r](x_2, y_2))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ECC point (E := [r]P_1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>counter</td>
<td>least-significant 16 bits of commitCount</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.2.3 Detailed Actions

19.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Ecdaa/Commit.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Commit_fp.h"
#include "TpmMath_Util_fp.h"

#if CC_Commit // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification) */
// This command performs the point multiply operations for anonymous signing
// scheme.

/* Return Type: TPM_RC */
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES 'keyHandle' references a restricted key that is not a
// signing key
// TPM_RC_ECC_POINT either 'P1' or the point derived from 's2' is not on
// the curve of 'keyHandle'
// TPM_RC_HASH invalid name algorithm in 'keyHandle'
// TPM_RC_KEY 'keyHandle' does not reference an ECC key
// TPM_RC_SCHEME the scheme of 'keyHandle' is not an anonymous scheme
// TPM_RC_NO_RESULT 'K', 'L' or 'E' was a point at infinity; or
// failed to generate "r" value
// TPM_RC_SIZE 's2' is empty but 'y2' is not or 's2' provided but
// 'y2' is not
TPM_RC

TPM2_Commit(Commit_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
           Commit_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
  OBJECT* eccKey;
  TPMS_ECC_POINT P2;
  TPMS_ECC_POINT* pP2 = NULL;
  TPMS_ECC_POINT* pP1 = NULL;
  TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER r;
  TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER p;
  TPM_RC result;
  TPMS_ECC_PARMS* parms;

  // Input Validation
  eccKey = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
  parms = &eccKey->publicArea.parameters.eccDetail;

  // Input key must be an ECC key
  if (eccKey->publicArea.type != TPM_ALG_ECC)
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_Commit_signHandle;

  // This command may only be used with a sign-only key using an anonymous
  // scheme.
  // NOTE: a sign + decrypt key has no scheme so it will not be an anonymous one
  // and an unrestricted sign key might no have a signing scheme but it can't
  // be use in Commit()
  if (!CryptIsSchemeAnonymous(parms->scheme.scheme))
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_Commit_signHandle;

  // Make sure that both parts of P2 are present if either is present
  if ((in->s2.t.size == 0) != (in->y2.t.size == 0))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Commit_y2;

  // Get prime modulus for the curve. This is needed later but getting this now
  // allows confirmation that the curve exists.
  if (!TpmMath_IntTo2B(ExtEcc_CurveGetPrime(parms->curveID), &p.b, 0))
```

return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_Commit_signHandle;

// Get the random value that will be used in the point multiplications
// Note: this does not commit the count.
if(!CryptGenerateR(&r, NULL, parms->curveID, &eccKey->name))
return TPM_RC_NO_RESULT;

// Set up P2 if s2 and Y2 are provided
if(in->s2.t.size != 0)
{
    TPM2B_DIGEST x2;
    pP2 = &P2;

    // copy y2 for P2
    P2.y = in->y2;

    // Compute x2 HnameAlg(s2) mod p
    // do the hash operation on s2 with the size of curve 'p'
    x2.t.size = CryptHashBlock(eccKey->publicArea.nameAlg,
                                in->s2.t.size,
                                in->s2.t.buffer,
                                sizeof(x2.t.buffer),
                                x2.t.buffer);

    // If there were error returns in the hash routine, indicate a problem
    // with the hash algorithm selection
    if(x2.t.size == 0)
        return TPM_RCS_HASH + RC_Commit_signHandle;

    // The size of the remainder will be same as the size of p. DivideB() will
    // pad the results (leading zeros) if necessary to make the size the same
    P2.x.t.size = p.t.size;
    // set p2.x = hash(s2) mod p
    if(DivideB(&x2.b, &p.b, NULL, &P2.x.b) != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return TPM_RC_NO_RESULT;

    // If there is a P1, make sure that it is on the curve
    // NOTE: an "empty" point has two UINT16 values which are the size values
    // for each of the coordinates.
    if(in->P1.size > 4)
    {
        pP1 = &in->P1.point;
        if(!CryptEccIsPointOnCurve(parms->curveID, pP1))
            return TPM_RCS_ECC_POINT + RC_Commit_P1;
    }

    // Pass the parameters to CryptCommit.
    // The work is not done in-line because it does several point multiplies
    // with the same curve. It saves work by not having to reload the curve
    // parameters multiple times.
    result = CryptEccCommitCompute(&out->K.point,
                                    &out->L.point,
                                    &out->E.point,
                                    parms->curveID,
                                    pP1,
                                    pP2,
                                    &eccKey->sensitive.sensitive.ecc,
                                    &r);

    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
127     // The commit computation was successful so complete the commit by setting
128     // the bit
129     out->counter = CryptCommit();
130     return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
131   }
132 #endif  // CC_Commit
133
134 #endif  // CC_Commit
19.3  TPM2_EC_Ephemeral

19.3.1  General Description

TPM2_EC_Ephemeral() creates an ephemeral key for use in a two-phase key exchange protocol. The TPM will use the commit mechanism to assign an ephemeral key \( r \) and compute a public point \( Q := [r]G \) where \( G \) is the generator point associated with curveID.
19.3.2 Command and Response

### Table 106 — TPM2_EC_Ephemeral Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_EC_Ephemeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ECC_CURVE</td>
<td>curveID</td>
<td>The curve for the computed ephemeral point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 107 — TPM2_EC_Ephemeral Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ECC_POINT</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>ephemeral public key $Q := [r]G$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>counter</td>
<td>least-significant 16 bits of $commitCount$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.3.3 Detailed Actions

19.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Asymmetric/EC_Ephemeral.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "EC_Ephemeral_fp.h"

#if CC_EC_Ephemeral // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// This command creates an ephemeral key using the commit mechanism
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_NO_RESULT the TPM is not able to generate an 'r' value

TPM_RC TPM2_EC_Ephemeral(EC_Ephemeral_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                        EC_Ephemeral_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM2B_ECC_PARAMETER r;
    TPM_RC result;

    do {
        // Get the random value that will be used in the point multiplications
        // Note: this does not commit the count.
        if(!CryptGenerateR(&r, NULL, in->curveID, NULL))
            return TPM_RC_NO_RESULT;
        // do a point multiply
        result = CryptEccPointMultiply(&out->Q.point, in->curveID, &r, NULL, NULL);
        // commit the count value if either the r value results in the point at
        // infinity or if the value is good. The commit on the r value for infinity
        // is so that the r value will be skipped.
        if((result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS) || (result == TPM_RC_NO_RESULT))
            out->counter = CryptCommit();
    } while(result == TPM_RC_NO_RESULT);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_EC_Ephemeral
```
20 Signing and Signature Verification

20.1 TPM2_VerifySignature

20.1.1 General Description

This command uses loaded keys to validate a signature on a message with the message digest passed to the TPM.

If the signature check succeeds, then the TPM will produce a TPMT_TK_VERIFIED. Otherwise, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIGNATURE.

If the key is in the NULL hierarchy, then digest in the ticket will be the Empty Buffer.

20.1.1.1 NOTE 1 A valid ticket can be used in subsequent commands to provide proof to the TPM that the TPM has validated the signature over the message using the key referenced by keyHandle. For example, see clause 23.15.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyDuplicationSelect.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyDuplicationSelect_fp.h"
#endif

/* (See part 3 specification)
  // allows qualification of duplication so that it a specific new parent may be
  // selected or a new parent selected for a specific object.
*/

TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect(  
PolicyDuplicationSelect_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) 
{

SESSION*   session;
HASH_STATE hashState;
TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect;

// Input Validation

// Get pointer to the session structure
session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

// nameHash in session context must be empty
if(session->u1.nameHash.t.size != 0)  
    return TPM_RC_CPHASH;

// commandCode in session context must be empty  
if(session->commandCode != 0)  
    return TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE;

// Internal Data Update

// Update name hash
session->u1.nameHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add objectName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);

// add new parent name
```
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->newParentName.b);

// complete hash
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u1.nameHash.b);
session->attributes.isNameHashDefined = SET;

// update policy hash
// Old policyDigest size should be the same as the new policyDigest size since
// they are using the same hash algorithm
session->u2.policyDigest.t.size =
CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add old policy
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// add command code
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

// add objectName
if(in->includeObject == YES)
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);

// add new parent name
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->newParentName.b);

// add includeObject
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPMI_YES_NO), in->includeObject);

// complete digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// set commandCode in session context
session->commandCode = TPM_CC_Duplicate;

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect

TPM2_PolicyAuthorize.

If keyHandle references an asymmetric key, only the public portion of the key needs to be loaded. If
keyHandle references a symmetric key, both the public and private portions need to be loaded.

NOTE 2 The sensitive area of the symmetric object is required to allow verification of the symmetric
signature (the HMAC).
### 20.1.2 Command and Response

#### Table 108 — TPM2_VerifySignature Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC::VerifySignature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>keyHandle</td>
<td>handle of public key that will be used in the validation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>digest</td>
<td>digest of the signed message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>signature to be tested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 109 — TPM2_VerifySignature Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_VERIFIED</td>
<td>validation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20.1.3 Detailed Actions

20.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Signature/VerifySignature.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "VerifySignature_fp.h"

#if CC_VerifySignature  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
   This command uses loaded key to validate an asymmetric signature on a message
   with the message digest passed to the TPM.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES       'keyHandle' does not reference a signing key
//   TPM_RC_SIGNATURE        signature is not genuine
//   TPM_RC_SCHEME           CryptValidateSignature()
//   TPM_RC_HANDLE           the input handle is references an HMAC key but
//                            the private portion is not loaded
TPM_RC

TPM2_VerifySignature(VerifySignature_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                      VerifySignature_Out* out, // OUT: output parameter list
                      )
{
    TPM_RC            result;
    OBJECT*           signObject = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);
    TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY hierarchy;

    // Input Validation
    // The object to validate the signature must be a signing key.
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(signObject->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, sign))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_VerifySignature_keyHandle;

    // Validate Signature.  TPM_RC_SCHEME, TPM_RC_HANDLE or TPM_RC_SIGNATURE
    // error may be returned by CryptValidateSignature()
    result = CryptValidateSignature(in->keyHandle, &in->digest, &in->signature);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_VerifySignature_signature);

    // Command Output
    hierarchy = GetHierarchy(in->keyHandle);
    if(hierarchy == TPM_RH_NULL || signObject->publicArea.nameAlg == TPM_ALG_NULL)
    {
        // produce empty ticket if hierarchy is TPM_RH_NULL or nameAlg is
        // TPM_ALG_NULL
        out->validation.tag           = TPM_ST_VERIFIED;
        out->validation.hierarchy     = TPM_RH_NULL;
        out->validation.digest.t.size = 0;
    }
    else
    {
        // Compute ticket
        result = TicketComputeVerified(
                hierarchy, &in->digest, &signObject->name, &out->validation);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    }
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
  }
#endif  // CC_VerifySignature
```
20.2 TPM2_Sign

20.2.1 General Description

This command causes the TPM to sign an externally provided hash with the specified symmetric or asymmetric signing key.

NOTE 1  If keyHandle references an unrestricted signing key, a digest can be signed using either this command or an HMAC command.

If keyHandle references a restricted signing key, then validation shall be provided, indicating that the TPM performed the hash of the data and validation shall indicate that hashed data did not start with TPM_GENERATED_VALUE.

NOTE 2  If the hashed data did start with TPM_GENERATED_VALUE, then the validation will be a NULL ticket.

The x509sign attribute of keyHandle may not be SET (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES).

If the scheme of keyHandle is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then inScheme shall either be the same scheme as keyHandle or TPM_ALG_NULL. If the sign attribute is not SET in the key referenced by handle, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

If the scheme of keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL, the TPM will sign using inScheme; otherwise, it will sign using the scheme of keyHandle.

NOTE 3  When the signing scheme uses a hash algorithm, the algorithm is defined in the qualifying data of the scheme. This is the same algorithm that is required to be used in producing digest. The size of digest must match that of the hash algorithm in the scheme.

If inScheme is not a valid signing scheme for the type of keyHandle (or TPM_ALG_NULL), then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SCHEME.

If the scheme of keyHandle is an anonymous scheme, then inScheme shall have the same scheme algorithm as keyHandle and inScheme will contain a counter value that will be used in the signing process.

EXAMPLE  For ECDAA, inScheme.details.ecdaa.count will contain the count value.

If validation is provided, then the hash algorithm used in computing the digest is required to be the hash algorithm specified in the scheme of keyHandle (TPM_RC_TICKET).

If the validation parameter is not the Empty Buffer, then it will be checked even if the key referenced by keyHandle is not a restricted signing key.

NOTE 4  If keyHandle is both a sign and decrypt key, keyHandle will have a scheme of TPM_ALG_NULL. If validation is provided, then it must be a NULL validation ticket or the ticket validation will fail.
### 20.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 110 — TPM2_Sign Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@keyHandle</td>
<td>Handle of key that will perform signing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>digest</td>
<td>digest to be signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for keyHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_HASHCHECK</td>
<td>validation</td>
<td>proof that digest was created by the TPM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If keyHandle is not a restricted signing key, then this may be a NULL Ticket with tag = TPM_ST_HASHCHECK.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 111 — TPM2_Sign Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the signature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20.2.3 Detailed Actions

20.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Signature/Sign.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Sign_fp.h"

#if CC_Sign // Conditional expansion of this file
  #include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#endif

/* (See part 3 specification) *
// sign an externally provided hash using an asymmetric signing key */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_BINDING          The public and private portions of the key are not
// properly bound.
// TPM_RC_KEY              'signHandle' does not reference a signing key;
// TPM_RC_SCHEME           the scheme is not compatible with sign key type,
// or input scheme is not compatible with default
// scheme, or the chosen scheme is not a valid
// sign scheme
// TPM_RC_TICKET           'validation' is not a valid ticket
// TPM_RC_VALUE            the value to sign is larger than allowed for the
// type of 'keyHandle'

TPM_RC
TPM2_Sign(Sign_In*  in, // IN: input parameter list
         Sign_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
        )
{
  TPM_RC            result;
  TPM_TK_HASHCHECK ticket;
  OBJECT*           signObject = HandleToObject(in->keyHandle);

  // Input Validation
  if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
    return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_Sign_keyHandle;

  // A key that will be used for x.509 signatures can't be used in TPM2_Sign().
  if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(signObject->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, x509sign))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_Sign_keyHandle;

  // pick a scheme for sign.  If the input sign scheme is not compatible with
  // the default scheme, return an error.
  if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
    return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_Sign_inScheme;

  // If validation is provided, or the key is restricted, check the ticket
  if(in->validation.digest.t.size != 0
      || IS_ATTRIBUTE(
          signObject->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, restricted))
  {
    // Compute and compare ticket
    result = TicketComputeHashCheck(in->validation.hierarchy,
                                     in->inScheme.details.any.hashAlg,
                                     &in->digest,
                                     &ticket);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
      return result;
  }

  if(!MemoryEqual2B(&in->validation.digest.b, &ticket.digest.b))
    return TPM_RCS_TICKET + RC_Sign_validation;
```
60 }  
61 else
62 // If we don't have a ticket, at least verify that the provided 'digest'
63 // is the size of the scheme hashAlg digest.
64 // NOTE: this does not guarantee that the 'digest' is actually produced using
65 // the indicated hash algorithm, but at least it might be.
66 {
67 if (in->digest.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(in->inScheme.details.any.hashAlg))
68     return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_Sign_digest;
69 }
70
71 // Command Output
72 // Sign the hash. A TPM_RC_VALUE or TPM_RC_SCHEMA
73 // error may be returned at this point
74 result = CryptSign(signObject, &in->inScheme, &in->digest, &out->signature);
75 return result;
76 }
77
78 #endif // CC_Sign
79
21 Command Audit

21.1 Introduction

If a command has been selected for command audit, the command audit status will be updated when that command completes successfully. The digest is updated as:

\[
\text{commandAuditDigest}_{\text{new}} = H_{\text{auditAlg}}(\text{commandAuditDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{cpHash} || \text{rpHash})
\]

(5)

where

- \( H_{\text{auditAlg}} \): hash function using the algorithm of the audit sequence
- \( \text{commandAuditDigest} \): accumulated digest
- \( \text{cpHash} \): the command parameter hash
- \( \text{rpHash} \): the response parameter hash

\( \text{auditAlg} \), the hash algorithm, is set using \( \text{TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus}() \).

\( \text{TPM2_Shutdown}() \) cannot be audited but \( \text{TPM2_Startup}() \) can be audited. If the \( \text{cpHash} \) of the \( \text{TPM2_Startup}() \) is \( \text{TPM\_SU\_STATE} \), that would indicate that a \( \text{TPM2_Shutdown}() \) had been successfully executed.

\( \text{TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus}() \) is always audited, except when it is used to change \( \text{auditAlg} \).

If the TPM is in Failure mode, command audit is not functional.
21.2 TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus

21.2.1 General Description

This command may be used by the Privacy Administrator or platform to change the audit status of a command or to set the hash algorithm used for the audit digest, but not both at the same time.

If the auditAlg parameter is a supported hash algorithm and not the same as the current algorithm, then the TPM will check both setList and clearList are empty (zero length). If so, then the algorithm is changed, and the audit digest is cleared. If auditAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL or the same as the current algorithm, then the algorithm and audit digest are unchanged and the setList and clearList will be processed.

NOTE 1 Because the audit digest is cleared, the audit counter will increment the next time that an audited command is executed.

Use of TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus() to change the list of audited commands is an audited event. If TPM_CC_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus is in clearList, the fact that it is in clearList is ignored.

NOTE 2 Use of this command to change the audit hash algorithm is not audited and the digest is reset when the command completes. The change in the audit hash algorithm is the evidence that this command was used to change the algorithm.

The commands in setList indicate the commands to be added to the list of audited commands and the commands in clearList indicate the commands that will no longer be audited. It is not an error if a command in setList is already audited or is not implemented. It is not an error if a command in clearList is not currently being audited or is not implemented.

If a command code is in both setList and clearList, then it will not be audited (that is, setList shall be processed first).
21.2.2 Command and Response

Table 112 — TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>auditAlg</td>
<td>hash algorithm for the audit digest; if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_ALG_NULL, then the hash is not changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
<td>setList</td>
<td>list of commands that will be added to those that will be audited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
<td>clearList</td>
<td>list of commands that will no longer be audited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 113 — TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21.2.3 Detailed Actions

21.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/CommandAudit/SetCommandCodeAuditStatus.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SetCommandCodeAuditStatus_fp.h"
#if CC_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus  // Conditional expansion of this file
 (*)(See part 3 specification)
 // change the audit status of a command or to set the hash algorithm used for
 // the audit digest.
 */
TPM_RC
TPM2_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus(
    SetCommandCodeAuditStatus_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // The command needs NV update.  Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Internal Data Update

    // Update hash algorithm
    if(in->auditAlg != TPM_ALG_NULL && in->auditAlg != gp.auditHashAlg)
    {
        // Can't change the algorithm and command list at the same time
        if(in->setList.count != 0 || in->clearList.count != 0)
            return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus_auditAlg;

        // Change the hash algorithm for audit
        gp.auditHashAlg = in->auditAlg;
        // Set the digest size to a unique value that indicates that the digest
        // algorithm has been changed. The size will be cleared to zero in the
        // command audit processing on exit.
        gr.commandAuditDigest.t.size = 1;
        // Save the change of command audit data (this sets g_updateNV so that NV
        // will be updated on exit.)
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(auditHashAlg);
    }
    else
    {
        UINT32 i;
        BOOL changed = FALSE;

        // Process set list
        for(i = 0; i < in->setList.count; i++)
            // If change is made in CommandAuditSet, set changed flag
            if(CommandAuditSet(in->setList.commandCodes[i]))
                changed = TRUE;

        // Process clear list
        for(i = 0; i < in->clearList.count; i++)
            // If change is made in CommandAuditClear, set changed flag
            if(CommandAuditClear(in->clearList.commandCodes[i]))
                changed = TRUE;
```
// if change was made to command list, update NV
if (changed)
    // this sets g_updateNV so that NV will be updated on exit.
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(auditCommands);
}

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_SetCommandCodeAuditStatus
22 Integrity Collection (PCR)

22.1 Introduction

In TPM 1.2, an Event was hashed using SHA-1 and then the 20-octet digest was extended to a PCR using TPM_Extend(). This specification allows the use of multiple PCR at a given Index, each using a different hash algorithm. Rather than require that the external software generate multiple hashes of the Event with each being extended to a different PCR, the Event data may be sent to the TPM for hashing. This ensures that the resulting digests will properly reflect the algorithms chosen for the PCR even if the calling software is unable to implement the hash algorithm.

NOTE 1 There is continued support for software hashing of events with TPM2_PCR_Extend().

To support recording of an Event that is larger than the TPM input buffer, the caller may use the command sequence described in clause 16.2.3.1.

Change to a PCR requires authorization. The authorization may be with either an authorization value or an authorization policy. The platform-specific specifications determine which PCR may be controlled by policy. All other PCR are controlled by authorization.

If a PCR may be associated with a policy, then the algorithm ID of that policy determines whether the policy is to be applied. If the algorithm ID is not TPM_ALG_NULL, then the policy digest associated with the PCR must match the policySession→policyDigest in a policy session. If the algorithm ID is TPM_ALG_NULL, then no policy is present, and the authorization requires an EmptyAuth.

If a platform-specific specification indicates that PCR are grouped, then all the PCR in the group use the same authorization policy or authorization value.

pcrUpdateCounter counter will be incremented on the successful completion of any command that modifies (Extends or resets) a PCR unless the platform-specific specification explicitly excludes the PCR from being counted.

NOTE 2 If a command causes PCR in multiple banks to change, the PCR Update Counter must be incremented once for each bank. The commands that extend PCR are: TPM2_PCR_Extend, TPM2_PCR_Event, and TPM2_EventSequenceComplete.

If a command resets PCR in multiple banks, the PCR Update Counter must be incremented only once. The commands that reset PCR are: TPM2_PCR_Reset, and TPM2_Startup.

A platform-specific specification may designate a set of PCR that are under control of the TCB. These PCR may not be modified without the proper authorization. Updates of these PCR shall not cause the PCR Update Counter to increment.

EXAMPLE Updates of the TCB PCR will not cause the PCR update counter to increment because these PCR are changed at the whim of the TCB and may not represent the trust state of the platform.
22.2 TPM2_PCR_Extend

22.2.1 General Description

This command is used to cause an update to the indicated PCR. The \textit{digests} parameter contains one or more tagged digest values identified by an algorithm ID. For each digest, the PCR associated with \textit{pcrHandle} is Extended into the bank identified by the tag (\textit{hashAlg}).

\textbf{EXAMPLE} A SHA1 digest would be Extended into the SHA1 bank and a SHA256 digest would be Extended into the SHA256 bank.

For each list entry, the TPM will check to see if \textit{pcrNum} is implemented for that algorithm. If so, the TPM shall perform the following operation:

\begin{equation}
\text{PCR.digest}_{\text{new}} [\text{pcrNum}][\text{alg}] = H_{\text{alg}}(\text{PCR.digest}_{\text{old}}[\text{pcrNum}][\text{alg}] || \text{data[alg].buffer})
\end{equation}

where

- \(H_{\text{alg}}()\) hash function using the hash algorithm associated with the PCR instance
- \(\text{PCR.digest}\) the digest value in a PCR
- \(\text{pcrNum}\) the PCR numeric selector (\textit{pcrHandle})
- \(\text{alg}\) the PCR algorithm selector for the digest
- \(\text{data[alg].buffer}\) the bank-specific data to be extended

If no digest value is specified for a bank, then the PCR in that bank is not modified.

\textbf{NOTE 1} This allows consistent operation of the digests list for all of the Event recording commands.

If a digest is present and the PCR in that bank is not implemented, the digest value is not used.

\textbf{NOTE 2} If the caller includes digests for algorithms that are not implemented, then the TPM will fail the call because the unmarshalling of \textit{digests} will fail. Each of the entries in the list is a TPMT_HA, which is a hash algorithm followed by a digest. If the algorithm is not implemented, unmarshalling of the \textit{hashAlg} will fail and the TPM will return TPM_RC_HASH.

If the TPM unmarshals the \textit{hashAlg} of a list entry and the unmarshaled value is not a hash algorithm implemented on the TPM, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HASH.

The \textit{pcrHandle} parameter is allowed to reference TPM_RH_NULL. If so, the input parameters are processed but no action is taken by the TPM. This permits the caller to probe for implemented hash algorithms as an alternative to TPM2_GetCapability.

\textbf{NOTE 3} This command allows a list of digests so that PCR in all banks may be updated in a single command. While the semantics of this command allow multiple extends to a single PCR bank, this is not the preferred use and the limit on the number of entries in the list make this use somewhat impractical.
### 22.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 114 — TPM2_PCR_Extend Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_Extend (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR+</td>
<td>@pcrHandle</td>
<td>handle of the PCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_DIGEST_VALUES</td>
<td>digests</td>
<td>list of tagged digest values to be extended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 115 — TPM2_PCR_Extend Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.2.3 Detailed Actions

22.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_Extend.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_Extend_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_Extend  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Update PCR

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_LOCALITY current command locality is not allowed to
// extend the PCR referenced by 'pcrHandle'

TPM_RC
TPM2_PCR_Extend(PCR_Extend_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    UINT32 i;
    // Input Validation
    // NOTE: This function assumes that the unmarshaling function for 'digests' will
    // have validated that all of the indicated hash algorithms are valid. If the
    // hash algorithms are correct, the unmarshaling code will unmarshal a digest
    // of the size indicated by the hash algorithm. If the overall size is not
    // consistent, the unmarshaling code will run out of input data or have input
    // data left over. In either case, it will cause an unmarshaling error and this
    // function will not be called.
    // For NULL handle, do nothing and return success
    if(in->pcrHandle == TPM_RH_NULL)
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    // Check if the extend operation is allowed by the current command locality
    if(!PCRIsExtendAllowed(in->pcrHandle))
        return TPM_RC_LOCALITY;
    // If PCR is state saved and we need to update orderlyState, check NV
    // availability
    if(PCRIsStateSaved(in->pcrHandle))
        RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Iterate input digest list to extend
    for(i = 0; i < in->digests.count; i++)
    {
        PCRExtend(in->pcrHandle,
                   in->digests.digests[i].hashAlg,
                   CryptHashGetDigestSize(in->digests.digests[i].hashAlg),
                   (BYTE*)&in->digests.digests[i].digest);
    }
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PCR_Extend
```
22.3 TPM2_PCR_Event

22.3.1 General Description

This command is used to cause an update to the indicated PCR. The data in eventData is hashed using the hash algorithm associated with each bank in which the indicated PCR has been allocated. After the data is hashed, the digests list is returned. If the pcrHandle references an implemented PCR and not TPM_RH_NULL, the digests list is processed as in TPM2_PCR_Extend().

A TPM shall support an eventData.size of zero through 1,024 inclusive (eventData.size is an octet count). An eventData.size of zero indicates that there is no data, but the indicated operations will still occur.

EXAMPLE 1 If the command implements PCR[2] in a SHA1 bank and a SHA256 bank, then an extend to PCR[2] will cause eventData to be hashed twice, once with SHA1 and once with SHA256. The SHA1 hash of eventData will be Extended to PCR[2] in the SHA1 bank and the SHA256 hash of eventData will be Extended to PCR[2] of the SHA256 bank.

On successful command completion, digests will contain the list of tagged digests of eventData that was computed in preparation for extending the data into the PCR. At the option of the TPM, the list may contain a digest for each bank, or it may only contain a digest for each bank in which pcrHandle is extant. If pcrHandle is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPM may return either an empty list or a digest for each bank.

EXAMPLE 2 Assume a TPM that implements a SHA1 bank and a SHA256 bank and that PCR[22] is only implemented in the SHA1 bank. If pcrHandle references PCR[22], then digests may contain either a SHA1 and a SHA256 digest or just a SHA1 digest.
### 22.3.2 Command and Response

#### Table 116 — TPM2_PCR_Event Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_Event {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR+</td>
<td>@pcrHandle</td>
<td>Handle of the PCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_EVENT</td>
<td>eventData</td>
<td>Event data in sized buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 117 — TPM2_PCR_Event Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_DIGEST_VALUES</td>
<td>digests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.3.3 Detailed Actions

22.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_Event.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_Event_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_Event  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Update PCR
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_LOCALITY current command locality is not allowed to
// extend the PCR referenced by 'pcrHandle'
TPM_RC
TPM2_PCR_Event(PCR_Event_In* in,
// IN: input parameter list
PCR_Event_Out* out
// OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    UINT32 i;
    UINT16 size;
    // Input Validation
    // If a PCR extend is required
    if(in->pcrHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
    {
        // If the PCR is not allow to extend, return error
        if(!PCRIsExtendAllowed(in->pcrHandle))
            return TPM_RC_LOCALITY;
        // If PCR is state saved and we need to update orderlyState, check NV
        // availability
        if(PCRIsStateSaved(in->pcrHandle))
            RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;
    }
    // Internal Data Update
    out->digests.count = HASH_COUNT;
    // Iterate supported PCR bank algorithms to extend
    for(i = 0; i < HASH_COUNT; i++)
    {
        TPM_ALG_ID hash = CryptHashGetAlgByIndex(i);
        out->digests.digests[i].hashAlg = hash;
        size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, hash);
        CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->eventData.b);
        CryptHashEnd(&hashState, size, (BYTE*)&out->digests.digests[i].digest);
        if(in->pcrHandle != TPM_RH_NULL)
            PCRExtend(
                in->pcrHandle, hash, size, (BYTE*)&out->digests.digests[i].digest);
    }
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PCR_Event
```
22.4 TPM2_PCR_Read

22.4.1 General Description

This command returns the values of all PCR specified in `pcrSelectionIn`.

The TPM will process the list of TPMS_PCR_SELECTION in `pcrSelectionIn` in order. Within each TPMS_PCR_SELECTION, the TPM will process the bits in the `pcrSelect` array in ascending PCR order (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Selecting Multiple PCR). If a bit is SET, and the indicated PCR is present, then the TPM will add the digest of the PCR to the list of values to be returned in `pcrValues`.

The TPM will continue processing bits until all have been processed or until `pcrValues` would be too large to fit into the output buffer if additional values were added.

The returned `pcrSelectionOut` will have a bit SET in its `pcrSelect` structures for each value present in `pcrValues`.

The current value of the PCR Update Counter is returned in `pcrUpdateCounter`.

The returned list may be empty if none of the selected PCR are implemented.

NOTE If no PCR are returned from a bank, the selector for the bank will be present in `pcrSelectionOut`.

No authorization is required to read a PCR and any implemented PCR may be read from any locality.
22.4.2 Command and Response

### Table 118 — TPM2_PCR_Read Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_Read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>pcrSelectionIn</td>
<td>The selection of PCR to read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 119 — TPM2_PCR_Read Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>pcrUpdateCounter</td>
<td>the current value of the PCR update counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>pcrSelectionOut</td>
<td>the PCR in the returned list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_DIGEST</td>
<td>pcrValues</td>
<td>the contents of the PCR indicated in pcrSelectOut-&gt;pcrSelection[] as tagged digests</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.4.3 Detailed Actions

22.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_Read.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_Read_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_Read // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Read a set of PCR
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_PCR_Read(PCR_Read_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
PCR_Read_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    // Command Output
    // Call PCR read function. input pcrSelectionIn parameter could be changed
    // to reflect the actual PCR being returned
    PCRRead(&in->pcrSelectionIn, &out->pcrValues, &out->pcrUpdateCounter);
    out->pcrSelectionOut = in->pcrSelectionIn;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PCR_Read
```
22.5 TPM2_PCR_Allocate

22.5.1 General Description

This command is used to set the desired PCR allocation of PCR and algorithms. This command requires Platform Authorization.

The TPM will evaluate the request and, if sufficient memory is available for the requested allocation, the TPM will store the allocation request for use during the next _TPM_Init operation. The PCR allocation in place when this command is executed will be retained until the next _TPM_Init. If this command is received multiple times before a _TPM_Init, each one overwrites the previous stored allocation.

This command will only change the allocations of banks that are listed in pcrAllocation.

EXAMPLE 1

If a TPM supports SHA1 and SHA256, then it maintains an allocation for two banks (one of which could be empty). If pcrAllocation only has a selector for the SHA1 bank, then only the allocation of the SHA1 bank will be changed and the SHA256 bank will remain unchanged. To change the allocation of a TPM from 24 SHA1 PCR and no SHA256 PCR to 24 SHA256 PCR and no SHA1 PCR, the pcrAllocation would have to have two selections: one for the empty SHA1 bank and one for the SHA256 bank with 24 PCR.

If a bank is listed more than once, then the last selection in the pcrAllocation list is the one that the TPM will attempt to allocate.

NOTE 1

This does not mean to imply that pcrAllocation.count can exceed HASH_COUNT, the number of digests implemented in the TPM.

EXAMPLE 2

If HASH_COUNT is 2, pcrAllocation can specify SHA-256 twice, and the second one is used. However, if SHA_256 is specified three times, the unmarshaling may fail and the TPM may return an error.

This command shall not allocate more PCR in any bank than there are PCR attribute definitions. The PCR attribute definitions indicate how a PCR is to be managed – if it is resettable, the locality for update, etc. In the response to this command, the TPM returns the maximum number of PCR allowed for any bank.

When PCR are allocated, if DRTM_PCR is defined, the resulting allocation must have at least one bank with the D-RTM PCR allocated. If HCRTM_PCR is defined, the resulting allocation must have at least one bank with the HCRTM_PCR allocated. If not, the TPM returns TPM_RC_PCR.

The TPM may return TPM_RC_SUCCESS even though the request fails. This is to allow the TPM to return information about the size needed for the requested allocation and the size available. If the sizeNeeded parameter in the return is less than or equal to the sizeAvailable parameter, then the allocationSuccess parameter will be YES. Alternatively, if the request fails, The TPM may return TPM_RC_NO_RESULT.

NOTE 2

An example for this type of failure is a TPM that can only support one bank at a time and cannot support arbitrary distribution of PCR among banks.

After this command, TPM2_Shutdown() is only allowed to have a startupType equal to TPM_SU_CLEAR until after the next _TPM_Init.

NOTE 3

Even if this command does not cause the PCR allocation to change, the TPM cannot have its state saved. This is done in order to simplify the implementation. There is no need to optimize this command as it is not expected to be used more than once in the lifetime of the TPM (it can be used any number of times but there is no justification for optimization).
## 22.5.2 Command and Response

### Table 120 — TPM2_PCR_Allocate Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_Allocate {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RHPLATFORM</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP} Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>pcrAllocation</td>
<td>the requested allocation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 121 — TPM2_PCR_Allocate Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>allocationSuccess</td>
<td>YES if the allocation succeeded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>maxPCR</td>
<td>maximum number of PCR that may be in a bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>sizeNeeded</td>
<td>number of octets required to satisfy the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>sizeAvailable</td>
<td>Number of octets available. Computed before the allocation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.5.3 Detailed Actions

22.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_Allocate.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_Allocate_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_Allocate // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Allocate PCR banks
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_PCR              the allocation did not have required PCR
// TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE   NV is not accessible
// TPM_RC_NV_RATE          NV is in a rate-limiting mode
TPM_RC
TPM2_PCR_Allocate(PCR_Allocate_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                  PCR_Allocate_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {

    TPM_RC result;
    // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point.
    // Note: These codes are not listed in the return values above because it is
    // an implementation choice to check in this routine rather than in a common
    // function that is called before these actions are called. These return values
    // are described in the Response Code section of Part 3.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Command Output
    // Call PCR Allocation function.
    result = PCRAllocate(
        &in->pcrAllocation, &out->maxPCR, &out->sizeNeeded, &out->sizeAvailable);
    if(result == TPM_RC_PCR)
        return result;
    // out->allocationSuccess = (result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS);
    // if re-configuration succeeds, set the flag to indicate PCR configuration is
    // going to be changed in next boot
    if(out->allocationSuccess == YES)
        g_pcrReConfig = TRUE;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PCR_Allocate
```

22.6 TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy

22.6.1 General Description

This command is used to associate a policy with a PCR or group of PCR. The policy determines the conditions under which a PCR may be extended or reset.

A policy may only be associated with a PCR that has been defined by a platform-specific specification as allowing a policy. If the TPM implementation does not allow a policy for pcrNum, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

A platform-specific specification may group PCR so that they share a common policy. In such case, a pcrNum that selects any of the PCR in the group will change the policy for all PCR in the group.

The policy setting is persistent and may only be changed by TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy() or by TPM2_ChangePPS().

Before this command is first executed on a TPM or after TPM2_ChangePPS(), the access control on the PCR will be set to the default value defined in the platform-specific specification.

NOTE 1 It is expected that the typical default will be with the policy hash set to TPM_ALG_NULL and an Empty Buffer for the authPolicy value. This will allow an EmptyAuth to be used as the authorization value.

If the size of the data buffer in authPolicy is not the size of a digest produced by hashAlg, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

NOTE 2 If hashAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, then the size is required to be zero.

This command requires platformAuth/platformPolicy.

NOTE 3 If the PCR is in multiple policy sets, the policy will be changed in only one set. The set that is changed will be implementation dependent.
22.6.2 Command and Response

Table 122 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td>TPMM_CC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP} Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>authPolicy</td>
<td>the desired authPolicy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>the hash algorithm of the policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR</td>
<td>pcrNum</td>
<td>the PCR for which the policy is to be set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 123 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.6.3 Detailed Actions

22.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_SetAuthPolicy.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_SetAuthPolicy_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)

// Set authPolicy to a group of PCR

*// Return Type: TPM_RC
*// TPM_RC_SIZE                 size of 'authPolicy' is not the size of a digest
*// PCR referenced by 'pcrNum' is not a member
*// of a PCR policy group
TPM_RC

TPM2_PCR_SetAuthPolicy(PCR_SetAuthPolicy_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
  UINT32 groupIndex;

  // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
  // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
  // this point
  RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

  // Input Validation:

  // Check the authPolicy consistent with hash algorithm
  if(in->authPolicy.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(in->hashAlg))
    return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy_authPolicy;

  // If PCR does not belong to a policy group, return TPM_RC_VALUE
  if(!PCRBelongsPolicyGroup(in->pcrNum, &groupIndex))
    return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy_pcrNum;

  // Internal Data Update

  // Set PCR policy
  gp.pcrPolicies.hashAlg[groupIndex] = in->hashAlg;
  gp.pcrPolicies.policy[groupIndex]  = in->authPolicy;

  // Save new policy to NV
  NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(pcrPolicies);

  return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PCR_SetAuthPolicy
```
22.7  TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue

22.7.1  General Description

This command changes the authValue of a PCR or group of PCR.

An authValue may only be associated with a PCR that has been defined by a platform-specific specification as allowing an authorization value. If the TPM implementation does not allow an authorization for pcrNum, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE. A platform-specific specification may group PCR so that they share a common authorization value. In such case, a pcrNum that selects any of the PCR in the group will change the authValue value for all PCR in the group.

The authorization setting is set to EmptyAuth on each STARTUP(CLEAR) or by TPM2_Clear(). The authorization setting is preserved by SHUTDOWN(STATE).
22.7.2 Command and Response

Table 124 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_SetAuthValue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR</td>
<td>@pcrHandle</td>
<td>handle for a PCR that may have an authorization value set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>the desired authorization value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 125 — TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.7.3 Detailed Actions

22.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_SetAuthValue.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_SetAuthValue_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_SetAuthValue // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)

// Set authValue to a group of PCR

*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_VALUE PCR referenced by 'pcrHandle' is not a member
// of a PCR authorization group
TPM_RC
TPM2_PCR_SetAuthValue(PCR_SetAuthValue_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    UINT32 groupIndex;
    // Input Validation:
    if(!PCRBelongsAuthGroup(in->pcrHandle, &groupIndex))
        return TPM_RC_VALUE;
    // The command may cause the orderlyState to be cleared due to the update of
    // state clear data. If this is the case, Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Set PCR authValue
    MemoryRemoveTrailingZeros(&in->auth);
    gc.pcrAuthValues.auth[groupIndex] = in->auth;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PCR_SetAuthValue
```
22.8  TPM2_PCR_Reset

22.8.1  General Description

If the attribute of a PCR allows the PCR to be reset and proper authorization is provided, then this command may be used to set the PCR in all banks to zero. The attributes of the PCR may restrict the locality that can perform the reset operation.

NOTE 1     The definition of TPMI_DH_PCR in TPM 2.0 Part 2 indicates that if pcrHandle is out of the allowed range for PCR, then the appropriate return value is TPM_RC_VALUE.

If pcrHandle references a PCR that cannot be reset, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_LOCALITY.

NOTE 2     TPM_RC_LOCALITY is returned because the reset attributes are defined on a per-locality basis.
22.8.2 Command and Response

### Table 126 — TPM2_PCR_Reset Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PCR_Reset {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PCR</td>
<td>@pcrHandle</td>
<td>the PCR to reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 127 — TPM2_PCR_Reset Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.8.3 Detailed Actions

22.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/PCR/PCR_Reset.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PCR_Reset_fp.h"

#if CC_PCR_Reset  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Reset PCR
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_LOCALITY current command locality is not allowed to
// reset the PCR referenced by 'pcrHandle'
TPM_RC

TPM2_PCR_Reset(PCR_Reset_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Input Validation
    // Check if the reset operation is allowed by the current command locality
    if(!PCRIsResetAllowed(in->pcrHandle))
        return TPM_RC_LOCALITY;
    // If PCR is state saved and we need to update orderlyState, check NV
    // availability
    if(PCRIsStateSaved(in->pcrHandle))
        RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Reset selected PCR in all banks to 0
    PCRSetValue(in->pcrHandle, 0);
    // Indicate that the PCR changed so that pcrCounter will be incremented if
    // necessary.
    PCRChanged(in->pcrHandle);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PCR_Reset
```
22.9 _TPM_Hash_Start

22.9.1 Description

This indication from the TPM interface indicates the start of an H-CRTM measurement sequence. On receipt of this indication, the TPM will initialize an H-CRTM Event Sequence context.

If no object memory is available for creation of the sequence context, the TPM will flush the context of an object so that creation of the sequence context will always succeed.

A platform-specific specification may allow this indication before TPM2_Startup().

NOTE If this indication occurs after TPM2_Startup(), it is the responsibility of software to ensure that an object context slot is available or to deal with the consequences of having the TPM select an arbitrary object to be flushed. If this indication occurs before TPM2_Startup() then all context slots are available.
22.9.2 Detailed Actions

22.9.2.1 /tpm/src/events/_TPM_Hash_Start.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

// This function is called to process a _TPM_Hash_Start indication.
LIB_EXPORT void _TPM_Hash_Start(void)
{
    TPM_RC result;
    TPMI_DH_OBJECT handle;

    // If a DRTM sequence object exists, free it up
    if(g_DRTMHandle != TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED)
    {
        FlushObject(g_DRTMHandle);
        g_DRTMHandle = TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED;
    }

    // Create an event sequence object and store the handle in global
    // g_DRTMHandle. A TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY error may be returned at this point
    // The NULL value for the first parameter will cause the sequence structure to
    // be allocated without being set as present. This keeps the sequence from
    // being left behind if the sequence is terminated early.
    result = ObjectCreateEventSequence(NULL, &g_DRTMHandle);

    // If a free slot was not available, then free up a slot.
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    {
        // An implementation does not need to have a fixed relationship between
        // slot numbers and handle numbers. To handle the general case, scan for
        // a handle that is assigned and free it for the DRTM sequence.
        // In the reference implementation, the relationship between handles and
        // slots is fixed. So, if the call to ObjectCreateEvenSequence() failed indicating that all slots are occupied, then the first handle we
        // are going to check (TRANSIENT_FIRST) will be occupied. It will be freed
        // so that it can be assigned for use as the DRTM sequence object.
        for(handle = TRANSIENT_FIRST; handle < TRANSIENT_LAST; handle++)
        {
            if(IsObjectPresent(handle))
                break;
        }

        // If the first call to find a slot fails but none of the slots is occupied
        // then there's a big problem
        pAssert(handle < TRANSIENT_LAST);

        // Free the slot
        FlushObject(handle);

        // Try to create an event sequence object again. This time, we must
        // succeed.
        result = ObjectCreateEventSequence(NULL, &g_DRTMHandle);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
    }

    return;
}
```
22.10 _TPM_Hash_Data

22.10.1 Description

This indication from the TPM interface indicates arrival of one or more octets of data that are to be included in the H-CRTM Event Sequence sequence context created by the _TPM_Hash_Start indication. The context holds data for each hash algorithm for each PCR bank implemented on the TPM.

If no H-CRTM Event Sequence context exists, this indication is discarded, and no other action is performed.
22.10.2 Detailed Actions

22.10.2.1 /tpm/src/events/_TPM_Hash_Data.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

LIB_EXPORT void _TPM_Hash_Data(uint32_t dataSize, /* IN: size of data to be extend */
                               unsigned char* data /* IN: data buffer */ ) {

    UINT32 i;
    HASH_OBJECT* hashObject;
    TPMI_DH_PCR pcrHandle = TPMIsStarted() ? PCR_FIRST + DRTM_PCR :
                                         PCR_FIRST + HCRTM_PCR;

    // If there is no DRTM sequence object, then _TPM_Hash_Start
    // was not called so this function returns without doing
    // anything.
    if (g_DRTMHandle == TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED) return;

    hashObject = (HASH_OBJECT*)HandleToObject(g_DRTMHandle);
    pAssert(hashObject->attributes.eventSeq);

    // For each of the implemented hash algorithms, update the digest with the
    // data provided
    for(i = 0; i < HASH_COUNT; i++) {
        // make sure that the PCR is implemented for this algorithm
        if(PcrIsAllocated(pcrHandle, hashObject->state.hashState[i].hashAlg))
            // Update sequence object
            CryptDigestUpdate(&hashObject->state.hashState[i], dataSize, data);
    }

    return;
}
```
22.11 _TPM_Hash_End

22.11.1 Description

This indication from the TPM interface indicates the end of the H-CRTM measurement. This indication is discarded, and no other action performed if the TPM does not contain an H-CRTM Event Sequence context.

NOTE 1 An H-CRTM Event Sequence context is created by _TPM_Hash_Start().

If the H-CRTM Event Sequence occurs after TPM2_Startup(), the TPM will set all of the PCR designated in the platform-specific specifications as resettable by this event to the value indicated in the platform specific specification and increment restartCount. The TPM will then Extend the Event Sequence digest/digests into the designated D-RTM PCR (PCR[17]).

\[
\text{PCR[17][hashAlg]} := H_{\text{hashAlg}}(\text{initial_value} | | H_{\text{hashAlg}}(\text{hash_data}))
\]

where
- \text{hashAlg} hash algorithm associated with a bank of PCR
- \text{initial_value} initialization value specified in the platform-specific specification (should be 0...0)
- \text{hash_data} all the octets of data received in _TPM_Hash_Data indications

A _TPM_Hash_End indication that occurs after TPM2_Startup() will increment pcrUpdateCounter unless a platform-specific specification excludes modifications of PCR[DRTM] from causing an increment.

A platform-specific specification may allow an H-CRTM Event Sequence before TPM2_Startup(). If so, _TPM_Hash_End will complete the digest, initialize PCR[0] with a digest-size value of 4, and then extend the H-CRTM Event Sequence data into PCR[0].

\[
\text{PCR[0][hashAlg]} := H_{\text{hashAlg}}(0...04 | | H_{\text{hashAlg}}(\text{hash_data}))
\]

NOTE 2 The entire sequence of _TPM_Hash_Start, _TPM_Hash_Data, and _TPM_Hash_End are required to complete before TPM2_Startup() or the sequence will have no effect on the TPM.

NOTE 3 PCR[0] does not need to be updated according to (8) until the end of TPM2_Startup().
#include "Tpm.h"

// This function is called to process a _TPM_Hash_End indication.
LIB_EXPORT void _TPM_Hash_End(void)
{
    UINT32 i;
    TPM2B_DIGEST digest;
    HASH_OBJECT* hashObject;
    TPMI_DH_PCR pcrHandle;

    // If the DRTM handle is not being used, then either _TPM_Hash_Start has not
    // been called, _TPM_Hash_End was previously called, or some other command
    // was executed and the sequence was aborted.
    if (g_DRTMHandle == TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED)
        return;

    // Get DRTM sequence object
    hashObject = (HASH_OBJECT*)HandleToObject(g_DRTMHandle);

    // Is this _TPM_Hash_End after Startup or before
    if (TPMIsStarted())
    {
        // After
        // Reset the DRTM PCR
        PCRResetDynamics();
        // Extend the DRTM_PCR.
        pcrHandle = PCR_FIRST + DRTM_PCR;
        // DRTM sequence increments restartCount
        gr.restartCount++;
    }
    else
    {
        pcrHandle = PCR_FIRST + HCRTM_PCR;
        g_DrtmPreStartup = TRUE;
    }

    // Complete hash and extend PCR, or if this is an HCRTM, complete
    // the hash, reset the H-CRTM register (PCR[0]) to 0...04, and then
    // extend the H-CRTM data
    for (i = 0; i < HASH_COUNT; i++)
    {
        TPM_ALG_HASH hash = CryptHashGetAlgByIndex(i);
        // make sure that the PCR is implemented for this algorithm
        if (PcrIsAllocated(pcrHandle, hashObject->state.hashState[i].hashAlg))
            {
                // Complete hash
                digest.t.size = CryptHashGetDigestSize(hash);
                CryptHashEnd2B(&hashObject->state.hashState[i], &digest.b);
                PcrDrtm(pcrHandle, hash, &digest);
            }
        // Flush sequence object.
        FlushObject(g_DRTMHandle);
    }
return;
}

}
23 Enhanced Authorization (EA) Commands

23.1 Introduction

The commands in clause 22.11.2.1 are used for policy evaluation. When successful, each command will update the policySession→policyDigest in a policy session context in order to establish that the authorizations required to use an object have been provided. Many of the commands will also modify other parts of a policy context so that the caller may constrain the scope of the authorization that is provided.

NOTE 1 Many of the terms used in clause 22.11.2.1 are described in detail in TPM 2.0 Part 1 and are not redefined in clause 22.11.2.1.

The policySession parameter of the command is the handle of the policy session context to be modified by the command.

If the policySession parameter indicates a trial policy session, then the policySession→policyDigest will be updated and the indicated validations are not performed. However, any authorizations required to perform the policy command will be checked and dictionary attack logic invoked as necessary.

NOTE 2 If software is used to create policies, no authorization values are used. For example, TPM_PolicySecret requires an authorization in a trial policy session, but not in a policy calculation outside the TPM.

NOTE 3 A policy session is set to a trial policy by TPM2_StartAuthSession(sessionType = TPM_SE_TRIAL).

NOTE 4 Unless there is an unmarshaling error in the parameters of the command, these commands will return TPM_RC_SUCCESS when policySession references a trial session.

NOTE 5 Policy context other than the policySession→policyDigest may be updated for a trial policy but it is not required.
23.2 Signed Authorization Actions

23.2.1 Introduction

The TPM2_PolicySigned, TPM_PolicySecret, and TPM2_PolicyTicket commands use many of the same functions. Clause 23.2 consolidates those functions to simplify the document and to ensure uniformity of the operations.

23.2.2 Policy Parameter Checks

These parameter checks will be performed when indicated in the description of each of the commands:

a) **nonceTPM** – If this parameter is not the Empty Buffer, and it does not match \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{nonceTPM}\), then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

   **NOTE 1** The \(\text{nonceTPM}\) returned from TPM2_StartAuthSession is a minimum of 16 bytes.

b) **expiration** – If this parameter is not zero, then:
   1) if **nonceTPM** is not an Empty Buffer, then the absolute value of **expiration** is converted to milliseconds and added to \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{startTime}\) to create the **timeout** value and proceed to c).
   2) If **nonceTPM** is an Empty Buffer, then the absolute value of **expiration** is converted to milliseconds and used as the **timeout** value and proceed to c).

   However, **timeout** can only be changed to a smaller value (see **timeout** in clause 23.2.4).

c) **timeout** – If **timeout** is less than the current value of **Time**, or the current **timeEpoch** is not the same as \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{timeEpoch}\), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_EXPIRED

d) **cpHashA** – If this parameter is not an Empty Buffer

**NOTE 2** **cpHashA** is the hash of the command to be executed using this policy session in the authorization. The algorithm used to compute this hash is required to be the algorithm of the policy session.

1) the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH if \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{cpHash}\) is set and the contents of \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{cpHash}\) are not the same as **cpHashA**; or

   **NOTE 3** **cpHash** is the expected **cpHash** value held in the policy session context.

2) the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE if **cpHashA** is not the same size as \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{policyDigest}\).

**NOTE 4** \(\text{policySession}\rightarrow\text{policyDigest}\) is the size of the digest produced by the hash algorithm used to compute **policyDigest**.
23.2.3 Policy Digest Update Function (PolicyUpdate())

This is the update process for policySession→policyDigest used by TPM2_PolicySigned(), TPM2_PolicySecret(), TPM2_PolicyTicket(), and TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(). The function prototype for the update function is:

\[
\text{PolicyUpdate}(\text{commandCode, arg2, arg3})
\]

(9)

where

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{arg2} & \quad \text{a TPM2B_NAME} \\
\text{arg3} & \quad \text{a TPM2B}
\end{align*}
\]

These parameters are used to update policySession→policyDigest by

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := \text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{commandCode} || \text{arg2.name})
\]

(10)

followed by

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new+1}} := \text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{new}} || \text{arg3.buffer})
\]

(11)

where

\[
\text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}()}\quad \text{the hash algorithm chosen when the policy session was started}
\]

NOTE 1 If arg3 is a TPM2B_NAME, then arg3.buffer will actually be an arg3.name.

NOTE 2 The arg2.size and arg3.size fields are not included in the hashes.

NOTE 3 PolicyUpdate() uses two hash operations because arg2 and arg3 are variable-sized and the concatenation of arg2 and arg3 in a single hash could produce the same digest even though arg2 and arg3 are different. For example, arg2 = 1 2 3 and arg3 = 4 5 6 would produce the same digest as arg2 = 1 2 and arg3 = 3 4 5 6. Processing of the arguments separately in different Extend operation ensures that the digest produced by PolicyUpdate() will be different if arg2 and arg3 are different.

23.2.4 Policy Context Updates

When a policy command modifies some part of the policy session context other than the policySession→policyDigest, the following rules apply.

- **cpHash** – this parameter may only be changed if it contains its initialization value (an Empty Buffer). If cpHash is not the Empty Buffer when a policy command attempts to update it, the TPM will return an error (TPM_RC_CPHASH) if the current and update values are not the same.

- **timeOut** – this parameter may only be changed to a smaller value. If a command attempts to update this value with a larger value (longer into the future), the TPM will discard the update value. This is not an error condition.

- **commandCode** – once set by a policy command, this value may not be changed except by TPM2_PolicyRestart(). If a policy command tries to change this to a different value, an error is returned (TPM_RC_POLICY_CC).

- **pcrUpdateCounter** – this parameter is updated by TPM2_PolicyPCR(). This value may only be set once during a policy. Each time TPM2_PolicyPCR() executes, it checks to see if policySession→pcrUpdateCounter has its default state, indicating that this is the first TPM2_PolicyPCR(). If it has its default value, then policySession→pcrUpdateCounter is set to the current value of pcrUpdateCounter. If policySession→pcrUpdateCounter does not have its default value and its value is not the same as pcrUpdateCounter, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED.

NOTE 1 If this parameter and pcrUpdateCounter are not the same, it indicates that PCR have changed since checked by the previous TPM2_PolicyPCR(). Since they have changed, the previous PCR validation is no longer valid.
• **commandLocality** – this parameter is the logical AND of all enabled localities. All localities are enabled for a policy when the policy session is created. TPM2_PolicyLocalities() selectively disables localities. Once use of a policy for a locality has been disabled, it cannot be enabled except by TPM2_PolicyRestart().

• **isPPRequired** – once SET, this parameter may only be CLEARed by TPM2_PolicyRestart().

• **isAuthValueNeeded** – once SET, this parameter may only be CLEARed by TPM2_PolicyPassword() or TPM2_PolicyRestart().

• **isPasswordNeeded** – once SET, this parameter may only be CLEARed by TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() or TPM2_PolicyRestart().

**NOTE 2** Both TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() and TPM2_PolicyPassword() change policySession→policyDigest in the same way. The different commands simply indicate to the TPM the format used for the authValue (HMAC or clear text). Both commands could be in the same policy. The final instance of these commands determines the format.

### 23.2.5 Policy Ticket Creation

For TPM2_PolicySigned() or TPM2_PolicySecret(), if the caller specified a negative value for expiration, then the TPM will return a ticket that includes a value indicating when the authorization expires. Otherwise, the TPM will return a NULL Ticket.

**NOTE 1** If the authHandle in TPM2_PolicySecret() references a PIN Pass Index, then the command may succeed but a NULL Ticket will be returned.

The required computation for the digest in the authorization ticket is:

\[
\text{HMAC}_{\text{contextAlg}}(\text{proof}, (\text{TPM}_{\text{ST AUTH}}_{\text{xxx}} || \text{cpHash} || \text{policyRef} || \text{authName} || \text{timeout} || [\text{timeEpoch}] || \text{resetCount}))
\]

where:

- **HMAC_{contextAlg}()** is an HMAC using the context integrity hash
- **proof** is a TPM secret value associated with the hierarchy of the object associated with authName
- **TPM_{ST AUTH}_{xxx}** is either TPM_{ST AUTH}_SIGNED or TPM_{ST AUTH}_SECRET; used to ensure that the ticket is properly used
- **cpHash** is optional hash of the authorized command
- **policyRef** is optional reference to a policy value
- **authName** is Name of the object that signed the authorization
- **timeout** is implementation-specific value indicating when the authorization expires
- **timeEpoch** is implementation-specific representation of the timeEpoch at the time the ticket was created

**NOTE 2** Not included if timeout is zero.

- **resetCount** is implementation-specific representation of the TPM's totalResetCount

**NOTE 3** Not included if timeout is zero or if nonceTPM was included in the authorization.
23.3 TPM2_PolicySigned

23.3.1 General Description

This command includes a signed authorization in a policy. The command ties the policy to a signing key by including the Name of the signing key in the policyDigest.

If policySession is a trial session, the TPM will not check the signature and will update policySession→policyDigest as described in clause 23.2.3 as if a properly signed authorization was received, but no ticket will be produced.

If policySession is not a trial session, the TPM will validate auth and only perform the update if it is a valid signature over the fields of the command.

The authorizing entity will sign a digest of the authorization qualifiers: nonceTPM, expiration, cpHashA, and policyRef. The digest is computed as:

\[ aHash = H_{authAlg}(nonceTPM || expiration || cpHashA || policyRef) \]  \hspace{1cm} (13)

where

\[ H_{authAlg}() \] the hash associated with the auth parameter of this command

NOTE 1 Each signature and key combination indicates the scheme, and each scheme has an associated hash.

nonceTPM the nonceTPM parameter from the TPM2_StartAuthSession() response. If the authorization is not limited to this session, the size of this value is zero.

expiration time limit on authorization set by authorizing object. This 32-bit value is set to zero if the expiration time is not being set.

cpHashA digest of the command parameters for the command being approved using the hash algorithm of the policy session. Set to an Empty Digest if the authorization is not limited to a specific command.

NOTE 3 This is not the cpHash of this TPM2_PolicySigned() command.

policyRef an opaque value determined by the authorizing entity. Set to the Empty Buffer if no value is present.

NOTE 4 The nonceTPM, cpHashA, and policyRef qualifiers used to compute aHash use the TPM2B buffer but do not prepend the size.

EXAMPLE The computation for an aHash if there are no restrictions is:

\[ aHash = H_{authAlg}(00 \ 00 \ 00 \ 00_{16}) \]

which is the hash of an expiration time of zero.

The aHash is signed by the key associated with a key whose handle is authObject. The signature and signing parameters are combined to create the auth parameter.

The TPM will perform the parameter checks listed in clause 23.2.2

If the parameter checks succeed, the TPM will construct a test digest (tHash) over the provided parameters using the same formulation as shown in equation (13) above.

If tHash does not match the digest of the signed aHash, then the authorization fails and the TPM shall return TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL and make no change to policySession→policyDigest.
When all validations have succeeded, \( policySession \rightarrow policyDigest \) is updated by PolicyUpdate() (see clause 23.2.3).

\[
\text{PolicyUpdate}(\text{TPM\_CC\_PolicySigned, authObject} \rightarrow \text{Name, policyRef}) \quad (14)
\]

\( authObject \rightarrow \text{Name} \) is a TPM2B_NAME. \( policySession \) is updated as described in clause 23.2.4. The TPM will optionally produce a ticket as described in clause 23.2.5.

Authorization to use \( authObject \) is not required.
23.3.2 Command and Response

Table 128 — TPM2_PolicySigned Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicySigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>authObject</td>
<td>handle for a key that will validate the signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>nonceTPM</td>
<td>the policy nonce for the session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This can be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>cpHashA</td>
<td>digest of the command parameters to which this authorization is limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This is not the cpHash for this command but the cpHash for the command to which this policy session will be applied. If it is not limited, the parameter will be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>policyRef</td>
<td>a reference to a policy relating to the authorization – may be the Empty Buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Size is limited to be no larger than the nonce size supported on the TPM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT32</td>
<td>expiration</td>
<td>time when authorization will expire, measured in seconds from the time that nonceTPM was generated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If expiration is non-negative, a NULL Ticket is returned (see clause 23.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>signed authorization (not optional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 129 — TPM2_PolicySigned Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>implementation-specific time value, used to indicate to the TPM when the ticket expires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If policyTicket is a NULL Ticket, then this shall be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_AUTH</td>
<td>policyTicket</td>
<td>produced if the command succeeds and expiration in the command was non-zero; this ticket will use the TPMT_ST_AUTH_SIGNED structure tag (see clause 23.2.5).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.3.3 Detailed Actions

23.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicySigned.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
#include "PolicySigned_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicySigned // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Include an asymmetrically signed authorization to the policy evaluation
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//  TPM_RC_CPHASH       cpHash was previously set to a different value
//  TPM_RC_EXPIRED     'expiration' indicates a time in the past or
//  TPM_RC_NONCE       'expiration' is non-zero but no nonceTPM is present
//  TPM_RC_NONCE       'nonceTPM' is not the nonce associated with the
//  TPM_RC_SCHEME      'policySession'
//  TPM_RC_SIGNATURE   the signing scheme of 'auth' is not supported by the
//  TPM_RC_SIZE        input cpHash has wrong size
TPM_RC

TPM2_PolicySigned(PolicySigned_In*  in, // IN: input parameter list
    PolicySigned_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC     result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    SESSION*    session;
    TPM2B_NAME entityName;
    TPM2B_DIGEST authHash;
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    UINT64     authTimeout = 0;

    // Input Validation
    // Set up local pointers
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession); // the session structure

    // Only do input validation if this is not a trial policy session
    if (session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
    {
        authTimeout = ComputeAuthTimeout(session, in->expiration, &in->nonceTPM);

        result = PolicyParameterChecks(session,
            authTimeout,
            &in->cpHashA,
            &in->nonceTPM,
            RC_PolicySigned_nonceTPM,
            RC_PolicySigned_cpHashA,
            RC_PolicySigned_expiration);

        if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    }

    // Re-compute the digest being signed
    /*(See part 3 specification)
    // The digest is computed as:
    // aHash := hash ( nonceTPM | expiration | cpHashA | policyRef)
    // where:
    // hash()      the hash associated with the signed authorization
    // nonceTPM    the nonceTPM value from the TPM2_StartAuthSession
    // response If the authorization is not limited to this
    // session, the size of this value is zero.
    // expiration  time limit on authorization set by authorizing object.
    // This 32-bit value is set to zero if the expiration
```
60 // time is not being set.
61 // cpHashA hash of the command parameters for the command being
62 // approved using the hash algorithm of the PSAP session.
63 // Set to NULLauth if the authorization is not limited
64 // to a specific command.
65 // policyRef hash of an opaque value determined by the authorizing
66 // object. Set to the NULLdigest if no hash is present.
67 */
68
69 // Start hash
70 authHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, CryptGetSignHashAlg(&in->auth));
71 // If there is no digest size, then we don't have a verification function
72 // for this algorithm (e.g. TPM_ALG_ECDAA) so indicate that it is a
73 // bad scheme.
74 if(authHash.t.size == 0)
75     return TPM_RCS_SCHEME + RC_PolicySigned_auth;
76
77 // nonceTPM
78 CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->nonceTPM.b);
79 // expiration
80 CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(UINT32), in->expiration);
81 // cpHashA
82 CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->cpHashA.b);
83 // policyRef
84 CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->policyRef.b);
85
86 // Complete digest
87 CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &authHash.b);
88
89 // Validate Signature. A TPM_RC_SCHEME, TPM_RC_HANDLE or TPM_RC_SIGNATURE
90 // error may be returned at this point
91 result = CryptValidateSignature(in->authObject, &authHash, &in->auth);
92 if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
93     return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_PolicySigned_auth);
94 }
95
96 // Internal Data Update
97 // Update policy with input policyRef and name of authorization key
98 // These values are updated even if the session is a trial session
99 PolicyContextUpdate(TPM_CC_PolicySigned,
100     EntityGetName(in->authObject, &entityName),
101     &in->policyRef,
102     &in->cpHashA,
103     authTimeout,
104     session);
105
106 // Command Output
107 // Create ticket and timeout buffer if in->expiration < 0 and this is not
108 // a trial session.
109 // NOTE: PolicyParameterChecks() makes sure that nonceTPM is present
110 // when expiration is non-zero.
111 if(in->expiration < 0 && session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
112 {
113     BOOL expiresOnReset = (in->nonceTPM.t.size == 0);
114     // Compute policy ticket
115     authTimeout &= ~EXPIRATION_BIT;
116
117     result = TicketComputeAuth(TPM_ST_AUTH_SIGNED,
118         EntityGetHierarchy(in->authObject),
119         authTimeout,
120         expiresOnReset,
121         &in->cpHashA,
122         &in->policyRef,
123         &entityName,
124         &out->policyTicket);
125     if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
return result;

// Generate timeout buffer. The format of output timeout buffer is TPM-specific.
// Note: In this implementation, the timeout buffer value is computed after
// the ticket is produced so, when the ticket is checked, the expiration
// flag needs to be extracted before the ticket is checked.
// In the Windows compatible version, the least-significant bit of the
// timeout value is used as a flag to indicate if the authorization expires
// on reset. The flag is the MSb.
out->timeout.t.size = sizeof(authTimeout);
if (expiresOnReset)
    authTimeout |= EXPIRATION_BIT;
    UINT64_TO_BYTE_ARRAY(authTimeout, out->timeout.t.buffer);
else
    // Generate a null ticket.
    // timeout buffer is null
    out->timeout.t.size = 0;
    // authorization ticket is null
    out->policyTicket.tag           = TPM_ST_AUTH_SIGNED;
    out->policyTicket.hierarchy     = TPM_RH_NULL;
    out->policyTicket.digest.t.size = 0;
}
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
#endif // CC_PolicySigned
23.4 TPM2_PolicySecret

23.4.1 General Description

This command includes a secret-based authorization to a policy. The caller proves knowledge of the secret value using an authorization session using the authValue associated with authHandle. A password session, an HMAC session, or a policy session containing TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() or TPM2_PolicyPassword() will satisfy this requirement.

If a policy session is used and use of the authValue of authHandle is not required, the TPM will return TPM_RC_MODE. That is, the session for authHandle must have either isAuthValueNeeded or isPasswordNeeded SET.

The secret is the authValue of the entity whose handle is authHandle, which may be any TPM entity with a handle and an associated authValue. This includes the reserved handles (for example, Platform, Storage, and Endorsement), NV Indexes, and loaded objects. authEntity is the entity referenced by authHandle. If authEntity references an Ordinary object, it must have userWithAuth SET.

NOTE 1 The userWithAuth requirement permits the implementation to use common authorization code.

If authEntity references a non-PIN Index, TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD is required to be SET in the Index. If authEntity references an NV PIN index, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is required to be SET and pinCount must be less than pinLimit.

NOTE 2 The authorization value for a hierarchy cannot be used in this command if the hierarchy is disabled.

If the authorization check fails, then the normal dictionary attack logic is invoked. If authEntity references a NV PIN Pass index, a successful authorization check increments pinCount. If authEntity references a NV PIN Fail index, a failing authorization check increments pinCount. The authorization is checked even for a trial policy session.

If the authorization provided by the authorization session is valid, the command parameters are checked as described in clause 23.2.2. When all validations have succeeded, policySession→policyDigest is updated by PolicyUpdate() (see clause 23.2.3).

PolicyUpdate(TPM_CC_PolicySecret, authEntity→Name, policyRef) (15)

authEntity→Name is a TPM2B_NAME. policySession is updated as described in clause 23.2.4. The TPM will optionally produce a ticket as described in clause 23.2.5.

If the session is a trial session, policySession→policyDigest is updated if the authorization is valid.

NOTE 2 If an HMAC is used to convey the authorization, a separate session is needed for the authorization. Because the HMAC in that authorization will include a nonce that prevents replay of the authorization, the value of the nonceTPM parameter in this command is limited. It is retained mostly to provide processing consistency with TPM2_PolicySigned().
### 23.4.2 Command and Response

**Table 130 — TPM2_PolicySecret Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicySecret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_ENTITY</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle for an entity providing the authorization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>nonceTPM</td>
<td>the policy nonce for the session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This can be the Empty Buffer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>cpHashA</td>
<td>digest of the command parameters to which this authorization is limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This not the cpHash for this command but the cpHash for the command to which this policy session will be applied. If it is not limited, the parameter will be the Empty Buffer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>policyRef</td>
<td>a reference to a policy relating to the authorization – may be the Empty Buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Size is limited to be no larger than the nonce size supported on the TPM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT32</td>
<td>expiration</td>
<td>time when authorization will expire, measured in seconds from the time that nonceTPM was generated If expiration is non-negative, a NULL Ticket is returned. (see clause 23.2.5).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 131 — TPM2_PolicySecret Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>implementation-specific time value used to indicate to the TPM when the ticket expires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_AUTH</td>
<td>policyTicket</td>
<td>produced if the command succeeds and expiration in the command was non-zero (see clause 23.2.5). This ticket will use the TPMT_ST_AUTH_SECRET structure tag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.4.3 Detailed Actions

23.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicySecret.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicySecret_fp.h"
#if CC_PolicySecret // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
#include "NV_spt_fp.h"
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Add a secret-based authorization to the policy evaluation
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CPHASH cpHash for policy was previously set to a
data type that is not the same as 'cpHashA'
// TPM_RC_EXPIRED 'expiration' indicates a time in the past
// TPM_RC_NONCE 'nonceTPM' does not match the nonce associated
// with 'policySession'
// TPM_RC_SIZE 'cpHashA' is not the size of a digest for the
// hash associated with 'policySession'
TPM_RC TPM2_PolicySecret(PolicySecret_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    PolicySecret_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result;
    SESSION* session;
    TPM2B_NAME entityName;
    UINT64 authTimeout = 0;
    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    // Only do input validation if this is not a trial policy session
    if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
    {
        authTimeout = ComputeAuthTimeout(session, in->expiration, &in->nonceTPM);
        result = PolicyParameterChecks(session,
            authTimeout,
            &in->cpHashA,
            &in->nonceTPM,
            RC_PolicySecret_nonceTPM,
            RC_PolicySecret_cpHashA,
            RC_PolicySecret_expiration);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    }
    // Internal Data Update
    // Update policy context with input policyRef and name of authorizing key
    // This value is computed even for trial sessions. Possibly update the cpHash
    PolicyContextUpdate(TPM_CC_PolicySecret,
        EntityGetName(in->authHandle, &entityName),
        &in->policyRef,
        &in->cpHashA,
        authTimeout,
        session);
    // Command Output
    // Create ticket and timeout buffer if in->expiration < 0 and this is not
    // a trial session.
```
// NOTE: PolicyParameterChecks() makes sure that nonceTPM is present
// when expiration is non-zero.
if (in->expiration < 0 && session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR
    && !NvIsPinPassIndex(in->authHandle))
{
    BOOL expiresOnReset = (in->nonceTPM.t.size == 0);
    // Compute policy ticket
    authTimeout &= ~EXPIRATION_BIT;
    result = TicketComputeAuth(TPM_ST_AUTH_SECRET,
            EntityGetHierarchy(in->authHandle),
            authTimeout,
            expiresOnReset,
            &in->cpHashA,
            &in->policyRef,
            &entityName,
            &out->policyTicket);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Generate timeout buffer. The format of output timeout buffer is
    // TPM-specific.
    // Note: In this implementation, the timeout buffer value is computed after
    // the ticket is produced so, when the ticket is checked, the expiration
    // flag needs to be extracted before the ticket is checked.
    out->timeout.t.size = sizeof(authTimeout);
    // In the Windows compatible version, the least-significant bit of the
    // timeout value is used as a flag to indicate if the authorization expires
    // on reset. The flag is the MSb.
    if(expiresOnReset)
        authTimeout |= EXPIRATION_BIT;
    UINT64_TO_BYTE_ARRAY(authTimeout, out->timeout.t.buffer);
}
else
{
    // timeout buffer is null
    out->timeout.t.size = 0;
    // authorization ticket is null
    out->policyTicket.tag = TPM_ST_AUTH_SECRET;
    out->policyTicket.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
    out->policyTicket.digest.t.size = 0;
}
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
#endif // CC_PolicySecret
23.5 TPM2_PolicyTicket

23.5.1 General Description

This command is similar to TPM2_PolicySigned() except that it takes a ticket instead of a signed authorization. The ticket represents a validated authorization that had an expiration time associated with it.

The parameters of this command are checked as described in clause 23.2.2.

If the checks succeed, the TPM uses the timeout, cpHashA, policyRef, and authName to construct a ticket to compare with the value in ticket. If these tickets match, then the TPM will create a TPM2B_NAME (objectName) using authName and update the context of policySession by PolicyUpdate() (see clause 23.2.3).

\[\text{PolicyUpdate}(\text{commandCode}, \text{authName}, \text{policyRef})\] (16)

If the structure tag of ticket is TPM_ST_AUTH_SECRET, then commandCode will be TPM_CC_PolicySecret. If the structure tag of ticket is TPM_ST_AUTH_SIGNED, then commandCode will be TPM_CC_PolicySigned.

policySession is updated as described in clause 23.2.4.
### 23.5.2 Command and Response

Table 132 — TPM2_PolicyTicket Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyTicket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>time when authorization will expire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The contents are TPM specific. This shall be the value returned when ticket was produced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>cpHashA</td>
<td>digest of the command parameters to which this authorization is limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If it is not limited, the parameter will be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>policyRef</td>
<td>reference to a qualifier for the policy – may be the Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>authName</td>
<td>name of the object that provided the authorization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_AUTH</td>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>an authorization ticket returned by the TPM in response to a TPM2_PolicySigned() or TPM2_PolicySecret()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 133 — TPM2_PolicyTicket Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.5.3 Detailed Actions

23.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyTicket.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyTicket_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyTicket // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"

/* (See part 3 specification) */
// Include ticket to the policy evaluation
*(See part 3 specification)

TPM_RC

TPM2_PolicyTicket(PolicyTicket_In* in // IN: input parameter list

{ }

TPM_RC result;
SESSION* session;
UINT64 authTimeout;
TPMT_TK_AUTH ticketToCompare;
TPM_CC commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicySecret;
BOOL expiresOnReset;

// Input Validation

// Get pointer to the session structure
session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

// NOTE: A trial policy session is not allowed to use this command.
// A ticket is used in place of a previously given authorization. Since
// a trial policy doesn't actually authenticate, the validated
// ticket is not necessary and, in place of using a ticket, one
// should use the intended authorization for which the ticket
// would be a substitute.
if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy)
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_PolicyTicket_policySession;

// Restore timeout data. The format of timeout buffer is TPM-specific.
// In this implementation, the most significant bit of the timeout value is
// used as the flag to indicate that the ticket expires on TPM Reset or
// TPM Restart. The flag has to be removed before the parameters and ticket
// are checked.
if(in->timeout.t.size != sizeof(UINT64))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_PolicyTicket_timeout;
authTimeout = BYTE_ARRAY_TO_UINT64(in->timeout.t.buffer);

// extract the flag
expiresOnReset = (authTimeout & EXPIRATION_BIT) != 0;
authTimeout &= ~EXPIRATION_BIT;

// Do the normal checks on the cpHashA and timeout values
result = PolicyParameterChecks(session,
    authTimeout,
    &in->cpHashA,
    NULL, // no nonce

,...
```
0,  // no bad nonce return
RC_PolicyTicket_cpHashA,
RC_PolicyTicket_timeout);

if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
  return result;

// Re-generate policy ticket by input parameters
result = TicketComputeAuth(in->ticket.tag,
in->ticket.hierarchy,
  authTimeout,
  expiresOnReset,
  &in->cpHashA,
  &in->policyRef,
  &in->authName,
  &ticketToCompare);

if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
  return result;

// Compare generated digest with input ticket digest
if(!MemoryEqual2B(&in->ticket.digest.b, &ticketToCompare.digest.b))
  return TPM_RCS_TICKET + RC_PolicyTicket_ticket;

// Internal Data Update

// Is this ticket to take the place of a TPM2_PolicySigned() or
// a TPM2_PolicySecret()?
if(in->ticket.tag == TPM_ST_AUTH_SIGNED)
  commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicySigned;
else if(in->ticket.tag == TPM_ST_AUTH_SECRET)
  commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicySecret;
else
  // There could only be two possible tag values. Any other value should
  // be caught by the ticket validation process.
  FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);

// Update policy context
PolicyContextUpdate(commandCode,
  &in->authName,
  &in->policyRef,
  &in->cpHashA,
  authTimeout,
  session);

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyTicket
23.6 TPM2_PolicyOR

23.6.1 General Description

This command allows options in authorizations without requiring that the TPM evaluate all of the options. If a policy may be satisfied by different sets of conditions, the TPM need only evaluate one set that satisfies the policy. This command will indicate that one of the required sets of conditions has been satisfied.

PolicySession→policyDigest is compared against the list of provided values. If the current policySession→policyDigest does not match any value in the list, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE. Otherwise, the TPM will reset policySession→policyDigest to a Zero Digest. Then policySession→policyDigest is extended by the concatenation of TPM_CC_PolicyOR and the concatenation of all of the digests.

If policySession is a trial session, the TPM will assume that policySession→policyDigest matches one of the list entries and compute the new value of policyDigest.

The algorithm for computing the new value for policyDigest of policySession is:

a) Concatenate all the digest values in pHashList:

\[ \text{digests} := \text{pHashList.digests[1].buffer} \ || \ ... \ || \ \text{pHashList.digests[n].buffer} \]  \hspace{1cm} (17)

NOTE 1 The TPM will not return an error if the size of an entry is not the same as the size of the digest of the policy. However, that entry cannot match policyDigest.

b) Reset policyDigest to a Zero Digest.

c) Extend the command code and the hashes computed in step a) above:

\[ \text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} \ || \ \text{TPM_CC_PolicyOR} \ || \ \text{digests}) \]  \hspace{1cm} (18)

NOTE 2 The computation in b) and c) above is equivalent to:

\[ \text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(0...0 \ || \ \text{TPM_CC_PolicyOR} \ || \ \text{digests}) \]

A TPM shall support a list with at least eight tagged digest values.

NOTE 3 If policies are to be portable between TPMs, then they should not use more than eight values.
23.6.2 Command and Response

### Table 134 — TPM2_PolicyOR Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_DIGEST</td>
<td>pHashList</td>
<td>the list of hashes to check for a match</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 135 — TPM2_PolicyOR Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.6.3 Detailed Actions

23.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyOR.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyOR_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyOR // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
#endif
// (See part 3 specification)
// PolicyOR command
/* Return Type: TPM_RC
   TPM_RC_VALUE no digest in 'pHashList' matched the current
   value of policyDigest for 'policySession'
   TPM_RC */
TPM2_PolicyOR(PolicyOR_In* in // IN: input parameter list
) {
  SESSION* session;
  UINT32 i;

  // Input Validation and Update
  // Get pointer to the session structure
  session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

  // Compare and Update Internal Session policy if match
  for (i = 0; i < in->pHashList.count; i++) {
    if (session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == SET
        && (MemoryEqual2B(&session->u2.policyDigest.b,
            &in->pHashList.digests[i].b))) {
      // Found a match
      HASH_STATE hashState;
      TPM_CC commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyOR;

      // Start hash
      session->u2.policyDigest.t.size =
        CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
      // Set policyDigest to 0 string and add it to hash
      MemorySet(session->u2.policyDigest.t.buffer, 0,
        session->u2.policyDigest.t.size);
      CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

      // add command code
      CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

      // Add each of the hashes in the list
      for (i = 0; i < in->pHashList.count; i++) {
        // Extend policyDigest
        CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->pHashList.digests[i].b);

        // Complete digest
        CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
      }
    }
  }

  return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
```

None of the values in the list matched the current policyDigest
return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyOR_pHashList;
#endif // CC_PolicyOR

// CC_PolicyOR
23.7 TPM2_PolicyPCR

23.7.1 General Description

This command is used to cause conditional gating of a policy based on PCR. This command together with TPM2_PolicyOR() allows one group of authorizations to occur when PCR are in one state and a different set of authorizations when the PCR are in a different state.

The TPM will modify the pcrs parameter so that bits that correspond to unimplemented PCR are CLEAR. If policySession is not a trial policy session, the TPM will use the modified value of pcrs to select PCR values to hash according to TPM 2.0 Part 1, Selecting Multiple PCR. The hash algorithm of the policy session is used to compute a digest (digestTPM) of the selected PCR. If pcrDigest does not have a length of zero, then it is compared to digestTPM; and if the values do not match, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE and make no change to policySession→policyDigest. If the values match, or if the length of pcrDigest is zero, then policySession→policyDigest is extended by:

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyPCR} || \text{pcrs} || \text{digestTPM})\]

(19)

where

- \( \text{pcrs} \) the pcrs parameter with bits corresponding to unimplemented PCR set to 0
- \( \text{digestTPM} \) the digest of the selected PCR using the hash algorithm of the policy session

NOTE 1 If the caller provides the expected PCR value, the intention is that the policy evaluation stop at that point if the PCR do not match. If the caller does not provide the expected PCR value, then the validity of the settings will not be determined until an attempt is made to use the policy for authorization. If the policy is constructed such that the PCR check comes before user authorization checks, this early termination would allow software to avoid unnecessary prompts for user input to satisfy a policy that would fail later due to incorrect PCR values.

After this command completes successfully, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED if the policy session is used for authorization and the PCR are not known to be correct.

The TPM uses a "generation" number (pcrUpdateCounter) that is incremented each time PCR are updated (unless the PCR being changed is specified not to cause a change to this counter). The value of this counter is stored in the policy session context (policySession→pcrUpdateCounter) when this command is executed. When the policy is used for authorization, the current value of the counter is compared to the value in the policy session context and the authorization will fail if the values are not the same.

When this command is executed, policySession→pcrUpdateCounter is checked to see if it has been previously set (in the reference implementation, it has a value of zero if not previously set). If it has been set, it will be compared with the current value of pcrUpdateCounter to determine if any PCR changes have occurred. If the values are different, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED.

NOTE 2 Since the pcrUpdateCounter is updated if any PCR is extended (except those specified not to do so), this means that the command will fail even if a PCR not specified in the policy is updated. This is an optimization for the purposes of conserving internal TPM memory. This would be a rare occurrence, and, if this should occur, the policy could be reset using the TPM2_PolicyRestart command and rerun.

If policySession→pcrUpdateCounter has not been set, then it is set to the current value of pcrUpdateCounter.

If this command is used for a trial policySession, policySession→policyDigest will be updated using the values from the command rather than the values from a digest of the TPM PCR. If the caller does not provide PCR settings (pcrDigest has a length of zero), the TPM may (and it is preferred to) use the current TPM PCR settings (digestTPM) in the calculation for the new policyDigest. The TPM may return
an error if the caller does not provide a PCR digest for a trial policy session, but this is not the preferred behavior.

The TPM will not check any PCR and will compute:

\[ \text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyPCR} || \text{pcrs} || \text{pcrDigest}) \]  

(20)

In this computation, pcrs is the input parameter without modification.

**NOTE 3**

The `pcrs` parameter is expected to match the configuration of the TPM for which the policy is being computed which may not be the same as the TPM on which the trial policy is being computed.

**NOTE 4**

Although no PCR are checked in a trial policy session, `pcrDigest` is expected to correspond to some useful PCR values. It is legal, but pointless, to have the TPM aid in calculating a `policyDigest` corresponding to PCR values that are not useful in practice.
23.7.2 Command and Response

Table 136 — TPM2_PolicyPCR Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyPCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>pcrDigest</td>
<td>expected digest value of the selected PCR using the hash algorithm of the session; may be zero length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>pcrs</td>
<td>the PCR to include in the check digest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 137 — TPM2_PolicyPCR Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.7.3 Detailed Actions

23.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyPCR.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#if CC_PolicyPCR // Conditional expansion of this file
#endif
#include "PolicyPCR_fp.h"
#include "Marshal.h"

/* (See part 3 specification) */

// Add a PCR gate for a policy session
*

TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyPCR(PolicyPCR_In* in) // IN: input parameter list
{
    SESSION* session;
    TPM2B_DIGEST pcrDigest;
    BYTE* pcrs[sizeof(TPML_PCR_SELECTION)];
    UINT32 pcrSize;
    BYTE* buffer;
    TPM_CC commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyPCR;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input Validation

    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // Compute current PCR digest
    PCRComputeCurrentDigest(session->authHashAlg, &in->pcrs, &pcrDigest);

    // Do validation for non trial session
    if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
    {
        // Make sure that this is not going to invalidate a previous PCR check
        if(session->pcrCounter != 0 && session->pcrCounter != gr.pcrCounter)
            return TPM_RC_PCR_CHANGED;

        // If the caller specified the PCR digest and it does not
        // match the current PCR settings, return an error..
        if(in->pcrDigest.t.size != 0)
        {
            if(!MemoryEqual2B(&in->pcrDigest.b, &pcrDigest.b))
                return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyPCR_pcrDigest;
        }
    }
    else
    {
        // For trial session, just use the input PCR digest if one provided
        // Note: It can't be too big because it is a TPM2B_DIGEST and the size
        // would have been checked during unmarshaling
        if(in->pcrDigest.t.size != 0)
            pcrDigest = in->pcrDigest;
    }

    // Internal Data Update
```
// Update policy hash
policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyPCR || PCRS || pcrDigest)

// Start hash
CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add old digest
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// add commandCode
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

// add PCRS
buffer = pcrs;
pcrSize = TPML_PCR_SELECTION_Marshal(&in->pcrs, &buffer, NULL);
CryptDigestUpdate(&hashState, pcrSize, pcrs);

// add PCR digest
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &pcrDigest.b);

// complete the hash and get the results
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// update pcrCounter in session context for non trial session
if (session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
{
    session->pcrCounter = gr.pcrCounter;
}

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_PolicyPCR

23.8 TPM2_PolicyLocality

23.8.1 General Description

This command indicates that the authorization will be limited to a specific locality.

\[\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\] is a parameter kept in the session context. When the policy session is started, this parameter is initialized to a value that allows the policy to apply to any locality.

If \(\text{locality}\) has a value greater than 31, then an extended locality is indicated. For an extended locality, the TPM will validate that \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\) has not previously been set or that the current value of \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\) is the same as \(\text{locality}\) (TPM_RC_RANGE).

When \(\text{locality}\) is not an extended locality, the TPM will validate that the \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\) is not set to an extended locality value (TPM_RC_RANGE). If not the TPM will disable any locality not \(\text{SET}\) in the \(\text{locality}\) parameter. If the result of disabling localities results in no locality being enabled, the TPM will return TPM_RC_RANGE.

If no error occurred in the validation of \(\text{locality}\), \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{policyDigest}\) is extended with

\[\text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyLocality} || \text{locality})\] (21)

Then \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\) is updated to indicate which localities are still allowed after execution of TPM2_PolicyLocality().

When the policy session is used to authorize a command, the authorization will fail if the locality used for the command is not one of the enabled localities in \(\text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandLocality}\).
## 23.8.2 Command and Response

### Table 138 — TPM2_PolicyLocality Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyLocality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMA_LOCALITY</td>
<td>locality</td>
<td>the allowed localities for the policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 139 — TPM2_PolicyLocality Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.8.3 Detailed Actions

23.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyLocality.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyLocality_fp.h"
#include "Marshal.h"

#if CC_PolicyLocality // Conditional expansion of this file

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_RANGE all the locality values selected by
// 'locality' have been disabled
// by previous TPM2_PolicyLocality() calls.
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyLocality(PolicyLocality_In* in // IN: input parameter list )
{
SESSION*   session;
BYTE       marshalBuffer[sizeof(TPMA_LOCALITY)];
BYTE       prevSetting[sizeof(TPMA_LOCALITY)];
UINT32     marshalSize;
BYTE*      buffer;
TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyLocality;
HASH_STATE hashState;

// Input Validation
// Get pointer to the session structure
session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
// Get new locality setting in canonical form
marshalBuffer[0] = 0; // Code analysis says that this is not initialized
buffer = marshalBuffer;
marshalSize = TPMA_LOCALITY_Marshal(&in->locality, &buffer, NULL);
// Its an error if the locality parameter is zero
if(marshalBuffer[0] == 0)
   return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_PolicyLocality_locality;
// Get existing locality setting in canonical form
prevSetting[0] = 0; // Code analysis says that this is not initialized
buffer = prevSetting;
TPMA_LOCALITY_Marshal(session->commandLocality, &buffer, NULL);
// If the locality has previously been set
if(prevSetting[0] != 0
   // then the current locality setting and the requested have to be the same
   // type (that is, either both normal or both extended
   && ((prevSetting[0] < 32) != (marshalBuffer[0] < 32)))
   return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_PolicyLocality_locality;
// See if the input is a regular or extended locality
if(marshalBuffer[0] < 32)
   {
      // if there was no previous setting, start with all normal localities
      // enabled
      if(prevSetting[0] == 0)
         prevSetting[0] = 0x1F;
      // AND the new setting with the previous setting and store it in prevSetting
      prevSetting[0] &= marshalBuffer[0];
   }
```

60    // The result setting can not be 0
61    if (prevSetting[0] == 0)
62        return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_PolicyLocality_locality;
63    }
64    else
65    {
66        // for extended locality
67        // if the locality has already been set, then it must match the
68        if (prevSetting[0] != 0 && prevSetting[0] != marshalBuffer[0])
69            return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_PolicyLocality_locality;
70
71        // Setting is OK
72        prevSetting[0] = marshalBuffer[0];
73    }
74
75    // Internal Data Update
76
77    // Update policy hash
78    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyLocality || locality)
79    // Start hash
80    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
81
82    // add old digest
83    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
84    // add commandCode
85    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
86
87    // add input locality
88    CryptDigestUpdate(&hashState, marshalSize, marshalBuffer);
89
90    // complete the digest
91    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
92
93    // update session locality by unmarshal function. The function must succeed
94    // because both input and existing locality setting have been validated.
95    buffer = prevSetting;
96    TPMA_LOCALITY_Unmarshal(&session->commandLocality, &buffer, (INT32*)marshalSize);
97
98    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
99
100 }
101
102 #endif // CC_PolicyLocality
23.9 TPM2_PolicyNV

23.9.1 General Description

This command is used to cause conditional gating of a policy based on the contents of an NV Index. It is an immediate assertion. The NV index is validated during the TPM2_PolicyNV() command, not when the session is used for authorization.

The authorization to read the NV Index must succeed even if policySession is a trial policy session.

If policySession is a trial policy session, the TPM will update policySession→policyDigest as shown in equations (22) and (23) below and return TPM_RC_SUCCESS. It will not perform any further validation. The remainder of this general description would apply only if policySession is not a trial policy session.

An authorization session providing authorization to read the NV Index shall be provided.

If TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is not SET in the NV Index, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED. If TPMA_NV_READLOCKED of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

For an NV Index with the TPM_NT_COUNTER or TPM_NT_BITS attribute SET, the TPM may ignore the offset parameter and use an offset of 0. Therefore, it is recommended that the caller set the offset parameter to 0 for interoperability.

If offset and the size field of data add to a value that is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index referenced by nvIndex, the TPM shall return an error (TPM_RC_NV_RANGE). The implementation may return an error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if it performs an additional check and determines that offset is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index.

operandA begins at offset into the NV index contents and has a size equal to the size of operandB. The TPM will perform the indicated arithmetic check using operandA and operandB. If the check fails, the TPM will return TPM_RC_POLICY and not change policySession→policyDigest. If the check succeeds, the TPM will hash the arguments:

$$\text{args} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{operandB.buffer} \mid\mid \text{offset} \mid\mid \text{operation})$$  \hspace{1cm} (22)

where

- $H_{\text{policyAlg}}()$ hash function using the algorithm of the policy session
- operandB the value used for the comparison
- offset offset from the start of the NV Index data to start the comparison
- operation the operation parameter indicating the comparison being performed

The value of args and the Name of the NV Index are extended to policySession→policyDigest by

$$\text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} \mid\mid \text{TPM_CC_PolicyNV} \mid\mid \text{args} \mid\mid \text{nvIndex→Name})$$  \hspace{1cm} (23)

where

- $H_{\text{policyAlg}}()$ hash function using the algorithm of the policy session
- args value computed in equation (22)
- nvIndex→Name the Name of the NV Index

The signed arithmetic operations are performed using twos-complement.

NOTE When comparing two negative values, TPMs prior to revision 1.66 might have implemented the signed arithmetic operations using signed-magnitude.
Magnitude comparisons assume that the octet at offset zero in the referenced NV location and in operandB contain the most significant octet of the data.
### 23.9.2 Command and Response

#### Table 140 — TPM2_PolicyNV Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyNV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index of the area to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_OPERAND</td>
<td>operandB</td>
<td>the second operand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>the octet offset in the NV Index for the start of operand A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_EO</td>
<td>operation</td>
<td>the comparison to make</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 141 — TPM2_PolicyNV Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.9.3 Detailed Actions

23.9.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyNV.c

```
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyNV_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyNV // Conditional expansion of this file
# include "Policy_spt_fp.h"

/* (See part 3 specification)
// Do comparison to NV location
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE     NV index authorization type is not correct
// TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED    NV index read locked
// TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED    the NV index has not been initialized
// TPM_RC_POLICY      the comparison to the NV contents failed
// TPM__RC_SIZE      the size of 'nvIndex' data starting at 'offset'
// TPM_RC_VALUE      'offset' is too large
TPM_RC

TPM2_PolicyNV(PolicyNV_In* in /* IN: input parameter list */)
{
    TPM_RC       result;
    SESSION*     session;
    NV_REF       locator;
    NV_INDEX*    nvIndex;
    BYTE         nvBuffer[sizeof(in->operandB.t.buffer)];
    TPM2B_NAME   nvName;
    TPM_CC       commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyNV;
    HASH_STATE   hashState;
    TPM2B_DIGEST argHash;

    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // If this is a trial policy, skip all validations and the operation
    if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
    {
        // No need to access the actual NV index information for a trial policy.
        nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);

        // Common read access checks. NvReadAccessChecks() may return
        // TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION, TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED, or TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED
        result = NvReadAccessChecks(
            in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;

        // Make sure that offset is within range
        if((nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize - in->offset) < in->operandB.t.size)
            return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_PolicyNV_operandB;

        // Get NV data. The size of NV data equals the input operand B size
    }
```
NvGetIndexData(nvIndex, locator, in->offset, in->operandB.t.size, nvBuffer);

// Check to see if the condition is valid
if(!PolicySptCheckCondition(
in->operation, nvBuffer, in->operandB.t.buffer, in->operandB.t.size))
    return TPM_RC_POLICY;
}

// Internal Data Update

// Start argument hash
argHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add operandB
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->operandB.b);

// add offset
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(UINT16), in->offset);

// add operation
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_EO), in->operation);

// complete argument digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);

// Update policyDigest
// Start digest
CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add old digest
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// add commandCode
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

// add argument digest
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);

// Adding nvName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &EntityGetName(in->nvIndex, &nvName)->b);

// complete the digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_PolicyNV
23.10 TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer

23.10.1 General Description

This command is used to cause conditional gating of a policy based on the contents of the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure.

If policySession is a trial policy session, the TPM will update policySession→policyDigest as shown in equations (24) and (25) below and return TPM_RC_SUCCESS. It will not perform any validation. The remainder of this general description would apply only if policySession is not a trial policy session.

The TPM will perform the indicated arithmetic check on the indicated portion of the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure. If the check fails, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_POLICY and not change policySession→policyDigest. If the check succeeds, the TPM will hash the arguments:

\[
\text{args} := \text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{operandB.buffer} \mid\mid \text{offset} \mid\mid \text{operation})
\]  

where

\begin{align*}
\text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}() & \text{ hash function using the algorithm of the policy session} \\
\text{operandB.buffer} & \text{ the value used for the comparison} \\
\text{offset} & \text{ offset from the start of the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure at which the comparison starts} \\
\text{operation} & \text{ the operation parameter indicating the comparison being performed}
\end{align*}

\text{NOTE} \quad \text{There is no security related reason for the double hash.}

The value of args is extended to policySession→policyDigest by

\[
\text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := \text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} \mid\mid \text{TPM_CC_PolicyCounterTimer} \mid\mid \text{args})
\]  

where

\begin{align*}
\text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}() & \text{ hash function using the algorithm of the policy session} \\
\text{args} & \text{ value computed in equation (24)}
\end{align*}

The signed arithmetic operations are performed using two's-complement. The indicated portion of the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure begins at offset and has a length of operandB.size. If the number of octets to be compared overflows the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure, the TPM returns TPM_RC_RANGE. If offset is greater than the size of the marshaled TPMS_TIME_INFO structure, the TPM returns TPM_RC_VALUE. The structure is marshaled into its canonical form with no padding. The TPM does not check for alignment of the offset with a TPMS_TIME_INFO structure member.

\text{NOTE 1} \quad \text{When comparing two negative values, TPMs prior to revision 1.66 might have implemented the signed arithmetic operations using signed-magnitude.}

Magnitude comparisons assume that the octet at offset zero in the referenced location and in operandB contain the most significant octet of the data.

If operation is TPM_EO_UNSIGNED_LT and the comparison is specifically against Time in the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure (offset = 0), then the comparison value will indicate a time in seconds since the nonceTPM for the policy session was generated after which the policy session expires and cannot be used for authorization.

\text{NOTE 2} \quad \text{This special case for TPM_EO_UNSIGNED_LT was added in revision 1.65.}
When used to set an expiration time, the value in operandB is used like the expiration parameter of TPM2_PolicySigned() or TPM2_PolicySecret(). The differences are that the operandB parameter is a 64-bit, unsigned value instead of a 32-bit signed value.

EXAMPLE This enables time limited key usage. A policy can be designed to permit a key to be authorized for e.g., one hour.

NOTE 4 A TPM implementation is allowed to reject (TPM_RC_VALUE) an expiration value with a decimal value larger than 2,147,483,647 (corresponds to 68 years).

For the comparison, operandB is converted to a 64-bit integer (limit) and policySession→startTime is added. If the resulting value of limit is less than TPM Time, then the TPM returns an error (TPM_RC_EXPIRED). Otherwise, the policy session context is updated:

\[
policySession→policyExpiration := \min(p\policySession→policyExpiration, limit)
\]  

EXAMPLE If OperandB has a buffer size of 8 bytes with a value of 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 00\text{16}, 05\text{16}, then the authorization is valid for 5 seconds from the time the policy session’s nonceTpm was generated.
23.10.2 Command and Response

Table 142 — TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyCounterTimer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_OPERAND</td>
<td>operandB</td>
<td>the second operand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>the octet offset in the TPMS_TIME_INFO structure for the start of operand A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_EO</td>
<td>operation</td>
<td>the comparison to make</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 143 — TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.10.3 Detailed Actions

23.10.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyCounterTimer.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyCounterTimer_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyCounterTimer  // Conditional expansion of this file

#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Add a conditional gating of a policy based on the contents of the
 // TPMS_TIME_INFO structure.
 *
 // Return Type: TPM_RC
 // TPM_RC_POLICY       the comparison of the selected portion of the
 // TPMS_TIME_INFO with 'operandB' failed
 // TPM_RC_RANGE        'offset' + 'size' exceed size of TPMS_TIME_INFO
 // structure

TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyCounterTimer(PolicyCounterTimer_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
  SESSION*     session;
  TIME_INFO    infoData; // data buffer of TPMS_TIME_INFO
  BYTE*        pInfoData = (BYTE*)&infoData;
  UINT16       infoDataSize;
  TPM_CC       commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyCounterTimer;
  HASH_STATE   hashState;
  TPM2B_DIGEST argHash;

  // Input Validation
  // Get a marshaled time structure
  infoDataSize = TimeGetMarshaled(&infoData);
  // Make sure that the referenced stays within the bounds of the structure.
  // NOTE: the offset checks are made even for a trial policy because the policy
  // will not make any sense if the references are out of bounds of the timer
  // structure.
  if(in->offset > infoDataSize)
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyCounterTimer_offset;
  if((UINT32)in->offset + (UINT32)in->operandB.t.size > infoDataSize)
    return TPM_RCS_RANGE;
  // Get pointer to the session structure
  session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
  // If this is a trial policy, skip the check to see if the condition is met.
  if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
  {
    // If the command is going to use any part of the counter or timer, need
    // to verify that time is advancing.
    // The time and clock vales are the first two 64-bit values in the clock
    if(in->offset < sizeof(UINT64) + sizeof(UINT64))
    {
      // Using Clock or Time so see if clock is running. Clock doesn't
      // run while NV is unavailable.
      // TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned here.
      RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
    }
    // offset to the starting position
    pInfoData = (BYTE*)infoData;
    // Check to see if the condition is valid
    if(!PolicySptCheckCondition(in->operation,
```
60       pInfoData + in->offset,
61       in->operandB.t.buffer,
62       in->operandB.t.size))
63       return TPM_RC_POLICY;
64   }
65   // Internal Data Update
66   // Start argument list hash
67   argHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
68   // add operandB
69   CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->operandB.b);
70   // add offset
71   CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(UINT16), in->offset);
72   // add operation
73   CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM EO), in->operation);
74   // complete argument hash
75   CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);
76   // update policyDigest
77   // start hash
78   CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
79   // add old digest
80   CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
81   // add commandCode
82   CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM CC), commandCode);
83   // add argument digest
84   CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);
85   // complete the digest
86   CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
87   return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
88 }
89 #endif // CC_PolicyCounterTimer
23.11 TPM2_PolicyCommandCode

23.11.1 General Description

This command indicates that the authorization will be limited to a specific command code.

If \( \text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandCode} \) has its default value, then it will be set to \( \text{code} \). If \( \text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandCode} \) does not have its default value, then the TPM will return TPM_RC_VALUE if the two values are not the same.

If \( \text{code} \) is not implemented, the TPM will return TPM_RC_POLICY_CC.

If the TPM does not return an error, it will update \( \text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{policyDigest} \) by

\[
\text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := \text{H}_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} \| \text{TPM_CC_PolicyCommandCode} \| \text{code})
\] (27)

NOTE 1 If a previous TPM2_PolicyCommandCode() had been executed, then it is probable that the policy expression is improperly formed but the TPM does not return an error if \( \text{code} \) is the same.

NOTE 2 A TPM2_PolicyOR() would be used to allow an authorization to be used for multiple commands.

When the policy session is used to authorize a command, the TPM will fail the command if the \( \text{commandCode} \) of that command does not match \( \text{policySession} \rightarrow \text{commandCode} \).

This command, or TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect(), is required to enable the policy to be used for ADMIN role authorization.

EXAMPLE Before TPM2_Certify() can be executed, TPM2_PolicyCommandCode() with code set to TPM_CC_Certify is required.
23.11.2 Command and Response

Table 144 — TPM2_PolicyCommandCode Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC::PolicyCommandCode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>code</td>
<td>the allowed commandCode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 145 — TPM2_PolicyCommandCode Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.11.3 Detailed Actions

23.11.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyCommandCode.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyCommandCode_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyCommandCode // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Add a Command Code restriction to the policyDigest
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_VALUE 'commandCode' of 'policySession' previously set to
// a different value

TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyCommandCode(PolicyCommandCode_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyCommandCode;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input validation

    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    if(session->commandCode != 0 && session->commandCode != in->code)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyCommandCode_code;
    if(CommandCodeToCommandIndex(in->code) == UNIMPLEMENTED_COMMAND_INDEX)
        return TPM_RCS_POLICY_CC + RC_PolicyCommandCode_code;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Update policy Digestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyCommandCode || code)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
    // add input commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), in->code);
    // complete the hash and get the results
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // update commandCode value in session context
    session->commandCode = in->code;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyCommandCode
```
23.12 TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence

23.12.1 General Description

This command indicates that physical presence will need to be asserted at the time the authorization is performed.

If this command is successful, policySession→isPPRequired will be SET to indicate that this check is required when the policy is used for authorization. Additionally, policySession→policyDigest is extended with

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence})
\]  (28)
### 23.12.2 Command and Response

#### Table 146 — TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 147 — TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.12.3 Detailed Actions

23.12.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyPhysicalPresence.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyPhysicalPresence_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// indicate that physical presence will need to be asserted at the time the
// authorization is performed
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyPhysicalPresence(PolicyPhysicalPresence_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Internal Data Update

    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

    // complete the digest
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // update session attribute
    session->attributes.isPPRequired = SET;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PolicyPhysicalPresence
```
23.13 TPM2_PolicyCpHash

23.13.1 General Description

This command is used to allow a policy to be bound to a specific command with specific parameters, executing against specific objects. To bind a policy to a specific command code only, TPM2_PolicyCommandCode() can be used. To bind a policy to a specific command and parameters, but not specific objects, TPM2_PolicyParameters() can be used. To bind a policy to specific objects, but not a specific command or parameters, TPM2_PolicyNameHash() can be used.

Only one of the following:

- A bound session (created with TPM2_StartAuthSession())
- TPM2_PolicyCpHash()
- TPM2_PolicyNameHash()
- TPM2_PolicyParameters()
- TPM2_PolicyTemplate()

can be used for a policy session. Because they are mutually exclusive, they can share policySession→cpHash.

If policySession→cpHash is already set and not the same as cpHashA, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH. If cpHashA does not have the size of the policySession→policyDigest, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

NOTE 1 If a previous TPM2_PolicyCpHash() had been executed, then it is probable that the policy expression is improperly formed but the TPM does not return an error if cpHash is the same.

If the cpHashA checks succeed, policySession→cpHash is set to cpHashA and policySession→policyDigest is updated with

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyCpHash} || \text{cpHashA})
\]  

(29)

NOTE 2 If TPM2_PolicyCpHash() is run with command parameter encryption, the TPM stores the decrypted cpHashA in policySession→cpHash. When this policy session is used later for authorization, the stored decrypted cpHashA is unlikely to match the command’s cpHash if the command uses command parameter encryption since the command’s cpHash will be calculated on the encrypted data.
## 23.13.2 Command and Response

### Table 148 — TPM2_PolicyCpHash Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyCpHash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>cpHashA</td>
<td>the cpHash added to the policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 149 — TPM2_PolicyCpHash Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.13.3 Detailed Actions

23.13.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyCpHash.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyCpHash_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyCpHash  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Add a cpHash restriction to the policyDigest
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CPHASH cpHash of 'policySession' has previously been set
to a different value
// TPM_RC_SIZE 'cpHashA' is not the size of a digest produced
// by the hash algorithm associated with 'policySession'
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyCpHash(PolicyCpHash_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyCpHash;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input Validation

    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // A valid cpHash must have the same size as session hash digest
    // NOTE: the size of the digest can't be zero because TPM_ALG_NULL
can't be used for the authHashAlg.
    if(in->cpHashA.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(session->authHashAlg))
        return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_PolicyCpHash_cpHashA;

    // error if the cpHash in session context is not empty and is not the same
    // as the input or is not a cpHash
    if((IsCpHashUnionOccupied(session->attributes))
        && (!session->attributes.isCpHashDefined
            || !MemoryEqual2B(&in->cpHashA.b, &session->u1.cpHash.b)))
        return TPM_RC_CPHASH;

    // Internal Data Update

    // Update policy hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // add command code
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

    // add cpHashA
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->cpHashA.b);

    // complete the digest and get the results
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
```

Part 3: Commands

Trusted Platform Module Library

60     // update cpHash in session context
61     session->ul.cpHash = in->cpHashA;
62     session->attributes.isCpHashDefined = SET;
63
64     return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
65 }
66
67 #endif // CC_PolicyCpHash
68
23.14 TPM2_PolicyNameHash

23.14.1 General Description

This command allows a policy to be bound to a specific set of TPM entities without being bound to the parameters of the command. This is most useful for commands such as TPM2_Duplicate() and for TPM2_PCR_Event() when the referenced PCR requires a policy.

The nameHash parameter contains the digest of the Names associated with the handles to be used in the authorized command.

EXAMPLE For the TPM2_Duplicate() command, two handles are provided. One is the handle of the object being duplicated and the other is the handle of the new parent. For that command, nameHash would contain:

\[
\text{nameHash} \equiv H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{objectHandle} \rightarrow \text{Name} || \text{newParentHandle} \rightarrow \text{Name})
\]

Only one of the following:

- A bound session (created with TPM2_StartAuthSession())
- TPM2_PolicyCpHash()
- TPM2_PolicyNameHash()
- TPM2_PolicyParameters()
- TPM2_PolicyTemplate()

can be used for a policy session. Because they are mutually exclusive, they can share use policySession→cpHash.

If policySession→cpHash is already set, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH. If the size of nameHash is not the size of policySession→policyDigest, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE. Otherwise, policySession→cpHash is set to nameHash.

If this command completes successfully, when the policy session is used for authorization, the policySession→policyDigest will be compared to the digest of the Names associated with the handles in the command.

The policySession→policyDigest will be updated with

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} \equiv H_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyNameHash} || \text{nameHash})
\]

NOTE 2 This command can only be used with TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() or TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV. The owner of the object being duplicated provides approval for their object to be migrated to a specific new parent.

Without this approval, the Name of the Object would need to be known at the time that Object's policy is created. However, since the Name of the Object includes its policy, the Name is not known. The Name can be known by the authorizing entity.
23.14.2 Command and Response

### Table 150 — TPM2_PolicyNameHash Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyNameHash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>nameHash</td>
<td>the digest to be added to the policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 151 — TPM2_PolicyNameHash Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.14.3 Detailed Actions

23.14.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyNameHash.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyNameHash_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyNameHash  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Add a nameHash restriction to the policyDigest
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//    TPM_RC_CPHASH    'nameHash' has been previously set to a different value
//    TPM_RC_SIZE      'nameHash' is not the size of the digest produced by the
//                      hash algorithm associated with 'policySession'
TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyNameHash(PolicyNameHash_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
 )
{
   SESSION*   session;
   TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyNameHash;
   HASH_STATE hashState;

   // Input Validation
   // Get pointer to the session structure
   session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

   // A valid nameHash must have the same size as session hash digest
   // Since the authHashAlg for a session cannot be TPM_ALG_NULL, the digest size
   // is always non-zero.
   if(in->nameHash.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(session->authHashAlg))
      return TPM_RC_CPHASH + RC_PolicyNameHash_nameHash;

   // error if the nameHash in session context is not empty
   if(IsCpHashUnionOccupied(session->attributes))
      return TPM_RC_CPHASH;

   // Internal Data Update
   // Update policy hash
   // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyNameHash || nameHash)
   // Start hash
   CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

   // add old digest
   CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

   // add commandCode
   CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

   // add nameHash
   CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->nameHash.b);

   // complete the digest
   CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

   // update nameHash in session context
   session->u1.nameHash                  = in->nameHash;
   session->attributes.isNameHashDefined = SET;

   return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
```

60 }
61
62 #endif  // CC_PolicyNameHash
63
23.15  TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect

23.15.1  General Description

This command allows qualification of duplication to allow duplication to a selected new parent.

If this command not used in conjunction with a TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() Command, then only the new parent is selected and includeObject should be CLEAR.

EXAMPLE  When an object is created when the list of allowed duplication targets is known, the policy would be created with includeObject CLEAR.

NOTE 1  Only the new parent may be selected because, without TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(), the Name of the Object to be duplicated would need to be known at the time that Object's policy is created. However, since the Name of the Object includes its policy, the Name is not known. The Name can be known by the authorizing entity (a PolicyAuthorize Command) in which case includeObject may be SET.

If used in conjunction with TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(), then the authorizer of the new policy has the option of selecting just the new parent or of selecting both the new parent and the duplication Object.

NOTE 2  If the authorizing entity for an TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() only specifies the new parent, then that authorization may be applied to the duplication of any number of other Objects. If the authorizing entity specifies both a new parent and the duplicated Object, then the authorization only applies to that pairing of Object and new parent.

If either policySession→cpHash or policySession→nameHash has been previously set, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH. Otherwise, policySession→nameHash will be set to:

\[ \text{nameHash} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{objectName.name} || \text{newParentName.name}) \]  

(31)

NOTE 3  It is allowed that policySession→nameHash and policySession→cpHash share the same memory space.

NOTE 4  The Name in these equations uses Name.name, indicating that the UINT16 size is not included in the hash.

The policySession→policyDigest will be updated according to the setting of includeObject. If equal to YES, policySession→policyDigest is updated by:

\[ \text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect} || \text{objectName.name} || \text{newParentName.name} || \text{includeObject}) \]  

(32)

If includeObject is NO, policySession→policyDigest is updated by:

\[ \text{policyDigest}_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} || \text{TPM_CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect} || \text{newParentName.name} || \text{includeObject}) \]  

(33)

NOTE 5  policySession→nameHash receives the digest of both Names so that the check performed in TPM2_Duplicate() may be the same regardless of which Names are included in policySession→policyDigest. This means that, when TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect() is executed, it is only valid for a specific pair of duplication object and new parent.

If the command succeeds, policySession→commandCode is set to TPM_CC_Duplicate.

NOTE 6  The normal use of this command is before a TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(). An authorized entity would approve a policyDigest that allowed duplication to a specific new parent. The authorizing entity may want to limit the authorization so that the approval allows only a specific object to be duplicated to the new parent. In that case, the authorizing entity would approve the policyDigest of equation (32).
23.15.2 Command and Response

Table 152 — TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>objectName</td>
<td>the Name of the object to be duplicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>newParentName</td>
<td>the Name of the new parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>includeObject</td>
<td>if YES, the objectName will be included in the value in policySession→policyDigest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 153 — TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.15.3 Detailed Actions

23.15.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyDuplicationSelect.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyDuplicationSelect_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// allows qualification of duplication so that it a specific new parent may be
// selected or a new parent selected for a specific object.
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//      TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE   'commandCode' of 'policySession' is not empty
//      TPM_RC_CPHASH         'nameHash' of 'policySession' is not empty
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyDuplicationSelect(
    PolicyDuplicationSelect_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    SESSION*   session;
    HASHTYPE hashState;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect;

    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    // nameHash in session context must be empty
    if(session->u1.nameHash.t.size != 0)
        return TPM_RC_CPHASH;
    // commandCode in session context must be empty
    if(session->commandCode != 0)
        return TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Update name hash
    session->u1.nameHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    // add objectName
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);
    // add new parent name
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->newParentName.b);
    // complete hash
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u1.nameHash.b);
    session->attributes.isNameHashDefined = SET;

    // update policy hash
    // Old policyDigest size should be the same as the new policyDigest size since
    // they are using the same hash algorithm
    session->u2.policyDigest.t.size =
        CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    // add old policy
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // add command code
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
```

// add objectName
if (in->includeObject == YES)
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);

// add new parent name
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->newParentName.b);

// add includeObject
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPMI_YES_NO), in->includeObject);

// complete digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// set commandCode in session context
    session->commandCode = TPM_CC_Duplicate;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_PolicyDuplicationSelect
23.16 TPM2_PolicyAuthorize

23.16.1 General Description

This command allows policies to change. If a policy were static, then it would be difficult to add users to a policy. This command lets a policy authority sign a new policy so that it may be used in an existing policy. The authorizing entity signs a structure that contains

\[
\text{aHash} := \text{H}_\text{aHashAlg}(\text{approvedPolicy || policyRef}) \tag{34}
\]

The \text{aHashAlg} is required to be the \text{nameAlg} of the key used to sign the \text{aHash}. The \text{aHash} value is then signed (symmetric or asymmetric) by \text{keySign}. That signature is then checked by the TPM in 20.1 TPM2_VerifySignature() which produces a ticket by

\[
\text{HMAC}(\text{proof}, (\text{TPM_ST_VERIFIED || aHash || keySign\rightarrow name})) \tag{35}
\]

**NOTE 1** The reason for the validation is because of the expectation that the policy will be used multiple times and it is more efficient to check a ticket than to load an object each time to check a signature.

The ticket is then used in TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() to validate the parameters.

The \text{keySign} parameter is required to be a valid object name using nameAlg other than TPM_ALG_NULL. If the first two octets of \text{keySign} are not a valid hash algorithm, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HASH. If the remainder of the Name is not the size of the indicated digest, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

The TPM validates that the \text{approvedPolicy} matches the current value of \text{policySession→policyDigest} and if not, shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

The TPM then validates that the parameters to TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() match the values used to generate the ticket. If so, the TPM will reset \text{policySession→policyDigest} to a Zero Digest. Then it will update \text{policySession→policyDigest with PolicyUpdate()} (see clause 23.2.3).

\[
\text{PolicyUpdate}(\text{TPM_CC_PolicyAuthorize, keySign, policyRef}) \tag{36}
\]

If the ticket is not valid, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_POLICY.

If \text{policySession} is a trial session, \text{policySession→policyDigest} is extended as if the ticket is valid without actual verification.

**NOTE 2** The unmarshaling process requires that a proper \text{TPMT_TK_VERIFIED} be provided for \text{checkTicket} but it may be a NULL Ticket. A NULL ticket is useful in a trial policy, where the caller uses the TPM to perform policy calculations but does not have a valid authorization ticket.
### 23.16.2 Command and Response

#### Table 154 — TPM2_PolicyAuthorize Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyAuthorize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>approvedPolicy</td>
<td>digest of the policy being approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NONCE</td>
<td>policyRef</td>
<td>a policy qualifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>keySign</td>
<td>Name of a key that can sign a policy addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_VERIFIED</td>
<td>checkTicket</td>
<td>ticket validating that approvedPolicy and policyRef were signed by keySign</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 155 — TPM2_PolicyAuthorize Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.16.3 Detailed Actions

23.16.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyAuthorize.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyAuthorize_fp.h"
#if CC_PolicyAuthorize  // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"

/* (See part 3 specification) */
// Change policy by a signature from authority

/* Return Type: TPM_RC */
/* TPM_RC_HASH */ hash algorithm in 'keyName' is not supported
/* TPM_RC_SIZE */ 'keyName' is not the correct size for its hash algorithm
/* TPM_RC_VALUE */ the current policyDigest of 'policySession' does not
/* match 'approvedPolicy'; or 'checkTicket' doesn't match 
/* the provided values */

TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(PolicyAuthorize_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{

  TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
  SESSION* session;
  TPM2B_DIGEST authHash;
  HASH_STATE hashState;
  TPMT_TK_VERIFIED ticket;
  TPM_ALG_ID hashAlg;
  UINT16 digestSize;

  // Input Validation

  // Get pointer to the session structure
  session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

  if(in->keySign.t.size < 2)
  {
    return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_PolicyAuthorize_keySign;
  }

  // Extract from the Name of the key, the algorithm used to compute its Name
  hashAlg = BYTE_ARRAY_TO_UINT16(in->keySign.t.name);

  // 'keySign' parameter needs to use a supported hash algorithm, otherwise
  // can't tell how large the digest should be
  if(!CryptHashIsValidAlg(hashAlg, FALSE))
  {
    return TPM_RC_HASH + RC_PolicyAuthorize_keySign;
  }

  // If this is a trial policy, skip all validations
  if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
  {
    return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_PolicyAuthorize_keySign;
  }

  // Check that "approvedPolicy" matches the current value of the
  // policyDigest in policy session
  if(!MemoryEqual2B(&session->u2.policyDigest.b, &in->approvedPolicy.b))
  {
    return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_PolicyAuthorize__approvedPolicy;
  }

  // Validate ticket TPMT_TK_VERIFIED
```

// Compute aHash.  The authorizing object sign a digest
// aHash := hash(approvedPolicy || policyRef).
// Start hash
authHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, hashAlg);

// add approvedPolicy
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->approvedPolicy.b);

// add policyRef
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->policyRef.b);

// complete hash
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &authHash.b);

// re-compute TPMT_TK_VERIFIED
result = TicketComputeVerified(
    in->checkTicket.hierarchy, &authHash, &in->keySign, &ticket);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

// Compare ticket digest.  If not match, return error
if(!MemoryEqual2B(&in->checkTicket.digest.b, &ticket.digest.b))
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyAuthorize_checkTicket;
}

// Internal Data Update

// Set policyDigest to zero digest
PolicyDigestClear(session);

// Update policyDigest
PolicyContextUpdate(
    TPM_CC_PolicyAuthorize, &in->keySign, &in->policyRef, NULL, 0, session);
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

} // CC_PolicyAuthorize

#endif // CC_PolicyAuthorize
23.17 TPM2_PolicyAuthValue

23.17.1 General Description

This command allows a policy to be bound to the authorization value of the authorized entity. When this command completes successfully, $policySession \rightarrow isAuthValueNeeded$ is SET to indicate that the authValue will be included in hmacKey when the authorization HMAC is computed for the command being authorized using this session. Additionally, $policySession \rightarrow isPasswordNeeded$ will be CLEAR.

NOTE 1 If a policy does not use this command, then the hmacKey for the authorized command would only use sessionKey. If sessionKey is not present, then the hmacKey is an Empty Buffer and no HMAC would be computed.

If successful, $policySession \rightarrow policyDigest$ will be updated with

$$policyDigest_{new} := H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} || TPM\_CC\_PolicyAuthValue)$$ (37)

NOTE 2 Using a policy that contains TPM2_PolicyPassword() inside a salted and/or bound policy session is equivalent to using it inside an unsalted, unbound policy session.

Design TPM2_PolicyAuthValue-based policies for use in salted and/or bound policy sessions such that TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() is called (using the salted and/or bound session as an audit session) before other policy commands, so that the TPM2_PolicyAuthValue() call can be verified not to have been substituted with TPM2_PolicyPassword(), before proceeding to satisfy the rest of the policy (e.g., before having a signer sign a session nonce for TPM2_PolicySigned()).
23.17.2 Command and Response

**Table 156 — TPM2_PolicyAuthValue Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 157 — TPM2_PolicyAuthValue Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.17.3 Detailed Actions

23.17.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyAuthValue.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyAuthValue_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyAuthValue  // Conditional expansion of this file
#  include "Policy_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
// allows a policy to be bound to the authorization value of the authorized
// object
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyAuthValue(PolicyAuthValue_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

    // complete the hash and get the results
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // update isAuthValueNeeded bit in the session context
    session->attributes.isAuthValueNeeded = SET;
    session->attributes.isPasswordNeeded  = CLEAR;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PolicyAuthValue
```
23.18 TPM2_PolicyPassword

23.18.1 General Description

This command allows a policy to be bound to the authorization value of the authorized object.

When this command completes successfully, policySession→isPasswordNeeded is SET to indicate that authValue of the authorized object will be checked when the session is used for authorization. The caller will provide the authValue in clear text in the hmac parameter of the authorization. The comparison of hmac to authValue is performed as if the authorization is a password.

NOTE 1 The parameter field in the policy session where the authorization value is provided is called hmac. If TPM2_PolicyPassword() is part of the sequence, then the field will contain a password and not an HMAC.

If successful, policySession→policyDigest will be updated with

\[ policyDigest_{new} := H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} || TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue) \]  \hspace{1cm} (38)

NOTE 2 This is the same extend value as used with TPM2_PolicyAuthValue so that the evaluation may be done using either an HMAC or a password with no change to the authPolicy of the object. The reason that two commands are present is to indicate to the TPM if the hmac field in the authorization will contain an HMAC or a password value.

When this command is successful, policySession→isAuthValueNeeded will be CLEAR.
### 23.18.2 Command and Response

#### Table 158 — TPM2_PolicyPassword Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyPassword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 159 — TPM2_PolicyPassword Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.18.3 Detailed Actions

23.18.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyPassword.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyPassword_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyPassword  // Conditional expansion of this file
    #include "Policy_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
   // allows a policy to be bound to the authorization value of the authorized
   // object
*/
TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyPassword(PolicyPassword_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue;
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    
    // Internal Data Update
    
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    
    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyAuthValue)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    
    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    
    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
    
    // complete the digest
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // Update isPasswordNeeded bit
    session->attributes.isPasswordNeeded = SET;
    session->attributes.isAuthValueNeeded = CLEAR;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_PolicyPassword
```
23.19 TPM2_PolicyGetDigest

23.19.1 General Description

This command returns the current policyDigest of the session. This command allows the TPM to be used to perform the actions required to pre-compute the authPolicy for an object.
23.19.2 Command and Response

### Table 160 — TPM2_PolicyGetDigest Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyGetDigest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auth Index: None

### Table 161 — TPM2_PolicyGetDigest Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>policyDigest</td>
<td>the current value of the policySession→policyDigest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.19.3 Detailed Actions

23.19.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyGetDigest.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyGetDigest_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyGetDigest  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// returns the current policyDigest of the session
*/
TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyGetDigest(PolicyGetDigest_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
       PolicyGetDigest_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
    )
{
    SESSION* session;
    // Command Output
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    out->policyDigest = session->u2.policyDigest;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyGetDigest
```

23.20 TPM2_PolicyNvWritten

23.20.1 General Description

This command allows a policy to be bound to the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN attributes. This is a deferred assertion. Values are stored in the policy session context and checked when the policy is used for authorization.

If `policySession→checkNVWritten` is CLEAR, it is SET and `policySession→nvWrittenState` is set to `writtenSet`. If `policySession→checkNVWritten` is SET, the TPM will return TPM_RC_VALUE if `policySession→nvWrittenState` and `writtenSet` are not the same.

If the TPM does not return an error, it will update `policySession→policyDigest` by

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(policyDigest_{\text{old}} \mid TPM_CC_PolicyNvWritten \mid writtenSet) \tag{39}
\]

When the policy session is used to authorize a command, the TPM will fail the command if `policySession→checkNVWritten` is SET and `nvIndex→attributes→TPMA_NV_WRITTEN` does not match `policySession→nvWrittenState`.

NOTE 1 A typical use case is a simple policy for the first write during manufacturing provisioning that would require TPMA_NV_WRITTEN CLEAR and a more complex policy for later use that would require TPMA_NV_WRITTEN SET.

NOTE 2 When an Index is written, it has a different authorization name than an Index that has not been written. It is possible to use this change in the NV Index to create a write-once Index.
### 23.20.2 Command and Response

#### Table 162 — TPM2_PolicyNvWritten Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyNvWritten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>writtenSet</td>
<td>YES if NV Index is required to have been written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NO if NV Index is required not to have been written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 163 — TPM2_PolicyNvWritten Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.20.3 Detailed Actions

23.20.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EAPolicyNvWritten.c

```
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyNvWritten_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyNvWritten // Conditional expansion of this file

// Make an NV Index policy dependent on the state of the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN
// attribute of the index.
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_VALUE a conflicting request for the attribute has
// already been processed
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyNvWritten(PolicyNvWritten_In* in) // IN: input parameter list
{
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyNvWritten;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input Validation
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

    // If already set is this a duplicate (the same setting)? If it
    // is a conflicting setting, it is an error
    if(session->attributes.checkNvWritten == SET)
    {
        if(((session->attributes.nvWrittenState == SET) != (in->writtenSet == YES)))
            return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyNvWritten_writtenSet;
    }

    // Internal Data Update
    // Set session attributes so that the NV Index needs to be checked
    session->attributes.checkNvWritten = SET;
    session->attributes.nvWrittenState = (in->writtenSet == YES);

    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyNvWritten
    //                          || writtenSet)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

    // add the byte of writtenState
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPMI_YES_NO), in->writtenSet);

    // complete the digest
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyNvWritten
```
23.21 TPM2_PolicyTemplate

23.21.1 General Description

This command allows a policy to be bound to a specific creation template. This is most useful for an object creation command such as TPM2_Create(), TPM2_CreatePrimary(), or TPM2_CreateLoaded().

The templateHash parameter should contain the digest of the template that will be required for the inPublic parameter of an Object creation command.

Only one of the following:
- A bound session (created with TPM2_StartAuthSession())
- TPM2_PolicyCpHash()
- TPM2_PolicyNameHash()
- TPM2_PolicyParameters()
- TPM2_PolicyTemplate()

can be used for a policy session. Because they are mutually exclusive, they can share policySession→cpHash.

If policySession→isTemplateSet is SET and policySession→cpHash is not equal to templateHash, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

NOTE 1 Revision 01.38 of this specification permitted the TPM to return TPM_RC_CPHASH.

Otherwise, if policySession→cpHash is already set, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH.

NOTE 2 Revision 01.38 of this specification permitted the TPM to return TPM_RC_VALUE.

If the size of templateHash is not the size of policySession→policyDigest, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE. Otherwise, policySession→cpHash is set to templateHash.

NOTE 3 The digest calculation includes the TPM2B buffer but not the TPM2B size.

If this command completes successfully, when the policy session is used for authorization, the policySession→cpHash will be compared to the digest of the inPublic parameter.

NOTE 4 This allows the space normally used to hold policySession→cpHash to be used for policySession→templateHash instead.

The policySession→policyDigest will be updated with

\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{policyDigest}_{\text{old}} \ || \ TPM_{\text{CC}}_{\text{PolicyTemplate}} \ || \ templateHash)
\] (40)
### 23.21.2 Command and Response

**Table 164 — TPM2_PolicyTemplate Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyTemplate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>templateHash</td>
<td>the digest to be added to the policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 165 — TPM2_PolicyTemplate Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.21.3 Detailed Actions

23.21.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyTemplate.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyTemplate_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyTemplate // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Add a cpHash restriction to the policyDigest
/*/  
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CPHASH cpHash of 'policySession' has previously been set
to a different value
// TPM_RC_SIZE 'templateHash' is not the size of a digest produced
// by the hash algorithm associated with
// 'policySession'
TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyTemplate(PolicyTemplate_In* in
{ // IN: input parameter list
    SESSION* session;
    TPM_CC commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyTemplate;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    // error if the templateHash in session context is not empty and is not the
    // same as the input or is not a template
    if((IsCpHashUnionOccupied(session->attributes))
        && (!session->attributes.isTemplateHashDefined
            || !MemoryEqual2B(&in->templateHash.b, &session->u1.templateHash.b)))
        return TPM_RC_CPHASH;
    // A valid templateHash must have the same size as session hash digest
    if(in->templateHash.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(session->authHashAlg))
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_PolicyTemplate_templateHash;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyCpHash
    // | cpHashA.buffer)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
    // add cpHashA
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->templateHash.b);
    // complete the digest and get the results
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // update templateHash in session context
    session->u1.templateHash = in->templateHash;
}
```

60     session->attributes.isTemplateHashDefined = SET;
61
62     return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
63 }
64
65 // CC_PolicyTemplateHash
66
23.22 TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV

23.22.1 General Description

This command provides a capability that is the equivalent of a revocable policy. With TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(), the authorization ticket never expires, so the authorization may not be withdrawn. With this command, the approved policy is kept in an NV Index location so that the policy may be changed as needed to render the old policy unusable.

NOTE 1 This command is useful for Objects but of limited value for other policies that are persistently stored in TPM NV, such as the OwnerPolicy.

An authorization session providing authorization to read the NV Index shall be provided.

The authorization to read the NV Index must succeed even if policySession is a trial policy session.

If policySession is a trial policy session, the TPM will update policySession→policyDigest as shown in equation (41) below and return TPM_RC_SUCCESS. It will not perform any further validation. The remainder of this general description would apply only if policySession is not a trial policy session.

NOTE 2 If read access is controlled by policy, the policy should include a branch that authorizes a TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV().

If TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is not SET in the Index referenced by nvIndex, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED. If TPMA_NV_READLOCKED of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

The dataSize of the NV Index referenced by nvIndex is required to be at least large enough to hold a properly formatted TPMT_HA (TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT).

NOTE 3 A TPMT_HA contains a TPM_ALG_ID followed a digest that is consistent in size with the hash algorithm indicated by the TPM_ALG_ID.

It is an error (TPM_RC_HASH) if the first two octets of the Index are not a TPM_ALG_ID for a hash algorithm implemented on the TPM or if the indicated hash algorithm does not match policySession→authHash.

NOTE 4 The TPM_ALG_ID is stored in the first two octets in big endian format.

The TPM will compare policySession→policyDigest to the contents of the NV Index, starting at the first octet after the TPM_ALG_ID (the third octet) and return TPM_RC_VALUE if they are not the same.

NOTE 5 If the Index does not contain enough bytes for the compare, then TPM_RC_INSUFFICIENT is generated as indicated above.

NOTE 6 The dataSize of the Index may be larger than is required for this command. This permits the Index to include metadata.

If the comparison is successful, the TPM will reset policySession→policyDigest to a Zero Digest. Then it will update policySession→policyDigest with

\[
policyDigest_{new} = H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} \ || \ TPM_{CC\_PolicyAuthorizeNV} \ || \ nvIndex→Name) \quad (41)
\]
### 23.22.2 Command and Response

#### Table 166 — TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyAuthorizeNV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index of the area to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 167 — TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.22.3 Detailed Actions

23.22.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyAuthorizeNV.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

#if CC_PolicyAuthorizeNV // Conditional expansion of this file
#include "PolicyAuthorizeNV_fp.h"
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
#include "Marshal.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
// Change policy by a signature from authority
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_HASH hash algorithm in 'keyName' is not supported or is not
// the same as the hash algorithm of the policy session
// TPM_RC_SIZE 'keyName' is not the correct size for its hash algorithm
// TPM_RC_VALUE the current policyDigest of 'policySession' does not
// match 'approvedPolicy'; or 'checkTicket' doesn't match
// the provided values

TPM_RC TPM2_PolicyAuthorizeNV(PolicyAuthorizeNV_In* in)
{
SESSION*   session;
TPM_RC     result;
NV_REF     locator;
NV_INDEX*  nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
TM2B_NAME name;
TPMT_HA    policyInNv;
BYTE       nvTemp[sizeof(TPMT_HA)];
BYTE*      buffer = nvTemp;
INT32      size;

// Input Validation
// Get pointer to the session structure
session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

// Skip checks if this is a trial policy
if(!session->attributes.isTrialPolicy)
{
    // Check the authorizations for reading
    // Common read access checks. NvReadAccessChecks() returns
    // TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION, TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED, or TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED
    // error may be returned at this point
    result = NvReadAccessChecks(
in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Read the contents of the index into a temp buffer
    size = MIN(nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize, sizeof(TPMT_HA));
    NvGetIndexData(nvIndex, locator, 0, (UINT16)size, nvTemp);

    // Unmarshal the contents of the buffer into the internal format of a
    // TPM_HA so that the hash and digest elements can be accessed from the
    // structure rather than the byte array that is in the Index (written by
    // user of the Index)
    result = TPMT_HA_Unmarshal(&policyInNv, &buffer, &size, FALSE);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
```
// Verify that the hash is the same
if (policyInNv.hashAlg != session->authHashAlg)
    return TPM_RC_HASH;

// See if the contents of the digest in the Index matches the value
// in the policy
if (!MemoryEqual(&policyInNv.digest,
                     &session->u2.policyDigest.t.buffer,
                     session->u2.policyDigest.t.size))
    return TPM_RC_VALUE;
}

// Internal Data Update

// Set policyDigest to zero digest
PolicyDigestClear(session);

// Update policyDigest
PolicyContextUpdate(TPM_CC_PolicyAuthorizeNV,
                     EntityGetName(in->nvIndex, &name),
                     NULL, NULL,
                     0, session);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#endif // CC_PolicyAuthorize
23.23 TPM2_PolicyCapability

23.23.1 General Description

This command is used to cause conditional gating of a policy based on the value of a TPM capability. It is an immediate assertion.

The TPM will use the parameters of this command to fetch the indicated property that is used by the TPM in the requested logical operation.

If the requested TPM property does not exist, the TPM will return TPM_RC_POLICY unless the operation is TPM_EO_NEQ.

If the requested property exists, it will have a property type as indicated in Table 168 — Capability Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capability</th>
<th>property</th>
<th>property type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ALGS</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_ID</td>
<td>TPMS_ALG_PROPERTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_HANDLES</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPMA_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_PP_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_AUDIT_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTIES</td>
<td>TPM_PT</td>
<td>TPMS_TAGGED_PROPERTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_PCR_PROPERTIES</td>
<td>TPM_PT_PCR</td>
<td>TPMS_TAGGED_PCR_SELECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ECC_CURVES</td>
<td>TPM_ECC_CURVE</td>
<td>TPM_ECC_CURVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_AUDIT_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_AUTH_POLICIES</td>
<td>TPM_RH</td>
<td>TPMS_TAGGED_POLICY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ACT</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>TPMS_ACT_DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_VENDORPROPERTY</td>
<td>manufacturer specific</td>
<td>manufacturer-specific values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The TPM will perform the indicated logical operation (operation) using the property structure as operandA. If the operands do not have the desired relationship, then the TPM returns TPM_RC_POLICY.

If property is other than a value listed above, then the TPM returns TPM_RC_VALUE.

EXAMPLE 1

If property is TPM_CAP_PCRS, then the TPM returns TPM_RC_VALUE.

EXAMPLE 2

The capability TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTIES with a property TPM_PT_REVISION uses the TPMS_TAGGED_PROPERTY as operandA. An offset of 4 references the UINT32 value. This permits a policy based on the TPM revision. If the TPM does not support TPM_PT_REVISION, the property does not exist.

EXAMPLE 3

The capability TPM_CAP_ACT with the property TPM_RH_ACT_0 uses the TPMS_ACT_DATA as operandA. An offset of 8 references the TPMA_ACT member. With a bit field operation, this permits a policy based on the signaled bit. If the TPM does not support TPM_RH_ACT_0, the property does not exist.

If the policy check succeeds, the TPM will hash the parameters of the command by:

\[
\text{args} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\text{operandB.buffer} \ || \ \text{offset} \ || \ \text{operation} \ || \ \text{capability} \ || \ \text{property}) \tag{42}
\]

using the hash algorithm of the policy session.

The value of args is extended to policySession→policyDigest by
\[
policyDigest_{\text{new}} := H_{\text{policyAlg}}(\policyDigest_{\text{old}} || \TPM\_CC\_PolicyCapability || \text{args})
\]  \hspace{1cm} (43)

where:

- \(H_{\text{policyAlg}}()\) hash function using the algorithm of the policy session
- \(\text{args}\) value computed in equation (42)

This command may be used with a trial policy.

\textbf{NOTE} \hspace{1cm} \text{TPM2\_PolicyCapability()} was added in revision 01.65.

---

### 23.23.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit, encrypt, or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyCapability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_OPERAND</td>
<td>operandB</td>
<td>the comparison data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>the offset in the capability data structure for the start of the comparison (operand A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_EO</td>
<td>operation</td>
<td>the comparison to make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP</td>
<td>capability</td>
<td>group selection; determines the maximum size of operand A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>property</td>
<td>further qualification of \textit{capability}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.23.3 Detailed Actions

23.23.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyCapability.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyCapability_fp.h"
#include "Policy_spt_fp.h"
#include "ACT_spt_fp.h"
#include "AlgorithmCap_fp.h"
#include "CommandAudit_fp.h"
#include "CommandCodeAttributes_fp.h"
#include "CryptEccMain_fp.h"
#include "Handle_fp.h"
#include "NvDynamic_fp.h"
#include "Object_fp.h"
#include "PCR_fp.h"
#include "PP_fp.h"
#include "PropertyCap_fp.h"
#include "Session_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyCapability  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// This command performs an immediate policy assertion against the current
// value of a TPM Capability.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// value of 'property' is in an unsupported handle range
// for the TPM_CAP_HANDLES 'capability' value
// invalid 'capability'; or 'property' is not 0 for the
// TPM_CAP_PCRS 'capability' value
// 'operandB' is larger than the size of the capability
// data minus 'offset'.

TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyCapability(PolicyCapability_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{

union
{
    TPMS_ALG_PROPERTY      alg;
    TPM_HANDLE             handle;
    TPM_CC                 command;
    TPMS_TAGGED_PCR_SELECT pcrSelect;
    TPMS_TAGGED_PROPERTY   tpmProperty;
    # if ALG_ECC
    TPM_ECC_CURVE curve;
    # endif  // ALG_ECC
    TPMS_TAGGED_POLICY policy;
    # if ACT_SUPPORT
    TPM2S_ACT_DATA act;
    # endif  // ACT_SUPPORT
} propertyUnion;

SESSION*     session;
BYTE         propertyData[sizeof(propertyUnion)];
UINT16       propertySize = 0;
BYTE*        buffer       = propertyData;
INT32        bufferSize   = sizeof(propertyData);
TPM_CC       commandCode  = TPM_CC_PolicyCapability;
HASH_STATE   hashState;
TPM2B_DIGEST argHash;
```

// Get pointer to the session structure
session = SessionGet(in->policySession);

if(session->attributes.isTrialPolicy == CLEAR)
{
    switch(in->capability)
    {
    case TPM_CAP_ALGS:
        if(AlgorithmCapGetOneImplemented((TPM_ALG_ID)in->property, &propertyUnion.alg))
        {
            propertySize = TPMS_ALG_PROPERTY_Marshal(&propertyUnion.alg, &buffer, &bufferSize);
        }
        break;
    case TPM_CAP_HANDLES:
        BOOL foundHandle = FALSE;
        switch(HandleGetType((TPM_HANDLE)in->property))
        {
        case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
            foundHandle = ObjectCapGetOneLoaded((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_PERSISTENT:
            foundHandle = NvCapGetOnePersistent((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_NV_INDEX:
            foundHandle = NvCapGetOneIndex((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_LOADED_SESSION:
            foundHandle = SessionCapGetOneLoaded((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_SAVED_SESSION:
            foundHandle = SessionCapGetOneSaved((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_PCR:
            foundHandle = PCRCapGetOneHandle((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_PERMANENT:
            foundHandle = PermanentCapGetOneHandle((TPM_HANDLE)in->property);
            break;
        default:
        // Unsupported input handle type
        return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_PolicyCapability_property;
        break;
    }
    if(foundHandle)
    {
        TPM_HANDLE handle = (TPM_HANDLE)in->property;
        propertySize = TPM_HANDLE_Marshal(&handle, &buffer, &bufferSize);
    }
    break;
    case TPM_CAP_COMMANDS:
    if(CommandCapGetOneCC((TPM_CC)in->property, &propertyUnion.commandAttributes))
    {
        propertySize = TPMA_CC_Marshal(&propertyUnion.commandAttributes, &buffer, &bufferSize);
    }
    break;
    case TPM_CAP_PP_COMMANDS:
    if(PhysicalPresenceCapGetOneCC((TPM_CC)in->property))
    {
        TPM_CC cc = (TPM_CC)in->property;
        propertySize = TPM_CC_Marshal(&cc, &buffer, &bufferSize);
Part 3: Commands

Trusted Platform Module Library

case TPM_CAP_AUDIT_COMMANDS:
  if(CommandAuditCapGetOneCC((TPM_CC)in(property))
  {
    TPM_CC cc = (TPM_CC)in(property);
    propertySize = TPM_CC_Marshal(&cc, &buffer, &bufferSize);
  }
  break;

  // NOTE: TPM_CAP_PCRS can't work for PolicyCapability since CAP_PCRS
  // requires property to be 0 and always returns all the PCR banks.
  case TPM_CAP_PCR_PROPERTIES:
  if(PCRYProperty((TPM_PT_PCR)in(property), &propertyUnion.pcrSelect))
  {
    propertySize = TPMS_TAGGED_PCR_SELECT_Marshal(
      &propertyUnion.pcrSelect, &buffer, &bufferSize);
  }
  break;

  // NOTE: TPM_CAP_PCRS can't work for PolicyCapability since CAP_PCRS
  // requires property to be 0 and always returns all the PCR banks.
  case TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTIES:
  if(TPMCapGetOneProperty((TPM_PT)in(property),
    &propertyUnion.tpmProperty))
  {
    propertySize = TPMS_TAGGED_PROPERTY_Marshal(
      &propertyUnion.tpmProperty, &buffer, &bufferSize);
  }
  break;

  # if ALG_ECC
  case TPM_CAP_ECC_CURVES:
  TPM_ECC_CURVE curve = (TPM_ECC_CURVE)in(property);
  if(CryptCapGetOneECCCurve(curve))
  {
    propertySize = TPM_ECC_CURVE_Marshal(&curve, &buffer, &bufferSize);
  }
  # endif

  # if ACT_SUPPORT
  case TPM_CAP_ACT:
  if(((TPM_RH)in(property) < TPM_RH_ACT_0)
    || ((TPM_RH)in(property) > TPM_RH_ACT_F))
  {
    TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyCapability_property;
    if(ActGetOneCapability((TPM_HANDLE)in(property, &propertyUnion.act))
      {
        propertySize = TPM_ACT_DATA_Marshal(
          &propertyUnion.act, &buffer, &bufferSize);
      }
  }
  # endif

  // vendor property is not implemented
  default:
  return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyCapability_capability;

  break;
if (propertySize == 0)
{
    // A property that doesn't exist trivially satisfies NEQ, and
    // trivially can't satisfy any other operation.
    if (in->operation != TPM_EO_NEQ)
    {
        return TPM_RC_POLICY;
    }
}

else
{
    // The property was found, so we need to perform the comparison.

    // Make sure that offset is within range
    if (in->offset > propertySize)
    {
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_PolicyCapability_offset;
    }

    // Property data size should not be smaller than input operandB size
    if ((propertySize - in->offset) < in->operandB.t.size)
    {
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_PolicyCapability_operandB;
    }

    if (!PolicySptCheckCondition(in->operation,
                                 propertyData + in->offset,
                                 in->operandB.t.buffer,
                                 in->operandB.t.size))
    {
        return TPM_RC_POLICY;
    }
}

// Internal Data Update

// Start argument hash
argHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add operandB
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->operandB.b);

// add offset
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(UINT16), in->offset);

// add operation
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_EO), in->operation);

// add capability
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CAP), in->capability);

// add property
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(UINT32), in->property);

// complete argument digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);

// Update policyDigest
// Start digest
CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add old digest
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// add commandCode
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
258     // add argument digest
259     CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &argHash.b);
260
261     // complete the digest
262     CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
263     return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
264 }
265
266 #endif // CC_PolicyCapability
267
268
23.24 TPM2_PolicyParameters

23.24.1 General Description

This command is used to allow a policy to be bound to a specific command and command parameters, but not specific objects. To bind a policy to a specific command code only, TPM2_PolicyCommandCode() can be used. To bind a policy to a specific command, parameters, and objects, TPM2_PolicyCpHash() can be used. To bind a policy to specific objects, but not a specific command or parameters, TPM2_PolicyNameHash() can be used.

Only one of the following:

- A bound session (created with TPM2_StartAuthSession())
- TPM2_PolicyCpHash()
- TPM2_PolicyNameHash()
- TPM2_PolicyParameters()
- TPM2_PolicyTemplate()

can be used for a policy session. Because they are mutually exclusive, they can share policySession→cpHash.

If policySession→cpHash is already set, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH. If the size of pHash is not the size of policySession→policyDigest, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE. Otherwise, policySession→cpHash is set to pHash.

If this command completes successfully, when the policy session is used for authorization, the policySession→cpHash will be compared to pHash, the digest of the parameter.

The pHash is the hash of the commandCode and all of the parameters of the command being authorized by the policy session. That is, pHash is calculated using a modified form of Part 1, clause “Command Parameter Hash” where the Names are skipped.

NOTE 1 commandTag, commandSize and the Names of the associated objects are not included in pHash.

NOTE 2 The TPM calculates pHash on the decrypted parameters, even if TPM2_PolicyParameters() is run with command parameter encryption. When this policy session is used later for authorization, it is unlikely be useful if the command uses command parameter encryption since the command’s pHash will be calculated on the encrypted data.

This is a deferred assertion and the pHash is checked when policySession is used to authorize a command.

\[ policyDigest_{new} := H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} | | TPM_CC_PolicyParameters | | pHash) \]  

(44)

NOTE TPM2_PolicyParameters() was added in revision 01.70.
### 23.24.2 Command and Response

**Table 171 — TPM2_PolicyParameters Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PolicyParameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
<td>policySession</td>
<td>handle for the policy session being extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>pHash</td>
<td>the parameter digest added to the policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 172 — TPM2_PolicyParameters Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.24.3 Detailed Actions

23.24.3.1 /tpm/src/command/EA/PolicyParameters.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PolicyParameters_fp.h"

#if CC_PolicyParameters  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Add a parameters restriction to the policyDigest
 */
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CPHASH  cpHash of 'policySession' has previously been set
to a different value
// TPM_RC_SIZE  'pHash' is not the size of the digest produced by the
// hash algorithm associated with 'policySession'
TPM_RC
TPM2_PolicyParameters(PolicyParameters_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    SESSION*   session;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_PolicyParameters;
    HASH_STATE hashState;

    // Input Validation
    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
    // A valid pHash must have the same size as session hash digest
    // Since the authHashAlg for a session cannot be TPM_ALG_NULL, the digest size
    // is always non-zero.
    if(in->pHash.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(session->authHashAlg))
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_PolicyParameters_pHash;
    // error if the pHash in session context is not empty
    if(IsCpHashUnionOccupied(session->attributes))
        return TPM_RC_CPHASH;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Update policy hash
    // policyDigestnew = hash(policyDigestold || TPM_CC_PolicyParameters || pHash)
    // Start hash
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);
    // add old digest
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // add commandCode
    CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);
    // add pHash
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->pHash.b);
    // complete the digest
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);
    // update pHash in session context
    session->u1.pHash               = in->pHash;
    session->attributes.isParametersHashDefined = SET;
```

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PolicyParameters


24 Hierarchy Commands

24.1 TPM2_CreatePrimary

24.1.1 General Description

This command is used to create a Primary Object under one of the Primary Seeds or a Temporary Object under TPM_RH_NULL. The command uses a TPM2B_PUBLIC as a template for the object to be created. The size of the unique field shall not be checked for consistency with the other object parameters. The command will create and load a Primary Object. The sensitive area is not returned.

NOTE 1 Since the sensitive data is not returned, the key cannot be reloaded. It can either be made persistent or it can be recreated.

NOTE 2 For interoperability, the unique field should not be set to a value that is larger than allowed by object parameters, so that the unmarshaling will not fail.

NOTE 3 An Empty Buffer is a legal unique field value.

EXAMPLE 1 A TPM_ALG_RSA object with a keyBits of 2048 in the object’s parameters should have a unique field that is no larger than 256 bytes.

NOTE 4 It is recommended that a TPM_ALG_KEYEDHASH or a TPM_ALG_SYMCIPHER object have a unique field this is no larger than the digest produced by the object’s nameAlg.

Any type of object and attributes combination that is allowed by TPM2_Create() may be created by this command. The constraints on templates and parameters are the same as TPM2_Create() except that a Primary Storage Key and a Temporary Storage Key are not constrained to use the algorithms of their parents.

For setting of the attributes of the created object, fixedParent, fixedTPM, decrypt, and restricted are implied to be SET in the parent (a Permanent Handle). If primaryHandle is a firmware-limited hierarchy, then firmwareLimited is implied to be SET in the parent. If primaryHandle is an SVN-limited hierarchy, then svnLimited is implied to be SET in the parent. The remaining attributes are implied to be CLEAR.

The TPM will derive the object from the Primary Seed indicated in primaryHandle using an approved KDF.

All of the bits of the template are used in the creation of the Primary Key. Methods for creating a Primary Object from a Primary Seed are described in TPM 2.0 Part 1 and implemented in TPM 2.0 Part 4.

If this command is called multiple times with the same inPublic parameter, inSensitive.data, and Primary Seed, the TPM shall produce the same Primary Object.

NOTE 4 If the Primary Seed is changed, the Primary Objects generated with the new seed will be statistically unique even if the parameters of the call are the same.

This command requires authorization. Authorization for a Primary Object attached to the Platform Primary Seed (PPS) shall be provided by platformAuth or platformPolicy. Authorization for a Primary Object attached to the Storage Primary Seed (SPS) shall be provided by ownerAuth or ownerPolicy. Authorization for a Primary Key attached to the Endorsement Primary Seed (EPS) shall be provided by endorsementAuth or endorsementPolicy.
### 24.1.2 Command and Response

**Table 173 — TPM2_CreatePrimary Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_CreatePrimary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY</td>
<td>@primaryHandle</td>
<td>TPMS_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TPMS_RH_OWNER, TPMS_RH_PLATFORM+(PP), or TPMS_RH_NULL, or the associated firmware-limited or SVN-limited hierarchies. Auth Index: 1. Auth Role: USER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SENSITIVE_CREATE</td>
<td>inSensitive</td>
<td>the sensitive data, (see TPM 2.0 Part 1, Sensitive Values).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>inPublic</td>
<td>the public template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>outsideInfo</td>
<td>data that will be included in the creation data for this object to provide permanent, verifiable linkage between this object and some object owner data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
<td>creationPCR</td>
<td>PCR that will be used in creation data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 174 — TPM2_CreatePrimary Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>handle of type TPM_HT_TRANSIENT for created Primary Object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_PUBLIC</td>
<td>outPublic</td>
<td>the public portion of the created object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_CREATION_DATA</td>
<td>creationData</td>
<td>contains a TPMS_CREATION_DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>creationHash</td>
<td>digest of creationData.creationData using nameAlg of outPublic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_TK_CREATION</td>
<td>creationTicket</td>
<td>ticket used by TPM2_CertifyCreation() to validate that the creation data was produced by the TPM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>the name of the created object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.1.3 Detailed Actions

24.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/CreatePrimary.c

```
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "CreatePrimary_fp.h"

#if CC_CreatePrimary    // Conditional expansion of this file
*/(See part 3 specification)
// Creates a primary or temporary object from a primary seed.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES sensitiveDataOrigin is CLEAR when sensitive.data is an
//   Empty Buffer; 'fixedTPM', 'fixedParent', or
//   'encryptedDuplication' attributes are inconsistent
//   between themselves or with those of the parent object;
//   inconsistent 'restricted', 'decrypt', 'sign',
//   'firmwareLimited', or 'svnLimited' attributes;
//   attempt to inject sensitive data for an asymmetric
//   key;
//   TPM_RC_FW_LIMITED The requested hierarchy is FW-limited, but the TPM
//   does not support FW-limited objects or the TPM failed
//   to derive the Firmware Secret.
//   TPM_RC_SVN_LIMITED The requested hierarchy is SVN-limited, but the TPM
//   does not support SVN-limited objects or the TPM failed
//   to derive the Firmware SVN Secret for the requested
//   SVN.
//   TPM_RC_KDF incorrect KDF specified for decrypting keyed hash
//   object
//   TPM_RC_KEY a provided symmetric key value is not allowed
//   TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY there is no free slot for the object
//   TPM_RC_SCHEME inconsistent attributes 'decrypt', 'sign',
//   'restricted' and key's scheme ID; or hash algorithm is
//   inconsistent with the scheme ID for keyed hash object
//   TPM_RC_SIZE size of public authorization policy or sensitive
//   authorization value does not match digest size of the
//   name algorithm; or sensitive data size for the keyed
//   hash object is larger than is allowed for the scheme
//   TPM_RC_SYMMETRIC a storage key with no symmetric algorithm specified;
//   or non-storage key with symmetric algorithm different
//   from TPM_ALG_NULL
//   TPM_RC_TYPE unknown object type

TPM2_CreatePrimary(CreatePrimary_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                    CreatePrimary_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
                    )
{
    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    TPM2B_NAME name;
    TPM2B_SEED primary_seed;

    // Input Validation
    // Will need a place to put the result
    newObject = FindEmptyObjectSlot(&out->objectHandle);
    if (newObject == NULL)
        return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;

    // Get the address of the public area in the new object
    // (this is just to save typing)
    publicArea = &newObject->publicArea;
```
*publicArea = in->inPublic.publicArea;

    // Check attributes in input public area. CreateChecks() checks the things that
    // are unique to creation and then validates the attributes and values that are
    // common to create and load.
result = CreateChecks(
        NULL, in->primaryHandle, publicArea, in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.t.size);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_CreatePrimary_inPublic);
    // Validate the sensitive area values
    if(!AdjustAuthSize(&in->inSensitive.sensitive.userAuth, publicArea->nameAlg))
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_CreatePrimary_inSensitive;
    // Command output
    // Compute the name using out->name as a scratch area (this is not the value
    // that ultimately will be returned, then instantiate the state that will be
    // used as a random number generator during the object creation.
    // The caller does not know the seed values so the actual name does not have
    // to be over the input, it can be over the unmarshaled structure.
result = HierarchyGetPrimarySeed(in->primaryHandle, &primary_seed);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
    result = 
        DRBG_InstantiateSeeded(&rand, 
            &primary_seed.b, 
            PRIMARY_OBJECT_CREATION, 
            (TPM2B*)PublicMarshalAndComputeName(publicArea, &name), 
            &in->inSensitive.sensitive.data.b);
    MemorySet(primary_seed.b.buffer, 0, primary_seed.b.size);
    if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        {
            newObject->attributes.primary = SET;
            if(HierarchyNormalizeHandle(in->primaryHandle) == TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT)
                newObject->attributes.epsHierarchy = SET;
            // Create the primary object.
            result = CryptCreateObject(
                newObject, &in->inSensitive.sensitive, (RAND_STATE*)&rand);
            if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
                return result;
            // Set the publicArea and name from the computed values
            out->outPublic.publicArea = newObject->publicArea;
            out->name                 = newObject->name;
            // Fill in creation data
            FillInCreationData(in->primaryHandle, 
                publicArea->nameAlg, 
                &in->creationPCR, 
                &in->outsideInfo, 
                &out->creationData, 
                &out->creationHash);
            // Compute creation ticket
            result = TicketComputeCreation(EntityGetHierarchy(in->primaryHandle), 
                &out->name, 
                &out->creationHash, 
                &out->creationTicket);
            if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
                return result;
        }
// Set the remaining attributes for a loaded object
Object_setLoadedAttributes(newObject, in->primaryHandle);
return result;
}
24.2 TPM2_HierarchyControl

24.2.1 General Description

This command enables and disables use of a hierarchy and its associated NV storage. The command allows phEnable, phEnableNV, shEnable, and ehEnable to be changed when the proper authorization is provided.

This command may be used to CLEAR phEnable and phEnableNV if platformAuth/platformPolicy is provided. phEnable may not be SET using this command.

This command may be used to CLEAR shEnable if either platformAuth/platformPolicy or ownerAuth/ownerPolicy is provided. shEnable may be SET if platformAuth/platformPolicy is provided.

This command may be used to CLEAR ehEnable if either platformAuth/platformPolicy or endorsementAuth/endorsementPolicy is provided. ehEnable may be SET if platformAuth/platformPolicy is provided.

When this command is used to CLEAR phEnable, shEnable, or ehEnable, the TPM will disable use of any persistent entity associated with the disabled hierarchy and will flush any transient objects associated with the disabled hierarchy.

When this command is used to CLEAR shEnable, the TPM will disable access to any NV index that has TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE CLEAR (indicating that the NV Index was defined using Owner Authorization). As long as shEnable is CLEAR, the TPM will return an error in response to any command that attempts to operate upon an NV index that has TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE CLEAR.

When this command is used to CLEAR phEnableNV, the TPM will disable access to any NV index that has TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE SET (indicating that the NV Index was defined using Platform Authorization). As long as phEnableNV is CLEAR, the TPM will return an error in response to any command that attempts to operate upon an NV index that has TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE SET.
## 24.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 175 — TPM2_HierarchyControl Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_HierarchyControl {NV E}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_BASE_HIERARCHY</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TP_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TP_RH_OWNER or TP_RH_PLATFORM+(PP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_ENABLES</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>the enable being modified TP_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TP_RH_OWNER,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TP_RH_PLATFORM, or TP_RH_PLATFORM_NV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>state</td>
<td>YES if the enable should be SET, NO if the enable should be CLEAR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 176 — TPM2_HierarchyControl Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.2.3 Detailed Actions

24.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/HierarchyControl.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "HierarchyControl_fp.h"

#if CC_HierarchyControl // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)
// Enable or disable use of a hierarchy */
#if
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE 'authHandle' is not applicable to 'hierarchy' in its
// current state
TPM_RC
TPM2_HierarchyControl(HierarchyControl_In* in // IN: input parameter list

{  
    BOOL select = (in->state == YES);
    BOOL* selected = NULL;

    // Input Validation
    switch(in->enable)
    {
        // Platform hierarchy has to be disabled by PlatformAuth
        // If the platform hierarchy has already been disabled, only a reboot
        // can enable it again
        case TPM_RH_PLATFORM:
            break;

        // ShEnable may be disabled if PlatformAuth/PlatformPolicy or
        // OwnerAuth/OwnerPolicy is provided. If ShEnable is disabled, then it
        // may only be enabled if PlatformAuth/PlatformPolicy is provided.
        case TPM_RH.Owner:
            if(in->authHandle != TPM_RH_PLATFORM && in->authHandle != TPM_RH.Owner)
            return TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE;
            break;

        // EhEnable may be disabled if either PlatformAuth/PlatformPolicy or
        // EndorsementAuth/EndorsementPolicy is provided. If EhEnable is disabled, then it
        // may only be enabled if PlatformAuth/PlatformPolicy is
        // provided.
        case TPM_RH.ENDORSEMENT:
            if(in->authHandle != TPM_RH_PLATFORM
                && in->authHandle != TPM_RH.ENDORSEMENT)
            return TPM_RC_AUTH_TYPE;
            break;

        default:
            FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
            break;
    }

    // Internal Data Update

```

```
```
60 // Enable or disable the selected hierarchy
61 // Note: the authorization processing for this command may keep these
62 // command actions from being executed. For example, if phEnable is
63 // CLEAR, then platformAuth cannot be used for authorization. This
64 // means that would not be possible to use platformAuth to change the
65 // state of phEnable from CLEAR to SET.
66 // If it is decided that platformPolicy can still be used when phEnable
67 // is CLEAR, then this code could SET phEnable when proper platform
68 // policy is provided.
69 // switch (in->enable)
70 {
71    case TPM_RH_OWNER:
72        selected = &gc.shEnable;
73        break;
74    case TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT:
75        selected = &gc.ehEnable;
76        break;
77    case TPM_RH_PLATFORM:
78        selected = &g_phEnable;
79        break;
80    case TPM_RH_PLATFORM_NV:
81        selected = &gc.phEnableNV;
82        break;
83    default:
84        fail(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
85        break;
86 }
87 if (selected != NULL && *selected != select)
88 {
89    // Before changing the internal state, make sure that NV is available.
90    // Only need to update NV if changing the orderly state
91    return_IF_ORDERLY;
92
93    // state is changing and NV is available so modify
94    *selected = select;
95    // If a hierarchy was just disabled, flush it
96    if (select == CLEAR && in->enable != TPM_RH_PLATFORM_NV)
97       // Flush hierarchy
98       ObjectFlushHierarchy(in->enable);
99    // orderly state should be cleared because of the update to state clear data
100    // This gets processed in ExecuteCommand() on the way out.
101    g_clearOrderly = TRUE;
102 }
103 return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
104 }
105 #endif // CC_HierarchyControl
24.3 TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy

24.3.1 General Description

This command allows setting of the authorization policy for the lockout (*lockoutPolicy*), the platform hierarchy (*platformPolicy*), the storage hierarchy (*ownerPolicy*), and the endorsement hierarchy (*endorsementPolicy*). On TPMs implementingAuthenticated Countdown Timers (ACT), this command may also be used to set the authorization policy for an ACT.

The command requires an authorization session. The session shall use the *authValue* associated with *authHandle* or the current policy associated with *authHandle*.

The policy that is changed is the policy associated with *authHandle*.

If the enable associated with *authHandle* is not SET, then the associated authorization values (*authValue* or *authPolicy*) may not be used, and the TPM returns TPM_RC_HIERARCHY.

When *hashAlg* is not TPM_ALG_NULL, if the size of *authPolicy* is not consistent with the hash algorithm, the TPM returns TPM_RC_SIZE.
### 24.3.2 Command and Response

#### Table 177 — TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SetPrimaryPolicy {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY_POLICY</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TPM_RH_OWNER, TPM_RH_ACT or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+(PP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>authPolicy</td>
<td>an authorization policy digest; may be the Empty Buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If hashAlg is TPM_ALG_NULL, then this shall be an Empty Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ALG_HASH+</td>
<td>hashAlg</td>
<td>the hash algorithm to use for the policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If the authPolicy is an Empty Buffer, then this field shall be TPM_ALG_NULL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 178 — TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.3.3 Detailed Actions

24.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/SetPrimaryPolicy.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SetPrimaryPolicy_fp.h"

#if CC_SetPrimaryPolicy  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Set a hierarchy policy
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_SIZE     size of input authPolicy is not consistent with
// input hash algorithm
TPM_RC
TPM2_SetPrimaryPolicy(SetPrimaryPolicy_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
  // Input Validation
  // Check the authPolicy consistent with hash algorithm. If the policy size is
  // zero, then the algorithm is required to be TPM_ALG_NULL
  if(in->authPolicy.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(in->hashAlg))
    return TPM_RC_SIZE + RC_SetPrimaryPolicy_authPolicy;

  // The command need NV update for OWNER and ENDORSEMENT hierarchy, and
  // might need orderlyState update for PLATFORM hierarchy.
  // Check if NV is available. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE
  // error may be returned at this point
  RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

  // Internal Data Update
  // Set hierarchy policy
  switch(in->authHandle)
  {
    case TPM_RH_OWNER:
      gp.ownerAlg = in->hashAlg;
      gp.ownerPolicy = in->authPolicy;
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(ownerAlg);
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(ownerPolicy);
      break;
    case TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT:
      gp.endorsementAlg = in->hashAlg;
      gp.endorsementPolicy = in->authPolicy;
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementAlg);
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementPolicy);
      break;
    case TPM_RH_PLATFORM:
      gc.platformAlg = in->hashAlg;
      gc.platformPolicy = in->authPolicy;
      // need to update orderly state
      g_clearOrderly = TRUE;
      break;
    case TPM_RH_LOCKOUT:
      gp.lockoutAlg = in->hashAlg;
      gp.lockoutPolicy = in->authPolicy;
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(lockoutAlg);
      NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(lockoutPolicy);
      break;
    #  if ACT_SUPPORT
```

```
```
# define SET_ACT_POLICY(N) \    
    case TPM_RH_ACT_##N: \    
go.ACT_##N.hashAlg = in->hashAlg; \    
go.ACT_##N.authPolicy = in->authPolicy; \    
g_clearOrderly = TRUE; \    
    break; \    
FOR_EACH_ACT(SET_ACT_POLICY)
# endif // ACT_SUPPORT

    default: 
        FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
        break;
    }

return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}

# endif // CC_SetPrimaryPolicy
24.4 TPM2_ChangePPS

24.4.1 General Description

This replaces the current platform primary seed (PPS) with a value from the RNG and sets `platformPolicy` to the default initialization value (the Empty Buffer).

NOTE 1 A policy that is the Empty Buffer can match no policy.

NOTE 2 Platform Authorization is not changed.

All resident transient and persistent objects in the Platform hierarchy are flushed. Saved contexts in the Platform hierarchy that were created under the old PPS will no longer be able to be loaded.

The policy hash algorithm for PCR is reset to TPM_ALG_NULL.

This command does not clear any NV Index values.

NOTE 3 Index values belonging to the Platform are preserved because the indexes may have configuration information that will be the same after the PPS changes. The Platform may remove the indexes that are no longer needed using TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace().

This command requires Platform Authorization.
### 24.4.2 Command and Response

**Table 179 — TPM2_ChangePPS Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ChangePPS {NV E}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 180 — TPM2_ChangePPS Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.4.3 Detailed Actions

24.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/ChangePPS.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ChangePPS_fp.h"
#if CC_ChangePPS // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 specification)
// Reset current PPS value
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_ChangePPS(ChangePPS_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    UINT32 i;
    // Check if NV is available. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE
    // error may be returned at this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
    // Input parameter is not reference in command action
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);
    // Internal Data Update
    // Reset platform hierarchy seed from RNG
    CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.PPSeed.t.buffer), gp.PPSeed.t.buffer);
    // Create a new phProof value from RNG to prevent the saved platform
    // hierarchy contexts being loaded
    CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.phProof.t.buffer), gp.phProof.t.buffer);
    // Set platform authPolicy to null
    gc.platformAlg           = TPM_ALG_NULL;
    gc.platformPolicy.t.size = 0;
    // Flush loaded object in platform hierarchy
    ObjectFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_PLATFORM);
    // Flush platform evict object and index in NV
    NvFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_PLATFORM);
    // Save hierarchy changes to NV
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(PPSeed);
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(phProof);
    // Re-initialize PCR policies
    # if defined NUM_POLICY_PCR_GROUP && NUM_POLICY_PCR_GROUP > 0
    for(i = 0; i < NUM_POLICY_PCR_GROUP; i++)
    {
        gp.pcrPolicies.hashAlg[i]       = TPM_ALG_NULL;
        gp.pcrPolicies.policy[i].t.size = 0;
    }
    # endif
    // orderly state should be cleared because of the update to state clear data
    g_clearOrderly = TRUE;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
```
#endif  // CC_ChangePPS
24.5 TPM2_ChangeEPS

24.5.1 General Description

This replaces the current endorsement primary seed (EPS) with a value from the RNG and sets the Endorsement hierarchy controls to their default initialization values: \textit{ehEnable} is SET, \textit{endorsementAuth} and \textit{endorsementPolicy} are both set to the Empty Buffer. It will flush any resident objects (transient or persistent) in the Endorsement hierarchy and not allow objects in the hierarchy associated with the previous EPS to be loaded.

\textbf{NOTE 1} \hspace{1em} In the reference implementation, \textit{ehProof} is a non-volatile value from the RNG. It is allowed that the \textit{ehProof} be generated by a KDF using both the EPS and SPS as inputs. If generated with a KDF, the \textit{ehProof} can be generated on an as-needed basis or made a non-volatile value.

\textbf{NOTE 2} \hspace{1em} Users should use this command with extreme caution. Changing the EPS removes existing EKs, and their associated EK certificates cannot be used to validate any new EK.

This command requires Platform Authorization.
### 24.5.2 Command and Response

**Table 181 — TPM2_ChangeEPS Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ChangeEPS {NV E}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 182 — TPM2_ChangeEPS Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.5.3 Detailed Actions

24.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/ChangeEPS.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ChangeEPS_fp.h"

#if CC_ChangeEPS // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Reset current EPS value */
TPM_RC TPM2_ChangeEPS(ChangeEPS_In* in \ IN: input parameter list

        { // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
        // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
        // this point
        RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
        // Input parameter is not reference in command action
        NOT_REFERENCED(in);
        // Internal Data Update
        // Reset endorsement hierarchy seed from RNG
        CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.EPSeed.t.buffer), gp.EPSeed.t.buffer);
        // Create new ehProof value from RNG
        CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.ehProof.t.buffer), gp.ehProof.t.buffer);
        // Enable endorsement hierarchy
        gc.ehEnable = TRUE;
        // set authValue buffer to zeros
        MemorySet(gp.endorsementAuth.t.buffer, 0, gp.endorsementAuth.t.size);
        // Set endorsement authValue to null
        gp.endorsementAuth.t.size = 0;
        // Set endorsement authPolicy to null
        gp.endorsementAlg = TPM_ALG_NULL;
        gp.endorsementPolicy.t.size = 0;
        // Flush loaded object in endorsement hierarchy
        ObjectFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT);
        // Flush evict object of endorsement hierarchy stored in NV
        NvFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT);
        // Save hierarchy changes to NV
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(EPSeed);
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(ehProof);
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementAuth);
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementAlg);
        NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementPolicy);
        // orderly state should be cleared because of the update to state clear data
        g_clearOrderly = TRUE;
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    }
```
#endif  // CC_ChangeEPS
24.6 TPM2_Clear

24.6.1 General Description

This command removes all TPM context associated with a specific Owner.

The clear operation will:

- flush resident objects (persistent and volatile) in the Storage and Endorsement hierarchies;
- delete any NV Index with TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE == CLEAR;
- change the storage primary seed (SPS) to a new value from the TPM’s random number generator (RNG),
- change $shProof$ and $ehProof$,

NOTE 1 The proof values are permitted to be set from the RNG or derived from the associated new Primary Seed. If derived from the Primary Seeds, the derivation of $ehProof$ shall use both the SPS and EPS. The computation shall use the SPS as an HMAC key and the derived value may then be a parameter in a second HMAC in which the EPS is the HMAC key. The reference design uses values from the RNG.

- SET $shEnable$ and $ehEnable$;
- set $ownerAuth$, $endorsementAuth$, and $lockoutAuth$ to the Empty Buffer;
- set $ownerPolicy$, $endorsementPolicy$, and $lockoutPolicy$ to the Empty Buffer;
- set $Clock$ to zero;
- set $resetCount$ to zero;
- set $restartCount$ to zero; and
- set $Safe$ to YES.
- increment $pcrUpdateCounter$

NOTE 2 This permits an application to create a policy session that is invalidated on TPM2_Clear. The policy needs, ideally as the first term, TPM2_PolicyPCR(). The session is invalidated even if the PCR selection is empty.

This command requires Platform Authorization or Lockout Authorization. If TPM2_ClearControl() has disabled this command, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_DISABLED.

NOTE 3 This is a change from TPM 1.2, where $ownerAuth$ authorized TPM_OwnerClear().

If this command is authorized using $lockoutAuth$, the HMAC in the response shall use the new $lockoutAuth$ value (that is, the Empty Buffer) when computing the response HMAC.
### 24.6.2 Command and Response

#### Table 183 — TPM2_Clear Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Clear (NV E)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_CLEAR</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+(PP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 184 — TPM2_Clear Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.6.3 Detailed Actions

24.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/Clear.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Clear_fp.h"

#if CC_Clear // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Clear owner
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_DISABLED Clear command has been disabled
TPM_RC
TPM2_Clear(Clear_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Input parameter is not reference in command action
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);

    // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Input Validation
    if(gp.disableClear)
        return TPM_RC_DISABLED;

    // Internal Data Update
    CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.SPSeed.t.buffer), gp.SPSeed.t.buffer);
    CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.shProof.t.buffer), gp.shProof.t.buffer);
    CryptRandomGenerate(sizeof(gp.ehProof.t.buffer), gp.ehProof.t.buffer);

    // Enable storage and endorsement hierarchy
    gc.shEnable = gc.ehEnable = TRUE;

    // set the authValue buffers to zero
    MemorySet(&gp.ownerAuth, 0, sizeof(gp.ownerAuth));
    MemorySet(&gp.endorsementAuth, 0, sizeof(gp.endorsementAuth));
    MemorySet(&gp.lockoutAuth, 0, sizeof(gp.lockoutAuth));

    // Set storage, endorsement, and lockout authPolicy to null
    gp.ownerAlg = gp.endorsementAlg = gp.lockoutAlg = TPM_ALG_NULL;
    MemorySet(&gp.ownerPolicy, 0, sizeof(gp.ownerPolicy));
    MemorySet(&gp.endorsementPolicy, 0, sizeof(gp.endorsementPolicy));
    MemorySet(&gp.lockoutPolicy, 0, sizeof(gp.lockoutPolicy));

    // Flush loaded object in storage and endorsement hierarchy
    ObjectFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_OWNER);
    ObjectFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT);

    // Flush owner and endorsement object and owner index in NV
    NvFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_OWNER);
    NvFlushHierarchy(TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT);
```
// Initialize dictionary attack parameters
DAPreInstall_Init();

// Reset clock
go.clock = 0;
go.clockSafe = YES;
NvWrite(NV_ORDERLY_DATA, sizeof(ORDERLY_DATA), &go);

// Reset counters
gp.resetCount = gr.restartCount = gr.clearCount = 0;
gp.auditCounter = 0;

// Save persistent data changes to NV
// Note: since there are so many changes to the persistent data structure, the
// entire PERSISTENT_DATA structure is written as a unit
NvWrite(NV_PERSISTENT_DATA, sizeof(PERSISTENT_DATA), &gp);

// Reset the PCR authValues (this does not change the PCRs)
PCR_ClearAuth();

// Bump the PCR counter
PCRChanged(0);

// orderly state should be cleared because of the update to state clear data
g_clearOrderly = TRUE;
return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_Clear
24.7 TPM2_ClearControl

24.7.1 General Description

TPM2_ClearControl() disables and enables the execution of TPM2_Clear().

The TPM will SET the TPM’s TPMA_PERMANENT.\texttt{disableClear} attribute if \texttt{disable} is YES and will CLEAR the attribute if \texttt{disable} is NO. When the attribute is SET, TPM2_Clear() may not be executed.

\textbf{NOTE} This is to simplify the logic of TPM2_Clear(). TPM2_ClearControl() can be called using Platform Authorization to CLEAR the \texttt{disableClear} attribute and then execute TPM2_Clear().

Lockout Authorization may be used to SET \texttt{disableClear} but not to CLEAR it.

Platform Authorization may be used to SET or CLEAR \texttt{disableClear}.
24.7.2 Command and Response

Table 185 — TPM2_ClearControl Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ClearControl {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_CLEAR</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>disable</td>
<td>YES if the disableOwnerClear flag is to be SET, NO if the flag is to be CLEAR.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 186 — TPM2_ClearControl Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.7.3 Detailed Actions

24.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/ClearControl.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ClearControl_fp.h"

#if CC_ClearControl // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Enable or disable the execution of TPM2_Clear command
 */
TPM_RC TPM2_ClearControl(ClearControl_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // The command needs NV update.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOTAVAILABLE;

    // Input Validation
    if(in->auth == TPM_RH_LOCKOUT && in->disable == NO)
        return TPM_RC_AUTH_FAIL;

    // Internal Data Update
    if(in->disable == YES)
        gp.disableClear = TRUE;
    else
        gp.disableClear = FALSE;

    // Record the change to NV
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_ClearControl
```
24.8  TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth

24.8.1  General Description

This command allows the authorization secret for a hierarchy or lockout to be changed using the current authorization value as the command authorization.

If authHandle is TPM_RH_PLATFORM, then platformAuth is changed. If authHandle is TPM_RH_OWNER, then ownerAuth is changed. If authHandle is TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, then endorsementAuth is changed. If authHandle is TPM_RH_LOCKOUT, then lockoutAuth is changed. The HMAC in the response shall use the new authorization value when computing the response HMAC.

If authHandle is TPM_RH_PLATFORM, then Physical Presence may need to be asserted for this command to succeed (see clause 26.2).

The authorization value may be no larger than the digest produced by the hash algorithm used for context integrity.

EXAMPLE  If SHA384 is used in the computation of the integrity values for saved contexts, then the largest authorization value is 48 octets.

NOTE    platformAuth is used as the ACT authValue.
### 24.8.2 Command and Response

#### Table 187 — TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_HierarchyChangeAuth (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT, TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+(PP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>newAuth</td>
<td>new authorization value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 188 — TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.8.3 Detailed Actions

24.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Hierarchy/HierarchyChangeAuth.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "HierarchyChangeAuth_fp.h"

#if CC_HierarchyChangeAuth // Conditional expansion of this file
    # include "Object_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
// Set a hierarchy authValue

TPM_RC TPM2_HierarchyChangeAuth(HierarchyChangeAuth_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // The command needs NV update.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Make sure that the authorization value is a reasonable size (not larger than
    // the size of the digest produced by the integrity hash. The integrity
    // hash is assumed to produce the longest digest of any hash implemented
    // on the TPM. This will also remove trailing zeros from the authValue.
    if(MemoryRemoveTrailingZeros(in->newAuth) > CONTEXT_INTEGRITY_HASH_SIZE)
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_HierarchyChangeAuth_newAuth;

    // Set hierarchy authValue
    switch(in->authHandle)
    {
        case TPM_RH_OWNER:
            gp.ownerAuth = in->newAuth;
            NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(ownerAuth);
            break;
        case TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT:
            gp.endorsementAuth = in->newAuth;
            NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(endorsementAuth);
            break;
        case TPM_RH_PLATFORM:
            gc.platformAuth = in->newAuth;
            // orderly state should be cleared
            break;
        case TPM_RH_LOCKOUT:
            gp.lockoutAuth = in->newAuth;
            NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(lockoutAuth);
            break;
        default:
             FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
             break;
    }

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_HierarchyChangeAuth
```

25 Dictionary Attack Functions

25.1 Introduction

A TPM is required to have support for logic that will help prevent a dictionary attack on an authorization value. The protection is provided by a counter that increments when a password authorization or an HMAC authorization fails. When the counter reaches a predefined value, the TPM will not accept, for some time interval, further requests that require authorization and the TPM is in Lockout mode. While the TPM is in Lockout mode, the TPM will return TPM_RC_LOCKOUT if the command requires use of an object’s or Index’s authValue unless the authorization applies to an entry in the Platform hierarchy.

NOTE 1 Authorizations for objects and NV Index values in the Platform hierarchy are never locked out. However, a command that requires multiple authorizations will not be accepted when the TPM is in Lockout mode unless all of the authorizations reference objects and indexes in the Platform hierarchy.

If the TPM is continuously powered for the duration of newRecoveryTime and no authorization failures occur, the authorization failure counter will be decremented by one. This property is called “self-healing.” Self-healing shall not cause the count of failed attempts to decrement below zero.

The count of failed attempts, the lockout interval, and self-healing interval are settable using TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters(). The lockout parameters and the current value of the lockout counter can be read with TPM2_GetCapability().

Dictionary attack protection does not apply to an entity associated with a permanent handle (handle type == TPM_HT_PERMANENT) other than TPM_RH_LOCKOUT.

25.2 TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset

25.2.1 General Description

This command cancels the effect of a TPM lockout due to a number of successive authorization failures. If this command is properly authorized, the lockout counter is set to zero.

Only one lockoutAuth authorization failure is allowed for this command during a lockoutRecovery interval (set using TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters()).
25.2.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_DictionaryAttackLockReset {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_LOCKOUT</td>
<td>@lockHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 190 — TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.2.3 Detailed Actions

25.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/DA/DictionaryAttackLockReset.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "DictionaryAttackLockReset_fp.h"

#if CC_DictionaryAttackLockReset  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)*/
/* This command cancels the effect of a TPM lockout due to a number of */
/* successive authorization failures. If this command is properly authorized, */
/* the lockout counter is set to 0. */
*/

TPM_RC
TPM2_DictionaryAttackLockReset(
    DictionaryAttackLockReset_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Input parameter is not reference in command action
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);
    // The command needs NV update.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Set failed tries to 0
    gp.failedTries = 0;
    // Record the changes to NV
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(failedTries);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_DictionaryAttackLockReset
```
25.3 **TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters**

25.3.1 **General Description**

This command changes the lockout parameters.

The command requires Lockout Authorization.

The timeout parameters (*newRecoveryTime* and *lockoutRecovery*) indicate values that are measured with respect to the *Time* and not *Clock*.

NOTE Use of *Time* means that the TPM shall be continuously powered for the duration of a timeout.

If *newRecoveryTime* is zero, then DA protection is disabled. Authorizations are checked but authorization failures will not cause the TPM to enter lockout.

If *newMaxTries* is zero, the TPM will be in lockout and use of DA protected entities will be disabled.

If *lockoutRecovery* is zero, then the recovery interval is _TPM_Init followed by TPM2_Startup().

Only one *lockoutAuth* authorization failure is allowed for this command during a *lockoutRecovery* interval.
### 25.3.2 Command and Response

#### Table 191 — TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_DictionaryAttackParameters {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_LOCKOUT</td>
<td>@lockHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>newMaxTries</td>
<td>count of authorization failures before the lockout is imposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>newRecoveryTime</td>
<td>time in seconds before the authorization failure count is automatically decremented A value of zero indicates that DA protection is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>lockoutRecovery</td>
<td>time in seconds after a lockoutAuth failure before use of lockoutAuth is allowed A value of zero indicates that a reboot is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 192 — TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.3.3 Detailed Actions

25.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/DA/DictionaryAttackParameters.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "DictionaryAttackParameters_fp.h"

#if CC_DictionaryAttackParameters // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // change the lockout parameters */

TPM_RC
TPM2_DictionaryAttackParameters(
    DictionaryAttackParameters_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // The command needs NV update.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Set dictionary attack parameters
    gp.maxTries = in->newMaxTries;
    gp.recoveryTime = in->newRecoveryTime;
    gp.lockoutRecovery = in->lockoutRecovery;

    // if 0
    // Errata eliminates this code
    // This functionality has been disabled. The preferred implementation is now
    // to leave failedTries unchanged when the parameters are changed. This could
    // have the effect of putting the TPM into DA lockout if in->newMaxTries is
    // not greater than the current value of gp.failedTries.
    // Set failed tries to 0
    gp.failedTries = 0;

    // Record the changes to NV
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(failedTries);
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(maxTries);
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(recoveryTime);
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(lockoutRecovery);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_DictionaryAttackParameters
```
26 Miscellaneous Management Functions

26.1 Introduction

Clause 25.3.3.1 contains commands that do not logically group with any other commands.

26.2 TPM2_PP_Commands

26.2.1 General Description

This command is used to determine which commands require assertion of Physical Presence (PP) in addition to platformAuth/platformPolicy.

This command requires that auth is TPM_RH_PLATFORM and that Physical Presence be asserted.

After this command executes successfully, the commands listed in setList will be added to the list of commands that require that Physical Presence be asserted when the handle associated with the authorization is TPM_RH_PLATFORM. The commands in clearList will no longer require assertion of Physical Presence in order to authorize a command.

If a command is not in either list, its state is not changed. If a command is in both lists, then it will no longer require Physical Presence (for example, setList is processed first).

Only commands with handle types of TPMI_RH_PLATFORM, TPMI_RH_PROVISION, TPMI_RH_CLEAR, or TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY can be gated with Physical Presence. If any other command is in either list, it is discarded.

When a command requires that Physical Presence be provided, then Physical Presence shall be asserted for either an HMAC or a Policy authorization.

NOTE 1 Physical Presence may be made a requirement of any policy.

NOTE 2 If the TPM does not implement this command, the command list is vendor specific. A platform-specific specification may require that the command list be initialized in a specific way.

TPM2_PP_Commands() always requires assertion of Physical Presence.
## 26.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 193 — TPM2_PP_Commands Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_PP_Commands {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+PP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER + Physical Presence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
<td>setList</td>
<td>list of commands to be added to those that will require that Physical Presence be asserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
<td>clearList</td>
<td>list of commands that will no longer require that Physical Presence be asserted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 194 — TPM2_PP_Commands Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.2.3 Detailed Actions

26.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Misc/PP.Commands.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "PP_Commands_fp.h"

#if CC_PP_Commands // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// This command is used to determine which commands require assertion of
// Physical Presence in addition to platformAuth/platformPolicy.
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_PP_Commands(PP_Commands_In* in) // IN: input parameter list
{
    UINT32 i;

    // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Internal Data Update
    for (i = 0; i < in->setList.count; i++)
        // If command is implemented, set it as PP required. If the input
        // command is not a PP command, it will be ignored at
        // PhysicalPresenceCommandSet().
        // Note: PhysicalPresenceCommandSet() checks if the command is implemented.
        PhysicalPresenceCommandSet(in->setList.commandCodes[i]);

    // Process clear list
    for (i = 0; i < in->clearList.count; i++)
        // If command is implemented, clear it as PP required. If the input
        // command is not a PP command, it will be ignored at
        // PhysicalPresenceCommandClear(). If the input command is
        // TPM2_PP_Commands, it will be ignored as well
        PhysicalPresenceCommandClear(in->clearList.commandCodes[i]);

    // Save the change of PP list
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(ppList);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_PP_Commands
```
26.3 TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet

26.3.1 General Description

This command allows the platform to change the set of algorithms that are used by the TPM. The `algorithmSet` setting is a vendor-dependent value.

If the changing of the algorithm set results in a change of the algorithms of PCR banks, then the TPM will need to be reset (_TPM_Init and TPM2_Startup(TPM_SU_CLEAR)) before the new PCR settings take effect. After this command executes successfully, if `startupType` in the next TPM2_Startup() is not TPM_SU_CLEAR, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE and may enter Failure mode.

Other than PCR, when an algorithm is no longer supported, the behavior of this command is vendor-dependent.

EXAMPLE Entities can remain resident. Persistent objects, transient objects, or sessions can be flushed. NV Indexes may be undefined. Policies may be erased.

NOTE The reference implementation does not have support for this command. In particular, it does not support use of this command to selectively disable algorithms. Proper support would require modification of the unmarshaling code so that each time an algorithm is unmarshaled, it would be verified as being enabled.
26.3.2 Command and Response

Table 195 — TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SetAlgorithmSet (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>algorithmSet</td>
<td>a TPM vendor-dependent value indicating the algorithm set selection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 196 — TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.3.3 Detailed Actions

26.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Misc/SetAlgorithmSet.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SetAlgorithmSet_fp.h"

#if CC_SetAlgorithmSet  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // This command allows the platform to change the algorithm set setting of the TPM
 */

TPM_RC TPM2_SetAlgorithmSet(SetAlgorithmSet_In* in)  // IN: input parameter list
{
    // The command needs NV update. Check if NV is available.
    // A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may be returned at
    // this point
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;

    // Internal Data Update
    gp.algorithmSet = in->algorithmSet;

    // Write the algorithm set changes to NV
    NV_SYNC_PERSISTENT(algorithmSet);

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_SetAlgorithmSet
```
27 Field Upgrade

27.1 Introduction

Clause 26.3.3.1 contains the commands for managing field upgrade of the firmware in the TPM. The field upgrade scheme may be used for replacement or augmentation of the firmware installed in the TPM.

EXAMPLE 1 If an algorithm is found to be flawed, a patch of that algorithm might be installed using the firmware upgrade process. The patch might be a replacement of a portion of the code or a complete replacement of the firmware.

EXAMPLE 2 If an additional set of ECC parameters is needed, the firmware process can be used to add the parameters to the TPM data set.

The field upgrade process uses two commands (TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart() and TPM2_FieldUpgradeData()). TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart() validates that a signature on the provided digest is from the TPM manufacturer, and that proper authorization is provided using platformPolicy.

NOTE 1 The platformPolicy for field upgraded is defined by the PM and may include requirements that the upgrade be signed by the PM or the TPM owner and include any other constraints that are desired by the PM.

If the proper authorization is given, the TPM will retain the signed digest and enter the Field Upgrade mode (FUM). While in FUM, the TPM will accept TPM2_FieldUpgradeData() commands. It may accept other commands if it is able to complete them using the previously installed firmware. Otherwise, it will return TPM_RC_UPGRADE.

Each block of the field upgrade shall contain the digest of the next block of the field upgrade data. That digest shall be included in the digest of the previous block. The digest of the first block is signed by the TPM manufacturer. That signature and first block digest are the parameters for TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart(). The digest is saved in the TPM as the required digest for the next field upgrade data block and as the identifier of the field upgrade sequence.

For each field upgrade data block that is sent to the TPM by TPM2_FieldUpgradeData(), the TPM shall validate that the digest matches the required digest and if not, shall return TPM_RC_VALUE. The TPM shall extract the digest of the next expected block and return that value to the caller, along with the digest of the first data block of the update sequence.

The system may attempt to abandon the firmware upgrade by using a zero-length buffer in TPM2_FieldUpdateData(). If the TPM is able to resume operation using the firmware present when the upgrade started, then the TPM will indicate that it has abandon the update by setting the digest of the next block to the Empty Buffer. If the TPM cannot abandon the update, it will return the expected next digest.

The system may also attempt to abandon the update because of a power interruption. If the TPM is able to resume normal operations, then it will respond normally to TPM2_Startup(). If the TPM is not able to resume normal operations, then it will respond to any command but TPM2_FieldUpgradeData() with TPM_RC_UPGRADE.

After a _TPM_Init, system software may not be able to resume the field upgrade that was in process when the power interruption occurred. In such case, the TPM firmware may be reset to one of two other values:

- the original firmware that was installed at the factory ("initial firmware"); or
- the firmware that was in the TPM when the field upgrade process started ("previous firmware").

The TPM retains the digest of the first block for these firmware images and checks to see if the first block after _TPM_Init matches either of those digests. If so, the firmware update process restarts, and the original firmware may be loaded.
NOTE 2 The TPM is required to accept the previous firmware as either a vendor-provided update or as recovered from the TPM using TPM2_FirmwareRead().

When the last block of the firmware upgrade is loaded into the TPM (indicated to the TPM by data in the data block in a TPM vendor-specific manner), the TPM will complete the upgrade process. If the TPM is able to resume normal operations without a reboot, it will set the hash algorithm of the next block to TPM_ALG_NULL and return TPM_RC_SUCCESS. If a reboot is required, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_REBOOT in response to the last TPM2_FieldUpgradeData() and all subsequent TPM commands until a _TPM_Init is received.

NOTE 3 Because no additional data is allowed when the response code is not TPM_RC_SUCCESS, the TPM returns TPM_RC_SUCCESS for all calls to TPM2_FieldUpgradeData() except the last. In this manner, the TPM is able to indicate the digest of the next block. If a _TPM_Init occurs while the TPM is in FUM, the next block may be the digest for the first block of the original firmware. If it is not, then the TPM will not accept the original firmware until the next _TPM_Init when the TPM is in FUM.

During the field upgrade process, either the one specified in clause 26.3.3.1 or a vendor proprietary field upgrade process, the TPM should preserve:

- Primary Seeds (and the primary keys generated from them);
- Hierarchy authValue, authPolicy, and proof values;
- Lockout authValue and authorization failure count values;
- PCR authValue and authPolicy values;
- NV Index allocations and contents;
- Persistent object allocations and contents; and
- Clock.

NOTE 4 A platform manufacturer may provide a means to change preserved data to accommodate a case where a field upgrade fixes a flaw that might have compromised TPM secrets.
27.2 TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart

27.2.1 General Description

This command uses platformPolicy and a TPM Vendor Authorization Key to authorize a Field Upgrade Manifest.

If the signature checks succeed, the authorization is valid and the TPM will accept TPM2_FieldUpgradeData().

This signature is checked against the loaded key referenced by keyHandle. This key will have a Name that is the same as a value that is part of the TPM firmware data. If the signature is not valid, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIGNATURE.

NOTE A loaded key is used rather than a hard-coded key to reduce the amount of memory needed for this key data in case more than one vendor key is needed.
### 27.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 197 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_FieldUpgradeStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@authorization</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP} Auth Index:1 Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>keyHandle</td>
<td>handle of a public area that contains the TPM Vendor Authorization Key that will be used to validate manifestSignature Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DIGEST</td>
<td>fuDigest</td>
<td>digest of the first block in the field upgrade sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>manifestSignature</td>
<td>signature over fuDigest using the key associated with keyHandle (not optional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 198 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27.2.3  Detailed Actions

27.2.3.1  /tpm/src/command/FieldUpgrade/FieldUpgradeStart.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "FieldUpgradeStart_fp.h"
#if CC_FieldUpgradeStart  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// FieldUpgradeStart
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart(FieldUpgradeStart_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    // Not implemented
    UNUSED_PARAMETER(in);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif
```
27.3 TPM2_FieldUpgradeData

27.3.1 General Description

This command will take the actual field upgrade image to be installed on the TPM. The exact format of fuData is vendor-specific. This command is only possible following a successful TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart(). If the TPM has not received a properly authorized TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart(), then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_FIELDUPGRADE.

The TPM will validate that the digest of fuData matches an expected value. If so, the TPM may buffer or immediately apply the update. If the digest of fuData does not match an expected value, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.
### 27.3.2 Command and Response

#### Table 199 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeData Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or decrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_FieldUpgradeData {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>fuData</td>
<td>field upgrade image data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 200 — TPM2_FieldUpgradeData Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| TPMT_HA+| nextDigest  | tagged digest of the next block  
TPM_ALG_NULL if field update is complete |
| TPMT_HA | firstDigest | tagged digest of the first block of the sequence               |
27.3.3 Detailed Actions

27.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/FieldUpgrade/FieldUpgradeData.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "FieldUpgradeData_fp.h"
#if CC_FieldUpgradeData  // Conditional expansion of this file
   /*(See part 3 specification)
   // FieldUpgradeData
   */
   TPM_RC
   TPM2_FieldUpgradeData(FieldUpgradeData_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                       FieldUpgradeData_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
   )
   {
      // Not implemented
      UNUSED_PARAMETER(in);
      UNUSED_PARAMETER(out);
      return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
   }
#endif
```
27.4  TPM2_FirmwareRead

27.4.1  General Description

This command is used to read a copy of the current firmware installed in the TPM.

The presumption is that the data will be returned in reverse order so that the last block in the sequence would be the first block given to the TPM in case of a failure recovery. If the TPM2_FirmwareRead sequence completes successfully, then the data provided from the TPM will be sufficient to allow the TPM to recover from an abandoned upgrade of this firmware.

To start the sequence of retrieving the data, the caller sets sequenceNumber to zero. When the TPM has returned all the firmware data, the TPM will return the Empty Buffer as fuData.

The contents of fuData are opaque to the caller.

NOTE 1  The caller should retain the ordering of the update blocks so that the blocks sent to the TPM have the same size and inverse order as the blocks returned by a sequence of calls to this command.

NOTE 2  Support for this command is optional even if the TPM implements TPM2_FieldUpgradeStart() and TPM2_FieldUpgradeData().
27.4.2 Command and Response

Table 201 — TPM2_FirmwareRead Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_FirmwareRead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>sequenceNumber</td>
<td>the number of previous calls to this command in this sequence set to 0 on the first call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 202 — TPM2_FirmwareRead Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>fuData</td>
<td>field upgrade image data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27.4.3 Detailed Actions

27.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/FieldUpgrade/FirmwareRead.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "FirmwareRead_fp.h"

#if CC_FirmwareRead  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // FirmwareRead */
TPM_RC
TPM2_FirmwareRead(FirmwareRead_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                  FirmwareRead_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    // Not implemented
    UNUSED_PARAMETER(in);
    UNUSED_PARAMETER(out);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_FirmwareRead
```

28  Context Management

28.1  Introduction

Three of the commands in clause 27.4.3.1 (TPM2_ContextSave(), TPM2_ContextLoad(), and TPM2.FlushContext()) implement the resource management described in the "Context Management" clause in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

The fourth command in clause 27.4.3.1 (TPM2_EvictControl()) is used to control the persistence of loadable objects in TPM memory. Background for this command may be found in the "Owner and Platform Evict Objects" clause in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

28.2  TPM2_ContextSave

28.2.1  General Description

This command saves a session context, object context, or sequence object context outside the TPM.

No authorization sessions of any type are allowed with this command and tag is required to be TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS.

NOTE  This preclusion avoids complex issues of dealing with the same session in handle and in the session area. While it might be possible to provide specificity, it would add unnecessary complexity to the TPM and, because this capability would provide no application benefit, use of authorization sessions for audit or encryption is prohibited.

The TPM shall encrypt and integrity protect the TPM2B_CONTEXT_SENSITIVE context as described in the "Context Protections" clause in TPM 2.0 Part 1.

See the "Context Data" clause in TPM 2.0 Part 2 for a description of the context structure in the response.
## 28.2.2 Command and Response

### Table 203 — TPM2_ContextSave Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ContextSave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DHCONTEXT</td>
<td>saveHandle</td>
<td>handle of the resource to save</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 204 — TPM2_ContextSave Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_CONTEXT</td>
<td>context</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28.2.3 Detailed Actions

28.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Context/ContextSave.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

#if CC_ContextSave // Conditional expansion of this file

# include "ContextSave_fp.h"
# include "Marshal.h"
# include "Context_spt_fp.h"

/*(See part 3 specification)
Save context
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC

// TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP a contextID could not be assigned for a session
// TPM_RC_CONTEXT_SAVE context save
// TPM_RC_TOO_MANY_CONTEXTS no more contexts can be saved as the counter has
// maxed out

TPM_RC

TPM2_ContextSave(ContextSave_In*  in, // IN: input parameter list
                   ContextSave_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {

    TPM_RC result = TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

    UINT16 fingerprintSize; // The size of fingerprint in context blob.
    UINT64 contextID = 0; // session context ID
    TPM2B_SYM_KEY symKey;
    TPM2B_IV iv;
    TPM2B_DIGEST integrity;
    UINT16 integritySize;
    BYTE* buffer;

    // This command may cause the orderlyState to be cleared due to
    // the update of state reset data. If the state is orderly and
    // cannot be changed, exit early.
    RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;

    // Internal Data Update

    // This implementation does not do things in quite the same way as described in
    // Part 2 of the specification. In Part 2, it indicates that the
    // TPMS CONTEXT DATA contains two TPM2B values. That is not how this is
    // implemented. Rather, the size field of the TPM2B CONTEXT DATA is used to
    // determine the amount of data in the encrypted data. That part is not
    // independently sized. This makes the actual size 2 bytes smaller than
    // calculated using Part 2. Since this is opaque to the caller, it is not
    // necessary to fix. The actual size is returned by TPM2_GetCapabilities().

    // Initialize output handle. At the end of command action, the output
    // handle of an object will be replaced, while the output handle
    // for a session will be the same as input
    out->context.savedHandle = in->saveHandle;

    // Get the size of fingerprint in context blob. The sequence value in
    // TPMS CONTEXT structure is used as the fingerprint
    fingerprintSize = sizeof(out->context.sequence);

    // Compute the integrity size at the beginning of context blob
    integritySize =
```
```
60  sizeof(integrity.t.size) + CryptHashGetDigestSize(CONTEXT_INTEGRITY_HASH_ALG);
61
62  // Perform object or session specific context save
63  switch(HandleGetType(in->saveHandle))
64  {
65    case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
66      {
67        OBJECT*          object = HandleToObject(in->saveHandle);
68        ANY_OBJECT_BUFFER* outObject;
69        UINT16 objectSize = ObjectIsSequence(object) ? sizeof(HASH_OBJECT)
70           : sizeof(OBJECT);
71
72        outObject   = (ANY_OBJECT_BUFFER*)((out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer
73           + integritySize + fingerprintSize);
74
75        // Set size of the context data. The contents of context blob is vendor
76        // defined. In this implementation, the size is size of integrity
77        // plus fingerprint plus the whole internal OBJECT structure
78        out->context.contextBlob.t.size = 
79            integritySize + fingerprintSize + objectSize;
80        }
81    # if ALG_RSA
82        // For an RSA key, make sure that the key has had the private exponent
83        // computed before saving.
84        if(object->publicArea.type == TPM_ALG_RSA
85            && !(object->attributes.publicOnly))
86            CryptRsaLoadPrivateExponent(&object->publicArea, &object->sensitive);
87    # endif
88  
89    // Make sure things fit
90    pAssert(out->context.contextBlob.t.size
91           <= sizeof(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer));
92  
93    // Copy the whole internal OBJECT structure to context blob
94    MemoryCopy(outObject, object, objectSize);
95
96    // Increment object context ID
97    gr.objectContextID++;
98    // If object context ID overflows, TPM should be put in failure mode
99    if(gr.objectContextID == 0)
100      FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
101
102    // Fill in other return values for an object.
103    out->context.sequence = gr.objectContextID;
104    // For regular object, savedHandle is 0x80000000. For sequence object,
105    // savedHandle is 0x80000001. For object with stClear, savedHandle
106    // is 0x80000002
107    if(ObjectIsSequence(object))
108      {
109        out->context.savedHandle = 0x80000001;
110        SequenceDataExport((HASH_OBJECT*)object,
111            (HASH_OBJECT_BUFFER*)outObject);
112      }
113    else
114      {
115        out->context.savedHandle =
116            (object->attributes.stClear == SET) ? 0x80000002 : 0x80000000;
117        // Get object hierarchy
118        out->context.hierarchy = object->hierarchy;
119        break;
120      }
121    }
122    case TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION:
123    case TPM_HT_POLICY_SESSION:
124      {
125        SESSION* session = SessionGet(in->saveHandle);
126
127        // Set size of the context data. The contents of context blob is vendor
128        // defined. In this implementation, the size of context blob is the
129        // size of a internal session structure plus the size of
// fingerprint plus the size of integrity
out->context.contextBlob.t.size =
    integritySize + fingerprintSize + sizeof(*session);

// Make sure things fit
pAssert(out->context.contextBlob.t.size
    < sizeof(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer));

// Copy the whole internal SESSION structure to context blob.
// Save space for fingerprint at the beginning of the buffer
// This is done before anything else so that the actual context
// can be reclaimed after this call
pAssert(sizeof(*session) <= sizeof(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer)
    - integritySize - fingerprintSize);
MemoryCopy(
    out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer + integritySize + fingerprintSize,
    session,
    sizeof(*session));
// Fill in the other return parameters for a session
// Get a context ID and set the session tracking values appropriately
// TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP is a possible error.
// SessionContextSave() will flush the in-memory context
// so no additional errors may occur after this call.
result = SessionContextSave(out->context.savedHandle, &contextID);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;
// sequence number is the current session contextID
out->context.sequence = contextID;
// use TPM_RH_NULL as hierarchy for session context
out->context.hierarchy = TPM_RH_NULL;
break;
}
  }
// Save fingerprint at the beginning of encrypted area of context blob.
// Reserve the integrity space
pAssert(sizeof(out->context.sequence)
    <= sizeof(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer) - integritySize);
MemoryCopy(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer + integritySize,
    &out->context.sequence,
    sizeof(out->context.sequence));

// Compute context encryption key
result = ComputeContextProtectionKey(&out->context, &symKey, &iv);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;
// Encrypt context blob
CryptSymmetricEncrypt(out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer + integritySize,
    CONTEXT_ENCRYPT_ALG,
    CONTEXT_ENCRYPT_KEY_BITS,
    symKey.t.buffer,
    &iv,
    TPM_ALG_CFB,
    out->context.contextBlob.t.size - integritySize,
    out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer + integritySize);

// Compute integrity hash for the object
// In this implementation, the same routine is used for both sessions
// and objects.
result = ComputeContextIntegrity(&out->context, &integrity);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)

  return result;

// add integrity at the beginning of context blob
buffer = out->context.contextBlob.t.buffer;
TPM2B_DIGEST_Marshal(&integrity, &buffer, NULL);

// orderly state should be cleared because of the update of state reset and
// state clear data
  g_clearOrderly = TRUE;

return result;

#endif // CC_ContextSave
28.3 TPM2_ContextLoad

28.3.1 General Description

This command is used to reload a context that has been saved by TPM2_ContextSave().
No authorization sessions of any type are allowed with this command and tag is required to be
TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS (see note in clause 28.2.1).
The TPM will return TPM_RC_HIERARCHY if the context is associated with a hierarchy that is disabled.

NOTE  Contexts for authorization sessions and for sequence objects belong to the NULL hierarchy, which is
never disabled.

See the “Context Data” clause in TPM 2.0 Part 2 for a description of the values in the context parameter.
If the integrity HMAC of the saved context is not valid, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_INTEGRITY.
The TPM shall perform a check on the decrypted context as described in the "Context Confidentiality
Protection" clause of TPM 2.0 Part 1 and enter failure mode if the check fails.
### 28.3.2 Command and Response

**Table 205 — TPM2_ContextLoad Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ContextLoad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_CONTEXT</td>
<td>context</td>
<td>the context blob</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 206 — TPM2_ContextLoad Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_CONTEXT</td>
<td>loadedHandle</td>
<td>the handle assigned to the resource after it has been successfully loaded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28.3.3 Detailed Actions

28.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Context/ContextLoad.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

#if CC_ContextLoad // Conditional expansion of this file
// include "ContextLoad_fp.h"
// include "Marshal.h"
// include "Context_spt_fp.h"
/*(See part 3 specification)

#define Load context
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP there is only one available slot and this is not
// the oldest saved session context
// TPM_RC_HANDLE 'context.savedHandle' does not reference a saved
// session
// TPM_RC_HIERARCHY 'context.hierarchy' is disabled
// TPM_RC_INTEGRITY 'context' integrity check fail
// TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY no free slot for an object
// TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY no free session slots
// TPM_RC_SIZE incorrect context blob size

TPM_RC TPM2_ContextLoad(ContextLoad_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                          ContextLoad_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result;
    TPM2B_DIGEST integrityToCompare;
    TPM2B_DIGEST integrity;
    BYTE* buffer; // defined to save some typing
    INT32 size; // defined to save some typing
    TPM_HT handleType;
    TPM2B_SYM_KEY symKey;
    TPM2B_IV iv;

    // Input Validation
    // See discussion about the context format in TPM2_ContextSave Detailed Actions
    // IF this is a session context, make sure that the sequence number is
    // consistent with the version in the slot
    // Check context blob size
    handleType = HandleGetType(in->context.savedHandle);
    // Get integrity from context blob
    buffer = in->context.contextBlob.t.buffer;
    size = (INT32)in->context.contextBlob.t.size;
    result = TPM2B_DIGEST.Unmarshal(&integrity, &buffer, &size);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // the size of the integrity value has to match the size of digest produced
    // by the integrity hash
    if(integrity.t.size != CryptHashGetDigestSize(CONTEXT_INTEGRITY_HASH_ALG))
        return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_ContextLoad_context;

    // Make sure that the context blob has enough space for the fingerprint. This
```

```
```
// is elastic pants to go with the belt and suspenders we already have to make
// sure that the context is complete and untampered.
if((unsigned)size < sizeof(in->context.sequence))
    return TPM_RCS_SIZE + RC_ContextLoad_context;

// After unmarshaling the integrity value, 'buffer' is pointing at the first
// byte of the integrity protected and encrypted buffer and 'size' is the number
// of integrity protected and encrypted bytes.

// Compute context integrity
result = ComputeContextIntegrity(&in->context, &integrityToCompare);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

// Compare integrity
if(!MemoryEqual2B(&integrity.b, &integrityToCompare.b))
    return TPM_RCS_INTEGRITY + RC_ContextLoad_context;

// Compute context encryption key
result = ComputeContextProtectionKey(&in->context, &symKey, &iv);
if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

// Decrypt context data in place
CryptSymmetricDecrypt(buffer,
    CONTEXT_ENCRYPT_ALG,
    CONTEXT_ENCRYPT_KEY_BITS,
    symKey.t.buffer,
    &iv,
    TPM_ALG_CFB,
    size,
    buffer);

// See if the fingerprint value matches. If not, it is symptomatic of either
// a broken TPM or that the TPM is under attack so go into failure mode.
if(!MemoryEqual(buffer, &in->context.sequence, sizeof(in->context.sequence)))
    FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);

// step over fingerprint
buffer += sizeof(in->context.sequence);

// set the remaining size of the context
size -= sizeof(in->context.sequence);

// Perform object or session specific input check
switch(handleType)
{
    case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
    {
        OBJECT* outObject;

        if(size > (INT32)sizeof(OBJECT))
            FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);

        // Discard any changes to the handle that the TRM might have made
        in->context.savedHandle = TRANSIENT_FIRST;

        // If hierarchy is disabled, no object context can be loaded in this
        // hierarchy
        if(!HierarchyIsEnabled(in->context.hierarchy))
            return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_ContextLoad_context;

        // Restore object. If there is no empty space, indicate as much
        outObject =
            ObjectContextLoad((ANY_OBJECT_BUFFER*)buffer, &out->loadedHandle);
        if(outObject == NULL)
            return TPM_RC_OBJECT_MEMORY;
break;

case TPM_HT_POLICY_SESSION:
    case TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION:
    {
        if (size != sizeof(SESSION))
            FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);

        // This command may cause the orderlyState to be cleared due to
        // the update of state reset data. If this is the case, check if NV is
        // available first
        RETURN_IF_ORDERLY;

        // Check if input handle points to a valid saved session and that the
        // sequence number makes sense
        if (!SequenceNumberForSavedContextIsValid(&in->context))
            return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_ContextLoad_context;

        // Restore session. A TPM_RC_SESSION_MEMORY, TPM_RC_CONTEXT_GAP error
        // may be returned at this point
        result = SessionContextLoad((SESSION_BUF*)buffer, &in->context.savedHandle);
        if (result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;

        out->loadedHandle = in->context.savedHandle;

        // orderly state should be cleared because of the update of state
        // reset and state clear data
        g_clearOrderly = TRUE;

        break;
    }

default:
    // Context blob may only have an object handle or a session handle.
    // All the other handle type should be filtered out at unmarshal
    FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
    break;

}
28.4 TPM2_FlushContext

28.4.1 General Description

This command causes all context associated with a loaded object, sequence object, or session to be removed from TPM memory.

This command may not be used to remove a persistent object from the TPM. Use TPM2_EvictControl to remove a persistent object.

A session does not have to be loaded in TPM memory to have its context flushed. The saved session context associated with the indicated handle is invalidated. When flushing a session, the upper byte of the handle is ignored.

EXAMPLE A command to flush session handle 0x20000000 will flush session handle 0x03000000.

No sessions of any type are allowed with this command and tag is required to be TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS (see note in clause 28.2.1).

If the handle is for a Transient Object and the handle is not associated with a loaded object, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

If the handle is for an authorization session and the handle does not reference a loaded or active session, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

NOTE flushHandle is a parameter and not a handle. If it were in the handle area, the TPM would validate that the context for the referenced entity is in the TPM. When a TPM2_FlushContext references a saved session context, it is not necessary for the context to be in the TPM. When the flushHandle is in the parameter area, the TPM does not validate that associated context is actually in the TPM.
28.4.2 Command and Response

Table 207 — TPM2_FlushContext Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_FlushContext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_CONTEXT</td>
<td>flushHandle</td>
<td>the handle of the item to flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE This is a use of a handle as a parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 208 — TPM2_FlushContext Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28.4.3 Detailed Actions

28.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Context/FlushContext.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "FlushContext_fp.h"

#if CC_FlushContext  // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)
// Flush a specific object or session
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
TPM2_FlushContext(TPM2_FlushContext_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Internal Data Update

    // Call object or session specific routine to flush
    switch(HandleGetType(in->flushHandle))
    {
        case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
            if(!IsObjectPresent(in->flushHandle))
                return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_FlushContext_flushHandle;
            // Flush object
            FlushObject(in->flushHandle);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION:
        case TPM_HT_POLICY_SESSION:
            if(!SessionIsLoaded(in->flushHandle) && !SessionIsSaved(in->flushHandle))
                return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_FlushContext_flushHandle;
            // If the session to be flushed is the exclusive audit session, then
            // indicate that there is no exclusive audit session any longer.
            if(in->flushHandle == g_exclusiveAuditSession)
                g_exclusiveAuditSession = TPM_RH_UNASSIGNED;
            // Flush session
            SessionFlush(in->flushHandle);
            break;
        default:
            // This command only takes object or session handle. Other handles
            // should be filtered out at handle unmarshal
            FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
            break;
            
    }

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_FlushContext
```
28.5 TPM2_EvictControl

28.5.1 General Description

This command allows certain Transient Objects to be made persistent or a persistent object to be evicted.

NOTE 1 A transient object is one that may be removed from TPM memory using either TPM2_FlushContext or TPM2_Startup(). A persistent object is not removed from TPM memory by TPM2_FlushContext() or TPM2_Startup().

If objectHandle is a Transient Object, then this call makes a persistent copy of the object and assigns persistentHandle to the persistent version of the object. If objectHandle is a persistent object, then the call evicts the persistent object. The call does not affect the transient object.

Before execution of TPM2_EvictControl code below, the TPM verifies that objectHandle references an object that is resident on the TPM and that persistentHandle is a valid handle for a persistent object.

NOTE 2 This requirement simplifies the unmarshaling code so that it only need check that persistentHandle is always a persistent object.

If objectHandle references a Transient Object:

a) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if
   1) it is in the hierarchy of TPM_RH_NULL or a firmware-limited or SVN-limited hierarchy,
   2) only the public portion of the object is loaded, or

   NOTE 3 This is for NV space efficiency. Loading an object whose private part is empty would unnecessarily consume NV resources.

   3) the stClear is SET in the object or in an ancestor key.

b) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_HIERARCHY if the object is not in the proper hierarchy as determined by auth.
   1) If auth is TPM_RH_PLATFORM, the proper hierarchy is the Platform hierarchy.
   2) If auth is TPM_RH_OWNER, the proper hierarchy is either the Storage or the Endorsement hierarchy.

c) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_RANGE if persistentHandle is not in the proper range as determined by auth.
   1) If auth is TPM_RH_OWNER, then persistentHandle shall be in the inclusive range of 81 00 00 0016 to 81 7F FF FF16.
   2) If auth is TPM_RH_PLATFORM, then persistentHandle shall be in the inclusive range of 81 80 00 0016 to 81 FF FF FF16.

   NOTE 4 This separation permits the platform (the platform OEM) a range of indexes that will not interfere with indexes used by the TPM owner (the OS or applications).

d) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_DEFINED if a persistent object exists with the same handle as persistentHandle.

e) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_SPACE if insufficient space is available to make the object persistent.

f) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_SPACE if execution of this command will prevent the TPM from being able to hold two transient objects of any kind.

   NOTE 5 This requirement anticipates that a TPM may be implemented such that all TPM memory is non-volatile and not subject to endurance issues. In such case, there is no movement of an object
between memory of different types, and it is necessary that the TPM ensure that it is always possible for the management software to move objects to/from TPM memory in order to ensure that the objects required for command execution can be context restored.

g) If the TPM returns TPM_RC_SUCCESS, the object referenced by objectHandle will not be flushed and both objectHandle and persistentHandle may be used to access the object.

If objectHandle references a persistent object:

h) The TPM shall return TPM_RC_RANGE if objectHandle is not in the proper range as determined by auth. If auth is TPM_RC_OWNER, objectHandle shall be in the inclusive range of $81\text{ D}0\text{ D}0\text{ D}0\text{ D}0_{16}$ to $81\text{ 7}F\text{ FF\text{ FF}_{16}}$. If auth is TPM_RC_PLATFORM, objectHandle may be any valid persistent object handle.

i) If objectHandle is not the same value as persistentHandle, return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

j) If the TPM returns TPM_RC_SUCCESS, objectHandle will be removed from persistent memory and no longer be accessible.

NOTE 5 The persistent object is not converted to a transient object, as this would prevent the immediate revocation of an object by removing it from persistent memory.
28.5.2 Command and Response

Table 209 — TPM2_EvictControl Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_EvictControl {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>objectHandle</td>
<td>the handle of a loaded object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_PERSISTENT</td>
<td>persistentHandle</td>
<td>if objectHandle is a transient object handle, then this is the persistent handle for the object if objectHandle is a persistent object handle, then it shall be the same value as persistentHandle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 210 — TPM2_EvictControl Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28.5.3 Detailed Actions

28.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Context/EvictControl.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "EvictControl_fp.h"

#if CC_EvictControl // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Make a transient object persistent or evict a persistent object
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES an object with 'temporary', 'stClear' or 'publicOnly'
// attribute SET cannot be made persistent
// TPM_RC_HIERARCHY 'auth' cannot authorize the operation in the hierarchy
// of 'evictObject';
// an object in a firmware-bound or SVN-bound hierarchy
// cannot be made persistent.
// TPM_RC_HANDLE 'evictHandle' of the persistent object to be evicted is
// not the same as the 'persistentHandle' argument
// TPM_RC_NV_HANDLE 'persistentHandle' is unavailable
// TPM_RC_NV_SPACE 'persistentHandle' is not in range corresponding to
// the hierarchy of 'evictObject'

TPM_RC TPM2_EvictControl(EvictControl_In* in // IN: input parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC result;
    OBJECT* evictObject;

    // Input Validation
    // Get internal object pointer
    evictObject = HandleToObject(in->objectHandle);

    // Objects in a firmware-limited or SVN-limited hierarchy cannot be made
    // persistent.
    if(HierarchyIsFirmwareLimited(evictObject->hierarchy)
        || HierarchyIsSvnLimited(evictObject->hierarchy))
        return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_EvictControl_objectHandle;

    // Temporary, stClear or public only objects can not be made persistent
    if(evictObject->attributes.temporary == SET
        || evictObject->attributes.stClear == SET
        || evictObject->attributes.publicOnly == SET)
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_EvictControl_objectHandle;

    // If objectHandle refers to a persistent object, it should be the same as
    // input persistentHandle
    if(evictObject->attributes.evict == SET
        && evictObject->evictHandle != in->persistentHandle)
        return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_EvictControl_objectHandle;

    // Additional authorization validation
    if(in->auth == TPM_RH_PLATFORM)
    {
        // To make persistent
        if(evictObject->attributes.evict == CLEAR)
        {
            // PlatformAuth can not set evict object in storage or endorsement
            // hierarchy
```
```
if (evictObject->attributes.ppsHierarchy == CLEAR)
    return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_EvictControl_objectHandle;
    // Platform cannot use a handle outside of platform persistent range.
    if (!NvIsPlatformPersistentHandle(in->persistentHandle))
        return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_EvictControl_persistentHandle;
    } // PlatformAuth can delete any persistent object
    else if (in->auth == TPM_RH_OWNER) {
        // OwnerAuth can not set or clear evict object in platform hierarchy
        if (evictObject->attributes.ppsHierarchy == SET)
            return TPM_RCS_HIERARCHY + RC_EvictControl_objectHandle;
        // Owner cannot use a handle outside of owner persistent range.
        if (evictObject->attributes.evict == CLEAR
            && !NvIsOwnerPersistentHandle(in->persistentHandle))
            return TPM_RCS_RANGE + RC_EvictControl_persistentHandle;
    } else {
        // Other authorization is not allowed in this command and should have been
        // filtered out in unmarshal process
        FAIL(FATAL_ERROR_INTERNAL);
    } // Internal Data Update
    // Change evict state
    if (evictObject->attributes.evict == CLEAR)
    { // Make object persistent
        if (NvFindHandle(in->persistentHandle) != 0)
            return TPM_RC_NV_DEFINED;
        // A TPM_RC_NV_HANDLE or TPM_RC_NV_SPACE error may be returned at this
        // point
        result = NvAddEvictObject(in->persistentHandle, evictObject);
    } else {
        // Delete the persistent object in NV
        result = NvDeleteEvict(evictObject->evictHandle);
    } return result;
#endif // CC_EvictControl
29 Clocks and Timers

29.1 TPM2_ReadClock

29.1.1 General Description

This command reads the current TPMS_TIME_INFO structure that contains the current setting of Time, Clock, resetCount, and restartCount.
29.1.2 Command and Response

**Table 211 — TPM2_ReadClock Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ReadClock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 212 — TPM2_ReadClock Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_TIME_INFO</td>
<td>currentTime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
29.1.3 Detailed Actions

29.1.3.1 /tpm/src/command/ClockTimer/ReadClock.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ReadClock_fp.h"

#ifndef CC_ReadClock // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// read the current TPMS_TIMER_INFO structure settings
*/
TPM_RC TPM2_ReadClock(ReadClock_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    // Command Output
    out->currentTime.time = g_time;
    TimeFillInfo(&out->currentTime.clockInfo);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_ReadClock
```

29.2 TPM2_ClockSet

29.2.1 General Description

This command is used to advance the value of the TPM's Clock. The command will fail if newTime is less than the current value of Clock or if the new time is greater than FF 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 16. If both of these checks succeed, Clock is set to newTime. If either of these checks fails, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE and make no change to Clock.

NOTE This maximum setting would prevent Clock from rolling over to zero for approximately 8,000 years at the real time Clock update rate. If the Clock update rate was set so that TPM time was passing 33 percent faster than real time, it would still be more than 6,000 years before Clock would roll over to zero. Because Clock will not roll over in the lifetime of the TPM, there is no need for external software to deal with the possibility that Clock may wrap around.

If the value of Clock after the update makes the volatile and non-volatile versions of TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.clock differ by more than the reported update interval, then the TPM shall update the non-volatile version of TPMS_CLOCK_INFO.clock before returning.

This command requires Platform Authorization or Owner Authorization.
29.2.2 Command and Response

Table 213 — TPM2_ClockSet Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ClockSet {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT64</td>
<td>newTime</td>
<td>new Clock setting in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 214 — TPM2_ClockSet Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
29.2.3 Detailed Actions

29.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/ClockTimer/ClockSet.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ClockSet_fp.h"

#if CC_ClockSet // Conditional expansion of this file

// Read the current TPMS_TIMER_INFO structure settings
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_NV_RATE          NV is unavailable because of rate limit
// TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE   NV is inaccessible
// TPM_RC_VALUE            invalid new clock

TPM_RC
TPM2_ClockSet(ClockSet_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Input Validation
    // new time can not be bigger than 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF or smaller than
    // current clock
    if(in->newTime > 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFULL || in->newTime < go.clock)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_ClockSet_newTime;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Can't modify the clock if NV is not available.
    RETURN_IF_NV_IS_NOT_AVAILABLE;
    TimeClockUpdate(in->newTime);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

#if CC_ClockSet
```
```
29.3 TPM2_ClockRateAdjust

29.3.1 General Description

This command adjusts the rate of advance of Clock and Time to provide a better approximation to real time.

The rateAdjust value is relative to the current rate and not the nominal rate of advance.

EXAMPLE 1 If this command had been called three times with rateAdjust = TPM_CLOCK_COARSE_SLOWER and once with rateAdjust = TPM_CLOCK_COARSE_FASTER, the net effect will be as if the command had been called twice with rateAdjust = TPM_CLOCK_COARSE_SLOWER.

The range of adjustment shall be sufficient to allow Clock and Time to advance at real time but no more. If the requested adjustment would make the rate advance faster or slower than the nominal accuracy of the input frequency, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_VALUE.

EXAMPLE 2 If the frequency tolerance of the TPM's input clock is +/-10 percent, then the TPM will return TPM_RC_VALUE if the adjustment would make Clock run more than 10 percent faster or slower than nominal. That is, if the input oscillator were nominally 100 megahertz (MHz), then 1 millisecond (ms) would normally take 100,000 counts. The update Clock should be adjustable so that 1 ms is between 90,000 and 110,000 counts.

The interpretation of “fine” and “coarse” adjustments is implementation-specific.

The nominal rate of advance for Clock and Time shall be accurate to within 15 percent. That is, with no adjustment applied, Clock and Time shall be advanced at a rate within 15 percent of actual time.

NOTE If the adjustments are incorrect, it will be possible to make the difference between advance of Clock/Time and real time to be as much as $1.15^2$ or ~1.33.

Changes to the current Clock update rate adjustment need not be persisted across TPM power cycles.
### 29.3.2 Command and Response

**Table 215 — TPM2_ClockRateAdjust Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ClockRateAdjust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@auth</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Handle: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CLOCK_ADJUST</td>
<td>rateAdjust</td>
<td>Adjustment to current Clock update rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 216 — TPM2_ClockRateAdjust Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
29.3.3 Detailed Actions

29.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/ClockTimer/ClockRateAdjust.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ClockRateAdjust_fp.h"

#if CC_ClockRateAdjust  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
    // adjusts the rate of advance of Clock and Timer to provide a better
    // approximation to real time.
*/

TPM_RC
TPM2_ClockRateAdjust(ClockRateAdjust_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // Internal Data Update
    TimeSetAdjustRate(in->rateAdjust);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_ClockRateAdjust
```
30 Capability Commands

30.1 Introduction

The TPM has numerous values that indicate the state, capabilities, and properties of the TPM. These values are needed for proper management of the TPM. The TPM2_GetCapability() command is used to access these values.

TPM2_GetCapability() allows reporting of multiple values in a single call. The values are grouped according to type.

NOTE TPM2_TestParms() is used to determine if a TPM supports a particular combination of algorithm parameters.

The TPM can permit specific data (such as TPM configurations) to be set in the TPM; this data is set with TPM2_SetCapability(). TPM2_SetCapability() sets only one property at a time.

30.2 TPM2_GetCapability

30.2.1 General Description

This command returns various information regarding the TPM and its current state.

The capability parameter determines the category of data returned. The property parameter selects the first value of the selected category to be returned. If there is no property that corresponds to the value of property, the next higher value is returned, if it exists.

EXAMPLE 1 The list of handles of transient objects currently loaded in the TPM may be read one at a time. On the first read, set the property to TRANSIENT_FIRST and propertyCount to one. If a transient object is present, the lowest numbered handle is returned and moreData will be YES if transient objects with higher handles are loaded. On the subsequent call, use returned handle value plus 1 in order to access the next higher handle.

The propertyCount parameter indicates the number of capabilities in the indicated group that are requested. The TPM will return no more than the number of requested values (propertyCount) or until the last property of the requested type has been returned.

NOTE 1 The type of the capability is derived from a combination of capability and property.

NOTE 2 If the property selects an unimplemented property, the next higher implemented property is returned.

When all of the properties of the requested type have been returned, the moreData parameter in the response will be set to NO. Otherwise, it will be set to YES.

NOTE 3 The moreData parameter will be YES if there are more properties even if the requested number of capabilities has been returned.

The TPM is not required to return more than one value at a time. It is not required to provide the same number of values in response to subsequent requests.

EXAMPLE 2 A TPM may return 4 properties in response to a TPM2_GetCapability(capability = TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTY, property = TPM_PT_MANUFACTURER, propertyCount = 8) and for a latter request with the same parameters, the TPM may return as few as one and as many as 8 values.

When the TPM is in Failure mode, a TPM is required to allow use of this command for access of the following capabilities:
• TPM_PT_MANUFACTURER
• TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_1
• TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_2 (NOTE 4)
• TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_3 (NOTE 4)
• TPM_PT_VENDOR_STRING_4 (NOTE 4)
• TPM_PT_VENDOR_TPM_TYPE
• TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_1
• TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_2

NOTE 4 If the vendor string does not require one of these values, the property type does not need to exist.

A vendor may optionally allow the TPM to return other values.

If in Failure mode and a capability is requested that is not available in Failure mode, the TPM shall return no value.

EXAMPLE 3 Assume the TPM is in Failure mode and the TPM only supports reporting of the minimum required set of properties (the limited subset of TPML_TAGGED_TPM_PROPERTY values). If a TPM2_GetCapability is received requesting a capability that has a property type value greater than TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_2, the TPM can return a zero-length list with the moreData parameter set to NO or return the property TPM_PT_FIRMWARE_VERSION_2. If the property type is less than TPM_PT_MANUFACTURER, the TPM will return properties beginning with TPM_PT_MANUFACTURER.

In Failure mode, tag is required to be TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_FAILURE.

The capability categories and the types of the return values are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capability</th>
<th>property</th>
<th>Return Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ALGS</td>
<td>TPM_ALG_ID(1)</td>
<td>TPML_ALG_PROPERTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_HANDLES</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE</td>
<td>TPML_HANDLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPML_CCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_PP_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_AUDIT_COMMANDS</td>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>TPML_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_PCRS</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
<td>TPML_PCR_SELECTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTIES</td>
<td>TPM_PT</td>
<td>TPML_TAGGED_TPM_PROPERTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_PCR_PROPERTIES</td>
<td>TPM_PT_PCR</td>
<td>TPML_TAGGED_PCR_PROPERTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ECC_CURVES</td>
<td>TPM_ECC_CURVE(1)</td>
<td>TPML_ECC_CURVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_AUTH_POLICIES</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE(2)</td>
<td>TPML_TAGGED_POLICY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_ACT(4)</td>
<td>TPM_HANDLE(2)</td>
<td>TPML_ACT_DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP_VENDOR_PROPERTY</td>
<td>manufacturer specific</td>
<td>manufacturer-specific values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:
(1) The TPM_ALG_ID or TPM_ECC_CURVE is cast to a UINT32
(2) The TPM will return TPM_RC_VALUE if the handle does not reference the range for permanent handles.
(3) TPM_CAP_AUTH_POLICIES was added in revision 01.32.
(4) TPM_CAP_ACT was added in revision 01.56.
Part 3: Commands

- **TPM_CAP_ALGS** – Returns a list of TPMS_ALG_PROPERTIES. Each entry is an algorithm ID and a set of properties of the algorithm.

- **TPM_CAP_HANDLES** – Returns a list of all of the handles within the handle range of the *property* parameter. The range of the returned handles is determined by the handle type (the most-significant octet (MSO) of the *property*). Any of the defined handle types is allowed.

  EXAMPLE 4  If the MSO of *property* is TPM_HT_NV_INDEX, then the TPM will return a list of NV Index values.

  EXAMPLE 5  If the MSO of property is TPM_HT_PCR, then the TPM will return a list of PCR.

  o For this capability, use of TPM_HT_LOADED_SESSION and TPM_HT_SAVED_SESSION is allowed. Requesting handles with a handle type of TPM_HT_LOADED_SESSION will return handles for loaded sessions. The returned handle values will have a handle type of either TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION or TPM_HT_POLICY_SESSION. If saved sessions are requested, all returned values will have the TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION handle type because the TPM does not track the session type of saved sessions.

  NOTE 5  TPM_HT_LOADED_SESSION and TPM_HT_HMAC_SESSION have the same value, as do TPM_HT_SAVED_SESSION and TPM_HT_POLICY_SESSION. It is not possible to request that the TPM return a list of loaded HMAC sessions without including the policy sessions.

  o For this capability, TPM_RH_SVN_OWNER_BASE, TPM_RH_SVN_ENDORSEMENT_BASE, TPM_RH_SVN_PLATFORM_BASE, and TPM_RH_NULL_BASE handles may be returned. There are separate handles for each SVN from 0 to the firmware’s current SVN (up to UINT16_MAX), which are not returned. Instead, only the handles associated with SVN 0 are returned (i.e., 0x40010000, 0x40020000, 0x40030000, and 0x40040000). The user can query the firmware’s current SVN via TPM2_GetCapability to determine which SVN-specific handles are available for use.

- **TPM_CAP_COMMANDS** – Returns a list of the command attributes for all of the commands implemented in the TPM, starting with the TPM_CC indicated by the *property* parameter. If vendor-specific commands are implemented, the vendor-specific command attribute with the lowest *commandIndex*, is returned after the non-vendor-specific (base) command.

  NOTE 6  The type of the property parameter is a TPM_CC while the type of the returned list is TPML_CCA.
• TPM_CAP_PP_COMMANDS – Returns a list of all of the commands currently requiring Physical Presence for confirmation of platform authorization. The list will start with the TPM_CC indicated by property.

• TPM_CAP_AUDIT_COMMANDS – Returns a list of all of the commands currently set for command audit.

• TPM_CAP_PCRS – Returns the current allocation of PCR in a TPML_PCR_SELECTION. The property parameter shall be zero. The TPM will always respond to this command with the full PCR allocation and moreData will be NO.

The TPML_PCR_SELECTION must include a TPMS_PCR_SELECTION for each PCR bank in which there is at least one allocated PCR. The TPML_PCR_SELECTION may return a TPMS_PCR_SELECTION for each implemented PCR bank. The TPML_PCR_SELECTION may return a TPMS_PCR_SELECTION for each implemented hash algorithm.

• TPM_CAP_TPM_PROPERTIES – Returns a list of tagged properties. The tag is a TPM_PT and the property is a 32-bit value. The properties are returned in groups. Each property group is on a 256-value boundary (that is, the boundary occurs when the TPM_PT is evenly divisible by 256). The TPM will only return values in the same group as the property parameter in the command.

• TPM_CAP_PCR_PROPERTIES – Returns a list of tagged PCR properties. The tag is a TPM_PT_PCR and the property is a TPMS_PCR_SELECT.

The input command property is a TPM_PT_PCR (see TPM 2.0 Part 2 for PCR properties to be requested) that specifies the first property to be returned. If propertyCount is greater than 1, the list of properties begins with that property and proceeds in TPM_PT_PCR sequence.

Each item in the list is a TPMS_PCR_SELECT structure that contains a bitmap of all PCR.

NOTE 7 A PCR index in all banks (all hash algorithms) has the same properties, so the hash algorithm is not specified here.

• TPM_CAP_TPM_ECC_CURVES – Returns a list of ECC curve identifiers currently available for use in the TPM.

• TPM_CAP_AUTH_POLICIES - Returns a list of tagged policies reporting the authorization policies for the permanent handles.

• TPM_CAP_ACT – Returns a list of TPMS_ACT_DATA, each of which contains the handle for the ACT, the remaining time before it expires, and the ACT attributes.

The moreData parameter will have a value of YES if there are more values of the requested type that were not returned.

If no next capability exists, the TPM will return a zero-length list and moreData will have a value of NO.

NOTE 8 Additional settable capabilities may be defined by a TCG Registry.
### 30.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 217 — TPM2_GetCapability Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_GetCapability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CAP</td>
<td>capability</td>
<td>group selection; determines the format of the response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>property</td>
<td>further definition of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>propertyCount</td>
<td>number of properties of the indicated type to return</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 218 — TPM2_GetCapability Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>moreData</td>
<td>flag to indicate if there are more values of this type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_CAPABILITY_DATA</td>
<td>capabilityData</td>
<td>the capability data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30.2.3 Detailed Actions

30.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Capability/GetCapability.c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "GetCapability_fp.h"

#if CC_GetCapability    // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
   // This command returns various information regarding the TPM and its current
   // state
   */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_HANDLE       value of 'property' is in an unsupported handle range
//   for the TPM_CAP_HANDLES 'capability' value
//   TPM_RC_VALUE        invalid 'capability'; or 'property' is not 0 for the
//   TPM_CAP_PCRS 'capability' value
TPM_RC
TPM2_GetCapability(GetCapability_In* in,    // IN: input parameter list
                    GetCapability_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
                    )
{
    TPMU_CAPABILITIES* data = &out->capabilityData.data;
    // Command Output
    // Set output capability type the same as input type
    out->capabilityData.capability = in->capability;

    switch(in->capability)
    {
    case TPM_CAP_ALGS:
        out->moreData = AlgorithmCapGetImplemented(
            (TPM_ALG_ID)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->algorithms);
        break;
    case TPM_CAP_HANDLES:
        out->moreData = NvCapGetPersistent(
            (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
        break;
    case TPM_CAP_PCRS:
        switch(HandleGetType((TPM_HANDLE)in->property))
        {
        case TPM_HT_TRANSIENT:
            // Get list of handles of loaded transient objects
            out->moreData = ObjectCapGetLoaded(
                (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_PERSISTENT:
            // Get list of handles of persistent objects
            out->moreData = NvCapGetPersistent(
                (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_NV_INDEX:
            // Get list of defined NV index
            out->moreData = NvCapGetIndex(
                (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_LOADED_SESSION:
            // Get list of handles of loaded sessions
            out->moreData = SessionCapGetLoaded(
                (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
            break;
        case TPM_HT_SAVED_SESSION:
            // Get list of handles of
            out->moreData = SessionCapGetSaved(
                (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
            break;
        }
case TPM_HT_PCR:
    // Get list of handles of PCR
    out->moreData = PCRCapGetHandles(
        (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
    break;

case TPM_HT_PERMANENT:
    // Get list of permanent handles
    out->moreData = PermanentCapGetHandles(
        (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->handles);
    break;

default:
    // Unsupported input handle type
    return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_GetCapability_property;
    break;
}

break;

// Input property must be 0
if(in->property != 0)
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_GetCapability_property;
out->moreData = PCRCapGetAllocation(in->propertyCount, &data->assignedPCR);
break;

case TPM_CAP_PCRS:
    out->moreData = PCRCapGetProperties(
        (TPM_PT_PCR)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->pcrProperties);
    break;

# if ALG_ECC

case TPM_CAP_ECC_CURVES:
    out->moreData = CryptCapGetECCCurve(
        (TPM_ECC_CURVE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->eccCurves);
    break;
# endif // ALG_ECC

# if ACT_SUPPORT

case TPM_CAP_ACT:
    if(((TPM_RH)in->property < TPM_RH_ACT_0) || ((TPM_RH)in->property > TPM_RH_ACT_F))
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_GetCapability_property;
    out->moreData = ActGetCapabilityData(
        (TPM_HANDLE)in->property, in->propertyCount, &data->actData);
    break;
# else
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_GetCapability_property;
# endif // ACT_SUPPORT
case TPM_CAP_VENDOR_PROPERTY:
    // vendor property is not implemented
    default:
        // Unsupported TPM CAP value
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_GetCapability_capability;
        break;
    }
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    }
#endif  // CC_GetCapability

126      case TPM_CAP_VENDOR_PROPERTY:
127          // vendor property is not implemented
128          default:
129              // Unsupported TPM CAP value
130              return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_GetCapability_capability;
131              break;
132          }
133          return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
134      }
135  }
136  #endif  // CC_GetCapability
137  
30.3 TPM2_TestParms

30.3.1 General Description

This command is used to check to see if specific combinations of algorithm parameters are supported. The TPM will unmarshal the provided TPMT_PUBLIC_PARMS. If the parameters unmarshal correctly, then the TPM will return TPM_RC_SUCCESS, indicating that the parameters are valid for the TPM. The TPM will return the appropriate unmarshaling error if a parameter is not valid.
### 30.3.2 Command and Response

**Table 219 — TPM2_TestParms Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_TestParms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_PUBLIC_PARMS</td>
<td>parameters</td>
<td>algorithm parameters to be validated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 220 — TPM2_TestParms Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30.3.3 Detailed Actions

30.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Capability/TestParms.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "TestParms_fp.h"

#if CC_TestParms  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// TestParms
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_TestParms(TestParms_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    // Input parameter is not reference in command action
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);
    // The parameters are tested at unmarshal process. We do nothing in command
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_TestParms
```

30.4 TPM2_SetCapability

30.4.1 General Description

This command is used to set specific data in the TPM, such as TPM configurations, which may change the TPM’s function and behavior.

Examples of TPM configurations are enabling or disabling TPM features or activating the TPM to operate in a special mode that restricts the TPM’s functionality.

Similar to TPM2_GetCapability(), the data to be set is determined via a capability and property value, where a capability groups several properties of the same type.

Unlike TPM2_GetCapability(), which returns a list of properties, TPM2_SetCapability() sets only one property at a time.

NOTE 1 Setting one property at a time simplifies the implementation and error handling.

Properties set with TPM2_SetCapability() may be read with TPM2_GetCapability() as both commands use the same capability and property type.

NOTE 2 Some (settable) properties may be exempt from being readable with TPM2_GetCapability(), e.g., if the data is considered confidential.

NOTE 3 The setCapabilityData parameter is a sized buffer to enable parameter encryption. This allows e.g. the vendor-specific authorization values (TPM_RH_AUTH_00-FF) to be set using this command.

The authorization for this command depends on the capability value.

NOTE 4 TPM2_SetCapability() was added in revision 1.79.
### 30.4.2 Command and Response

#### Table 221 — TPM2_SetCapability Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_SetCapability {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_HIERARCHY_AUTH+</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_LOCKOUT, TPM_RH_ENDORSEMENT,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER, TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_RH_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_SET_CAPABILITY_DATA</td>
<td>setCapabilityData</td>
<td>the capability data to be set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 222 — TPM2_SetCapability Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30.4.3 Detailed Actions

30.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Capability/SetCapability.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "SetCapability_fp.h"

#if CC_SetCapability // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification) */

// This command allows configuration of the TPM's capabilities.

// Return Type: TPM_RC

// TPM_RC_HANDLE value of 'property' is in an unsupported handle range
// TPM_RC_VALUE for the TPM_CAP_HANDLES 'capability' value
// invalid 'capability'

TPM_RC
TPM2_SetCapability(SetCapability_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // This reference implementation does not implement any settable capabilities.
    return TPM_RCS_VALUE + SetCapability_setCapabilityData;
}
#endif // CC_SetCapability
```
31 Non-volatile Storage

31.1 Introduction

The NV commands are used to create, update, read, and delete allocations of space in NV memory. Before an Index may be used, it must be defined (TPM2_NV_DefineSpace()).

An Index may be modified if the proper write authorization is provided or read if the proper read authorization is provided. Different controls are available for reading and writing.

An Index may have an Index-specific authValue and authPolicy. The authValue may be used to authorize reading if TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD is SET and writing if TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE is SET. The authPolicy may be used to authorize reading if TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD is SET and writing if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET.

For commands that have both authHandle and nvIndex parameters, authHandle can be an NV Index, Platform Authorization, or Owner Authorization. If authHandle is an NV Index, it must be the same as nvIndex (TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION).

TPMA_NV_PPREAD and TPMA_NV_PPWRITE indicate if reading or writing of the NV Index may be authorized by platformAuth or platformPolicy.

TPMA_NV_OWNERREAD and TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE indicate if reading or writing of the NV Index may be authorized by ownerAuth or ownerPolicy.

If an operation on an NV index requires authorization, and the authHandle parameter is the handle of an NV Index, then the nvIndex parameter must have the same value or the TPM will return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION.

NOTE 1 This check ensures that the authorization that was provided is associated with the NV Index being authorized.

For creating an Index, Owner Authorization may not be used if shEnable is CLEAR and Platform Authorization may not be used if phEnable or phEnableNV is CLEAR.

If an Index was defined using Platform Authorization, then that Index is not accessible when phEnableNV is CLEAR. If an Index was defined using Owner Authorization, then that Index is not accessible when shEnable is CLEAR.

For read access control, any combination of TPMA_NV_PPREAD, TPMA_NV_OWNERREAD, TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD, or TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD is allowed as long as at least one is SET.

For write access control, any combination of TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, or TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is allowed as long as at least one is SET.

If an Index has been defined and not written, then any operation on the NV Index that requires read authorization will fail (TPM_RC_NV_INITIALIZED). This check may be made before or after other authorization checks but shall be performed before checking the NV Index authValue. An authorization failure due to the NV Index not having been written shall not be logged by the dictionary attack logic.

If TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR is SET, then the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN will be CLEAR on each TPM2_Startup(TPM_SU_CLEAR). TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR shall not be SET if the nvIndexType is TPM_NT_COUNTER.

The code in the “Detailed Actions” clause of each command is written to interface with an implementation-dependent library that allows access to NV memory. The actions assume no specific layout of the structure of the NV data.

Only one NV Index may be directly referenced in a command.

NOTE 2 This means that, if authHandle references an NV Index, then nvIndex will have the same value. However, this does not limit the number of changes that may occur as side effects. For example, any number of NV Indexes might be relocated as a result of deleting or adding a NV Index.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TPM2_NV_Commands</th>
<th>TPM_HT Types Supported</th>
<th>TPMI_NV Type</th>
<th>TPM2B_NV Public</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NV_DefineSpace</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_LEGACY_INDEX</td>
<td>NV_PUBLIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV_DefineSpace2</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_DEFINED_INDEX</td>
<td>NV_PUBLIC_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV.UndefineSpace</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_DEFINED_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial</td>
<td>TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_DEFINED_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV_Read</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV_Write</td>
<td>TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etc.</td>
<td>TPM_HT_PERMANENT_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV_ReadPublic</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_LEGACY_INDEX</td>
<td>NV_PUBLIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV_ReadPublic2</td>
<td>TPM_HT_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>NV_PUBLIC_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_HT_PERMANENT_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV</td>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_EXP_INDEX</td>
<td>NV_PUBLIC_EXP_ATTR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.2 NV Counters

When an Index has the TPM_NT_COUNTER attribute, it behaves as a monotonic counter and may only be updated using TPM2_NV_Increment().

When an NV counter is created, the TPM shall initialize the 8-octet counter value with a number that is greater than any count value for any NV counter on the TPM since the time of TPM manufacture.

An NV counter may be defined with the TPMA_NV_ORDERLY attribute to indicate that the NV Index is expected to be modified at a high frequency and that the data is only persisted to NV when the TPM goes through an orderly shutdown process. The TPM may update the counter value in RAM and occasionally update the non-volatile version of the counter. An orderly shutdown is one occasion to update the non-volatile count. If the difference between the volatile and non-volatile version of the counter becomes as large as MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT, this shall be another occasion for updating the non-volatile count.

Before an NV counter can be used, the TPM shall validate that the count is not less than a previously reported value. If the TPMA_NV_ORDERLY attribute is not SET, or if the TPM experienced an orderly shutdown, then the count is assumed to be correct. If the TPMA_NV_ORDERLY attribute is SET, and the TPM shutdown was not orderly, then the TPM shall OR MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT to the contents of the non-volatile counter and set that as the current count.

NOTE 1 Because the TPM would have updated the NV Index if the difference between the count values was equal to MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT + 1, the highest value that could have been in the NV Index is MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT so it is safe to restore that value.

NOTE 2 The TPM is permitted to implement the RAM portion of the counter such that the effective value of the NV counter is the sum of both the volatile and non-volatile parts. If so, then the TPM may initialize the RAM version of the counter to MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT and no update of NV is necessary.

NOTE 3 When a new NV counter is created, the TPM can search all the counters to determine which has the highest value. In this search, the TPM would use the sum of the non-volatile and RAM portions of the counter. The RAM portion of the counter shall be properly initialized to reflect shutdown process (orderly or not) of the TPM.
31.3 TPM2_NV_DefineSpace

31.3.1 General Description

This command defines the attributes of an NV Index and causes the TPM to reserve space to hold the data associated with the NV Index. If a definition already exists at the NV Index, the TPM will return TPM_RC_NV_DEFINED.

The TPM will return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if `nvIndexType` has a reserved value in `publicInfo`.

NOTE 1 It is not required that any of these three attributes be set.

The TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if `TPMA_NV_WRITTEN`, `TPMA_NV_READLOCKED`, or `TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED` is SET.

If `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_COUNTER, TPM_NT_BITS, TPM_NT_PIN_FAIL, or TPM_NT_PIN_PASS, then `publicInfo->dataSize` shall be set to eight (8) or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

If `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_EXTEND, then `publicInfo->dataSize` shall match the digest size of the `publicInfo.nameAlg` or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

NOTE 2 TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES could be returned by a TPM that is based on the reference code of older versions of the specification but the correct response for this error is TPM_RC_SIZE.

If the NV Index is an ordinary Index and `publicInfo->dataSize` is larger than supported by the TPM implementation, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

If `publicInfo->dataSize` is larger than MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE and `TPMA_NV_WRITEALL` is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SIZE.

NOTE 3 The limit for the data size can vary according to the type of the index. For example, if the index has `TPMA_NV_ORDERLY` SET, then the maximum size of an ordinary NV Index may be less than the size of an ordinary NV Index that has `TPMA_NV_ORDERLY` CLEAR.

At least one of `TPMA_NV_PPREAD`, `TPMA_NV_OWNERREAD`, `TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD`, or `TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD` shall be SET or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

At least one of `TPMA_NV_PPWRITE`, `TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE`, `TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE`, or `TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE` shall be SET or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If `TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR` is SET, then `nvIndexType` shall not be TPM_NT_COUNTER or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If `platformAuth/platformPolicy` is used for authorization, then `TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE` shall be SET in `publicInfo`. If `ownerAuth/ownerPolicy` is used for authorization, `TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE` shall be CLEAR in `publicInfo`. If `TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE` is not set correctly for the authorization, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If `TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE` is SET, then the authorization shall be with Platform Authorization or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 4 All NV Indices created by the owner are removed by TPM2_Clear(). In contrast, the platform is permitted to create indices that can never be deleted, because such indices might be essential for proper platform operation. It could be impossible to delete an Index if its policy cannot be satisfied, for example.

If `nvIndexType` is TPM NT_PIN_FAIL, then `TPMA_NV_NO_DA` shall be SET. Otherwise, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE 5 The intent of a PIN Fail index is that its DA protection is on a per-index basis, not based on the global DA protection. This avoids conflict over which type of dictionary attack protection is in use.
If `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_PIN_FAIL or TPM_NT_PIN_PASS, then at least one of TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, or TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE shall be SET or the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE shall be CLEAR. Otherwise, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

**NOTE 6** If TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE was SET for a PIN Pass index, a user knowing the authorization value could decrease pinCount or increase pinLimit, defeating the purpose of a PIN Pass index. The requirement is also enforced for a PIN Fail index for consistency.

If the implementation does not support TPM2_NV_Increment(), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_COUNTER.

If the implementation does not support TPM2_NV_SetBits(), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_BITS.

If the implementation does not support TPM2_NV_Extend(), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if `nvIndexType` is TPM_NT_EXTEND.

If the implementation does not support TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial(), the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES if TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE is SET.

After the successful completion of this command, the NV Index exists but TPMA_NV_WRITTEN will be CLEAR. Any access of the NV data will return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED.

In some implementations, an NV Index with the TPM_NT_COUNTER attribute may require special TPM resources that provide higher endurance than regular NV. For those implementations, if this command fails because of lack of resources, the TPM will return TPM_RC_NV_SPACE.

The value of `auth` is saved in the created structure. The size of `auth` is limited to be no larger than the size of the digest produced by the NV Index's `nameAlg` (TPM_RC_SIZE).
31.3.2 Command and Response

Table 224 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_DefineSpace {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP} Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC</td>
<td>publicInfo</td>
<td>the public parameters of the NV area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 225 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.3.3 Detailed Actions

31.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_DefineSpace.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_DefineSpace_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_DefineSpace  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
    // Define a NV index space
    */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_HIERARCHY            for authorizations using TPM_RH_PLATFORM
// phEnable_NV is clear preventing access to NV
data in the platform hierarchy.
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES           attributes of the index are not consistent
// TPM_RC_NV_DEFINED           index already exists
// TPM_RC_NV_SPACE             insufficient space for the index
// TPM_R_SIZE                 'auth->size' or 'publicInfo->authPolicy.size' is
//                              larger than the digest size of
//                              'publicInfo->nameAlg'; or 'publicInfo->dataSize'
// is not consistent with 'publicInfo->attributes'
// (this includes the case when the index is
// larger than a MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE but the
// TPMA_NV_WRITEALL attribute is SET)

TPM_RC TPM2_NV_DefineSpace(NV_DefineSpace_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    // This command only supports TPM_HT_NV_INDEX-typed NV indices.
    if(HandleGetType(in->publicInfo.nvPublic.nvIndex) != TPM_HT_NV_INDEX)
    {
        return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_NV_DefineSpace_publicInfo;
    }
    return NvDefineSpace(in->authHandle,
        in->auth,
        &in->publicInfo.nvPublic,
        RC_NV_DefineSpace_authHandle,
        RC_NV_DefineSpace_auth,
        RC_NV_DefineSpace_publicInfo);
}
#endif  // CC_NV_DefineSpace
```
31.4 TPM2_NV.UndefineSpace

31.4.1 General Description

This command removes an Index from the TPM.
If \texttt{nvIndex} is not defined, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

If \texttt{nvIndex} references an Index that has its TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION unless Platform Authorization is provided.

If \texttt{nvIndex} references an Index that has its TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE attribute SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

\textbf{NOTE} An Index with TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE CLEAR may be deleted with Platform Authorization as long as shEnable is SET. If shEnable is CLEAR, indexes created using Owner Authorization are not accessible even for deletion by the platform.
31.4.2 Command and Response

Table 226 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_UndefineSpace {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_DEFINED_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index to remove from NV space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 227 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.4.3 Detailed Actions

31.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_UndefineSpace.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_UndefineSpace_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_UndefineSpace // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification)
// Delete an NV Index
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//      TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE is SET in the Index
//      referenced by 'nvIndex' so this command may
// not be used to delete this Index (see
// TPM2_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial())
//      TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION         attempt to use ownerAuth to delete an index
// created by the platform

TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_UndefineSpace(NV_UndefineSpace_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
){
    NV_REF    locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);

    // Input Validation
    // This command can't be used to delete an index with TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE SET
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, POLICY_DELETE))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV.UndefineSpace_nvIndex;

    // The owner may only delete an index that was defined with ownerAuth. The
    // platform may delete an index that was created with either authorization.
    if(in->authHandle == TPM_RH_OWNER
       && IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, PLATFORMCREATE))
        return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Call implementation dependent internal routine to delete NV index
    return NvDeleteIndex(nvIndex, locator);
}
#endif // CC_NV_UndefineSpace
```
31.5 TPM2_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial

31.5.1 General Description

This command allows removal of a platform-created NV Index that has TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE SET.

This command requires that the policy of the NV Index be satisfied before the NV Index may be deleted. Because administrative role is required, the policy must contain a command that sets the policy command code to TPM_CC_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial. This indicates that the policy that is being used is a policy that is for this command, and not a policy that would approve another use. That is, authority to use an entity does not grant authority to undefine the entity.

Since the index is deleted, the Empty Buffer is used as the authValue when generating the response HMAC.

If nvIndex is not defined, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_HANDLE.

If nvIndex references an Index that has its TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE or TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE attribute CLEAR, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

NOTE An Index with TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE CLEAR can be deleted with TPM2_NV.UndefineSpace() as long as shEnable is SET. If shEnable is CLEAR, indexes created using Owner Authorization are not accessible even for deletion by the platform.
### 31.5.2 Command and Response

Table 228 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_DEFINED_INDEX</td>
<td>@nvIndex</td>
<td>Index to be deleted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PLATFORM</td>
<td>@platform</td>
<td>TPM_RH_PLATFORM + {PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 229 — TPM2_NV_UndefineSpaceSpecial Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.5.3 Detailed Actions

31.5.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial.c

```
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial_fp.h"
#include "SessionProcess_fp.h"

#if CC_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
 // Delete a NV index that requires policy to delete.
 */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
TPM_RCATTRIBUTES TPM_NV_POLICY_DELETE is not SET in the
// Index referenced by 'nvIndex'
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial(
NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC result;
    NV_REF locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    // Input Validation
    // This operation only applies when the TPMA_NV_POLICY_DELETE attribute is SET
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, POLICY_DELETE))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial_nvIndex;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Call implementation dependent internal routine to delete NV index
    result = NvDeleteIndex(nvIndex, locator);
    // If we just removed the index providing the authorization, make sure that the
    // authorization session computation is modified so that it doesn't try to
    // access the authValue of the just deleted index
    if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        SessionRemoveAssociationToHandle(in->nvIndex);
    return result;
}
#endif // CC_NV.UndefineSpaceSpecial
```
31.6  TPM2_NV_ReadPublic

31.6.1  General Description

This command is used to read the public area and Name of an NV Index. The public area of an Index is not privacy-sensitive, and no authorization is required to read this data.
31.6.2 Command and Response

### Table 230 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_ReadPublic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 231 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC</td>
<td>nvPublic</td>
<td>the public area of the NV Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>nvName</td>
<td>the Name of the nvIndex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 31.6.3 Detailed Actions

#### 31.6.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_ReadPublic.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_ReadPublic_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_ReadPublic  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
    // Read the public information of a NV index
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_ReadPublic(NV_ReadPublic_In* in,  // IN: input parameter list
                    NV_ReadPublic_Out* out  // OUT: output parameter list
                   )
{
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex;
    // This command only supports TPM_HT_NV_INDEX-typed NV indices.
    if(HandleGetType(in->nvIndex) != TPM_HT_NV_INDEX)
    {
        return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_NV_ReadPublic_nvIndex;
    }
    nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, NULL);
    // Command Output
    // Copy index public data to output
    out->nvPublic.nvPublic = nvIndex->publicArea;
    // Compute NV name
    NvGetIndexName(nvIndex, &out->nvName);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_NV_ReadPublic
```
### 31.7 TPM2_NV_Write

#### 31.7.1 General Description

This command writes a value to an area in NV memory that was previously defined by TPM2_NV_DefineSpace().

Proper authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPWRITE; TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE; TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE; and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If the TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED attribute of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

**NOTE 1** If authorization sessions are present, they are checked before checks to see if writes to the NV Index are locked.

If nvIndexType is TPM_NT_COUNTER, TPM_NTBITS or TPM_NT_EXTEND, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If offset and the size field of data add to a value that is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index referenced by nvIndex, the TPM shall return an error (TPM_RC_NV_RANGE). The implementation may return an error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if it performs an additional check and determines that offset is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index.

If the TPMA_NV_WRITEALL attribute of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_RANGE if the size of the data parameter of the command is not the same as the data field of the NV Index.

If all checks succeed, the TPM will merge the data.size octets of data.buffer value into the nvIndex→data starting at nvIndex→data[offset]. If the NV memory is implemented with a technology that has endurance limitations, the TPM shall check that the merged data is different from the current contents of the NV Index and only perform a write to NV memory if they differ.

After successful completion of this command, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN for the NV Index will be SET.

**NOTE 2** Once SET, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN remains SET until the NV Index is undefined or the NV Index is cleared.
31.7.2 Command and Response

### Table 232 — TPM2_NV_Write Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_Write {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index of the area to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_NV_BUFFER</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>the data to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>the octet offset into the NV Area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 233 — TPM2_NV_Write Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.7.3 Detailed Actions

31.7.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_Write.c

```
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_Write_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_Write // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Write to a NV index
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC

TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES Index referenced by 'nvIndex' has either
// TPMA_NV_BITS, TPMA_NV_COUNTER, or
// TPMA_NV_EVENT attribute SET

TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION the authorization was valid but the
// authorizing entity ('authHandle')
// is not allowed to write to the Index
// referenced by 'nvIndex'

TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED Index referenced by 'nvIndex' is write
// locked

TPM_RC_NV_RANGE if TPMA_NV_WRITEALL is set then the write
// is not the size of the Index referenced by
// 'nvIndex'; otherwise, the write extends
// beyond the limits of the Index

TPM_RC

TPM2_NV_Write(NV_Write_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, NULL);
    TPMA_NV attributes = nvIndex->publicArea.attributes;
    TPM_RC result;

    // Input Validation

    // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION
    // or TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED
    result = NvWriteAccessChecks(in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Bits index, extend index or counter index may not be updated by
    // TPM2_NV_Write
    if(IsNvCounterIndex(attributes) || IsNvBitsIndex(attributes)
        || IsNvExtendIndex(attributes))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES;

    // Make sure that the offset is not too large
    if(in->offset > nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_NV_Write_offset;

    // Make sure that the selection is within the range of the Index
    if(in->data.t.size > (nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize - in->offset))
        return TPM_RC_NV_RANGE;

    // If this index requires a full sized write, make sure that input range is
    // full sized
    // Note: if the requested size is the same as the Index data size, then offset
    // will have to be zero. Otherwise, the range check above would have failed.
    if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(attributes, TPMA_NV, WRITEALL)
        && in->data.t.size < nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize)
```
return TPM_RC_NV_RANGE;

// Internal Data Update

// Perform the write. This called routine will SET the TPMA_NW_WRITTEN
// attribute if it has not already been SET. If NV isn't available, an error
// will be returned.
return NvWriteIndexData(nvIndex, in->offset, in->data.t.size, in->data.t.buffer);
}
#endif // CC_NV_Write
31.8 TPM2_NV_Increment

31.8.1 General Description

This command is used to increment the value in an NV Index that has the TPM_NT_COUNTER attribute. The data value of the NV Index is incremented by one.

NOTE 1 The NV Index counter is an unsigned value.

If `nvIndexType` is not TPM_NT_COUNTER in the indicated NV Index, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

Proper authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED is SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

If TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is CLEAR, it will be SET.

If TPMA_NV_ORDERLY is SET, and the difference between the volatile and non-volatile versions of this field is greater than MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT, then the non-volatile version of the counter is updated.

NOTE 2 If a TPM implements TPMA_NV_ORDERLY and an Index is defined with TPMA_NV_ORDERLY and TPM_NT_COUNTER both SET, then in the event of a non-orderly shutdown, the non-volatile value for the counter Index will be advanced by MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT at the next TPM2_Startup().

NOTE 3 An allowed implementation would keep a counter value in NV and a resettable counter in RAM. The reported value of the NV Index would be the sum of the two values. When the RAM count increments past the maximum allowed value (MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT), the non-volatile version of the count is updated with the sum of the values and the RAM count is reset to zero.
### 31.8.2 Command and Response

#### Table 234 — TPM2_NV_Increment Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_Increment {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index to increment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 235 — TPM2_NV_Increment Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.8.3 Detailed Actions

31.8.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_Increment.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_Increment_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_Increment // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Increment a NV counter
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
//    TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               NV index is not a counter
//    TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION         authorization failure
//    TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED                Index is write locked
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_Increment(NV_Increment_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC    result;
    NV_REF    locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    UINT64    countValue;

    // Input Validation
    // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION
    // or TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED
    result = NvWriteAccessCheck(in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Make sure that this is a counter
    if(!IsNvCounterIndex(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_Increment_nvIndex;

    // Internal Data Update
    // If counter index is not been written, initialize it
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, WRITTEN))
        countValue = NvReadMaxCount();
    else
        // Read NV data in native format for TPM CPU.
        countValue = NvGetUINT64Data(nvIndex, locator);

    // Do the increment
    countValue++;

    // Write NV data back. A TPM_RC_NV_UNAVAILABLE or TPM_RC_NV_RATE error may
    // be returned at this point. If necessary, this function will set the
    // TPMA_NV_WRITTEN attribute
    result = NvWriteUINT64Data(nvIndex, countValue);
    if(result == TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        { // If a counter just rolled over, then force the NV update.
            // Note, if this is an orderly counter, then the write-back needs to be
            // forced, for other counters, the write-back will happen anyway
            if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, ORDERLY)
                && (countValue & MAX_ORDERLY_COUNT) == 0)
                { // Need to force an NV update of orderly data
```

```c
```
60           SET_NV_UPDATE(UT_ORDERLY);
61           }
62       }
63       return result;
64   }
65   }
66 #endif    // CC_NV_Increment
67
31.9 TPM2_NV_Extend

31.9.1 General Description

This command extends a value to an area in NV memory that was previously defined by TPM2_NV_DefineSpace.

If \textit{nvIndexType} is not TPM_NT_EXTEND, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

Proper write authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

After successful completion of this command, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN for the NV Index will be SET.

\textbf{NOTE 1} Once SET, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN remains SET until the NV Index is undefined, unless the TPMA_NV_CLEAR_STCLEAR attribute is SET and a TPM Reset or TPM Restart occurs.

If the TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED attribute of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

\textbf{NOTE 2} If authorization sessions are present, they are checked before checks to see if writes to the NV Index are locked.

\textbf{NOTE 3} The data.buffer parameter does not have to be the defined size of the NV Index. It may be any size allowed by TPM2B_MAX_NV_BUFFER.

The Index will be updated by:

\[
\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{data}_{\text{new}} = H_{\text{nameAlg}}(\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{data}_{\text{old}} || \text{data.buffer})
\] (45)

where

- \(\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{data}_{\text{new}}\) the value of the data field in the NV Index after the command returns
- \(H_{\text{nameAlg}}()\) the hash algorithm indicated in \(\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{nameAlg}\)
- \(\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{data}_{\text{old}}\) the value of the data field in the NV Index before the command is called
- \(\text{data.buffer}\) the data buffer of the command parameter

\textbf{NOTE 3} If TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is CLEAR, then \(\text{nvIndex} \rightarrow \text{data}_{\text{old}}\) is a Zero Digest.
31.9.2 Command and Response

Table 236 — TPM2_NV_Extend Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_Extend {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index to extend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_NV_BUFFER</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>the data to extend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 237 — TPM2_NV_Extend Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.9.3 Detailed Actions

31.9.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_Extend.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_Extend_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_Extend  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)

// Write to a NV index

*/

/* Return Type: TPM_RC
  TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               the TPMA_NV_EXTEND attribute is not SET in
  the Index referenced by 'nvIndex'
  TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION         the authorization was valid but the
  authorizing entity ('authHandle')
  is not allowed to write to the Index
  referenced by 'nvIndex'
  TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED                the Index referenced by 'nvIndex' is locked
  for writing

TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_Extend(NV_Extend_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
)
{
  TPM_RC       result;
  NV_REF       locator;
  NV_INDEX*    nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
  TPM2B_DIGEST oldDigest;
  TPM2B_DIGEST newDigest;
  HASH_STATE   hashState;

  // Input Validation
  // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION
  // or TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED
  result = NvWriteAccessChecks(
    in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
  if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    return result;

  // Make sure that this is an extend index
  if(!IsNvExtendIndex(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_Extend_nvIndex;

  // Internal Data Update
  // Perform the write.
  oldDigest.t.size = CryptHashGetDigestSize(nvIndex->publicArea.nameAlg);
  pAssert(oldDigest.t.size <= sizeof(oldDigest.t.buffer));
  if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, WRITTEN))
    { NvGetIndexData(nvIndex, locator, 0, oldDigest.t.size, oldDigest.t.buffer); }
  else
    { MemorySet(oldDigest.t.buffer, 0, oldDigest.t.size); }

  // Start hash
  newDigest.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, nvIndex->publicArea.nameAlg);

  // Adding old digest
```
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &oldDigest.b);

// Adding new data
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->data.b);

// Complete hash
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &newDigest.b);

// Write extended hash back.
// Note, this routine will SET the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN attribute if necessary
return NvWriteIndexData(nvIndex, 0, newDigest.t.size, newDigest.t.buffer);}
31.10 TPM2_NV_SetBits

31.10.1 General Description

This command is used to SET bits in an NV Index that was created as a bit field. Any number of bits from 0 to 64 may be SET. The contents of bits are ORed with the current contents of the NV Index.

Proper authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is not SET, then, for the purposes of this command, the NV Index is considered to contain all zero bits and data is ORed with that value.

If TPM_NT_BITS is not SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

After successful completion of this command, TPMA_NV_WRITTEN for the NV Index will be SET.

NOTE TPMA_NV_WRITTEN will be SET even if no bits were SET.
### 31.10.2 Command and Response

**Table 238 — TPM2_NV_SetBits Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_SetBits {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>NV Index of the area in which the bit is to be set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT64</td>
<td>bits</td>
<td>the data to OR with the current contents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 239 — TPM2_NV_SetBits Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.10.3 Detailed Actions

31.10.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_SetBits.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_SetBits_fp.h"

#ifdef CC_NV_SetBits // Conditional expansion of this file
/* (See part 3 specification)
  // Set bits in a NV index
  */

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//  TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               the TPMA_NV_BITS attribute is not SET in the
//  Index referenced by 'nvIndex'
//  TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION         the authorization was valid but the
//  authorizing entity ('authHandle')
//  is not allowed to write to the Index
//  referenced by 'nvIndex'
//  TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED                the Index referenced by 'nvIndex' is locked
//  for writing
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_SetBits(NV_SetBits_In* in // IN: input parameter list
) {
    TPM_RC    result;
    NV_REF    locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    UINT64    oldValue;
    UINT64    newValue;

    // Input Validation
    result = NvWriteAccessChecks(
        in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;

    // Make sure that this is a bit field
    if(!IsNvBitsIndex(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_SetBits_nvIndex;
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvIndex->publicArea.attributes, TPMA_NV, WRITTEN))
        oldValue = 0;
    else
        // Read index data
        oldValue = NvGetUINT64Data(nvIndex, locator);

    // Figure out what the new value is going to be
    newValue = oldValue | in->bits;
    // Internal Data Update
    return NvWriteUINT64Data(nvIndex, newValue);
}
#endif // CC_NV_SetBits
```

31.11 TPM2_NV_WriteLock

31.11.1 General Description

If the TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE or TPMA_NV_WRITE_STCLEAR attributes of an NV location are SET, then this command may be used to inhibit further writes of the NV Index.

Proper write authorization is required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE is SET the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED for the NV Index is already SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SUCCESS if proper write authorization is provided and can always return TPM_RC_SUCCESS.

If neither TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE nor TPMA_NV_WRITE_STCLEAR of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES.

If the command is properly authorized and TPMA_NV_WRITE_STCLEAR or TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE is SET, then the TPM shall SET TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED for the NV Index. TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED will be clear on the next TPM2_Startup(TPM_SU_CLEAR) if either TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE is CLEAR or TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is CLEAR.
### 31.11.2 Command and Response

#### Table 240 — TPM2_NV_WriteLock Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_WriteLock {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index of the area to lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 241 — TPM2_NV_WriteLock Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.11.3 Detailed Actions

31.11.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_WriteLock.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_WriteLock_fp.h"
#if CC_NV_WriteLock // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Set write lock on a NV index
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES neither TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE nor
// TPMA_NV_WRITE_STCLEAR is SET in Index
// referenced by 'nvIndex'
// TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION the authorization was valid but the
// authorizing entity ('authHandle')
// is not allowed to write to the Index
// referenced by 'nvIndex'

TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_WriteLock(NV_WriteLock_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{

    TPM_RC result;
    NV_REF locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    TPMA_NV nvAttributes = nvIndex->publicArea.attributes;

    // Input Validation:
    // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION
    // or TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED
    result = NvWriteAccessChecks(in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvAttributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    {
        if(result == TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION)
            return result;
        // If write access failed because the index is already locked, then it is
        // no error.
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    }
    // if neither TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE nor TPMA_NV_WRITE_STCLEAR is set, the index
    // can not be write-locked
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvAttributes, TPMA_NV, WRITEDEFINE)
        && !IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvAttributes, TPMA_NV, WRITE_STCLEAR))
        return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_WriteLock_nvIndex;
    // Internal Data Update
    // Set the WRITELOCK attribute.
    // Note: if TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED were already SET, then the write access check
    // above would have failed and this code isn’t executed.
    SET_ATTRIBUTE(nvAttributes, TPMA_NV, WRITELOCKED);
    // Write index info back
    return NvWriteIndexAttributes(nvIndex->publicArea.nvIndex, locator, nvAttributes);
}
#endif // CC_NV_WriteLock
```

31.12 TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock

31.12.1 General Description

The command will SET TPMA_NV_WRITELOCKED for all indexes that have their TPMA_NV_GLOBALLOCK attribute SET.

If an Index has both TPMA_NV_GLOBALLOCK and TPMA_NV_WRITEDEFINE SET, then this command will permanently lock the NV Index for writing unless TPMA_NV_WRITTEN is CLEAR.

NOTE 1 If an Index is defined with TPMA_NV_GLOBALLOCK SET, then the global lock does not apply until the next time this command is executed.

This command requires either platformAuth/platformPolicy or ownerAuth/ownerPolicy. The Index will be locked whether the index was defined using Owner Authorization or Platform Authorization.

NOTE 2 Index locking is independent of TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE and the type of authorization. For example, an index with TPMA_NV_PLATFORMCREATE SET will be locked if the command uses Owner Authorization.

This permits the owner to lock all indexes after the OS is present. The platform should not create an index with TPMA_NV_GLOBALLOCK SET unless it intends to allow the owner to lock the index.
### 31.12.2 Command and Response

**Table 242 — TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_GlobalWriteLock (NV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 243 — TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.12.3 Detailed Actions

31.12.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_GlobalWriteLock.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_GlobalWriteLock_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_GlobalWriteLock  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// Set global write lock for NV index
*/

TPM_RC TPM2_NV_GlobalWriteLock(NV_GlobalWriteLock_In* in  // IN: input parameter list
) {
    // Input parameter (the authorization handle) is not reference in command action.
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);
    // Internal Data Update
    // Implementation dependent method of setting the global lock
    return NvSetGlobalLock();
}
#endif  // CC_NV_GlobalWriteLock
```
31.13 TPM2_NV_Read

31.13.1 General Description

This command reads a value from an area in NV memory previously defined by TPM2_NV_DefineSpace().

Proper authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPREAD, TPMA_NV.OwnerREAD, TPMA_NV.AUTHREAD, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If TPMA_NV_READLOCKED of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED.

If offset and the size field of data add to a value that is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index referenced by nvIndex, the TPM shall return an error (TPM_RC_NV_RANGE). The implementation may return an error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if it performs an additional check and determines that offset is greater than the dataSize field of the NV Index.

For an NV Index with the TPM_NT_COUNTER or TPM_NT_BITS attribute SET, the TPM may ignore the offset parameter and use an offset of 0. Therefore, it is recommended that the caller set the offset parameter to 0 for interoperability.

NOTE 1 If authorization sessions are present, they are checked before the read-lock status of the NV Index is checked.

If the NV Index has been defined but the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN attribute is CLEAR, then this command shall return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED even if size is zero.

The data parameter in the response may be encrypted using parameter encryption.
### 31.13.2 Command and Response

**Table 244 — TPM2_NV_Read Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_Read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>the handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index to be read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>size</td>
<td>number of octets to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>octet offset into the NV area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This value shall be less than or equal to the size of the nvIndex data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 245 — TPM2_NV_Read Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_M_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_NV_BUFFER</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>the data read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.13.3 Detailed Actions

31.13.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_Read.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_Read_fp.h"

#ifndef CC_NV_Read // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Read of an NV index

// Return Type: TPM_RC

TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION the authorization was valid but the
authorizing entity ("authHandle")
is not allowed to read from the Index
referred by "nvIndex"

TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED the Index referenced by "nvIndex" is
read locked

TPM_RC_NV_RANGE read range defined by "size" and "offset"
is outside the range of the Index referenced
by "nvIndex"

TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED the Index referenced by "nvIndex" has
not been initialized (written)

TPM_RC_NV_VALUE the read size is larger than the
MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE

TPM_RC

TPM2_NV_Read(NV_Read_In*  in, // IN: input parameter list
        NV_Read_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list

    
    NV_REF    locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    TPM_RC    result;
    
    // Input Validation
    // Common read access checks. NvReadAccessChecks() may return
    // TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION, TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED, or TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED
    result = NvReadAccessChecks(
        in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
        
    // Make sure the data will fit the return buffer
    if(in->size > MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_NV_Read_size;
    
    // Verify that the offset is not too large
    if(in->offset > nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_NV_Read_offset;
    
    // Make sure that the selection is within the range of the Index
    if(in->size > (nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize - in->offset))
        return TPM_RC_NV_RANGE;
    
    // Command Output
    // Set the return size
    out->data.t.size = in->size;
    
    // Perform the read
    NvGetIndexData(nvIndex, locator, in->offset, in->size, out->data.t.buffer);
    
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
```


```c
60 } 
61 #endif  // CC_NV_Read 
62 
63 ```
31.14 TPM2_NV_ReadLock

31.14.1 General Description

If TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR is SET in an Index, then this command may be used to prevent further reads of the NV Index until the next TPM2_Startup (TPM_SU_CLEAR).

Proper authorizations are required for this command as determined by TPMA_NV_PPREAD, TPMA_NV_OWNERREAD, TPMA_NV_AUTHREAD, and, if TPMA_NV_POLICYREAD is SET, the authPolicy of the NV Index.

If TPMA_NV_READLOCKED for the NV Index is already SET, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_SUCCESS if proper read authorization is provided and can always return TPM_RC_SUCCESS.

If the command is properly authorized and TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR of the NV Index is SET, then the TPM shall SET TPMA_NV_READLOCKED for the NV Index. If TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR of the NV Index is CLEAR, then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES. TPMA_NV_READLOCKED will be CLEAR by the next TPM2_Startup(TPM_SU_CLEAR).

An Index that had not been written may be locked for reading.
### 31.14.2 Command and Response

#### Table 246 — TPM2_NV_ReadLock Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_ReadLock {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>the handle indicating the source of the authorization value&lt;br&gt;Auth Index: 1&lt;br&gt;Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index to be locked&lt;br&gt;Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 247 — TPM2_NV_ReadLock Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.14.3 Detailed Actions

31.14.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_ReadLock.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_ReadLock_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_ReadLock  // Conditional expansion of this file

/* (See part 3 specification) */
// Set read lock on a NV index

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES               TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR is not set so
// Index referenced by 'nvIndex' may not be
// write locked
// TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION         the authorization was valid but the
// authorizing entity ('authHandle')
// is not allowed to read from the Index
// referenced by 'nvIndex'

TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_ReadLock(NV_ReadLock_In* in)  // IN: input parameter list
{

    TPM_RC result;
    NV_REF locator;
    // The referenced index has been checked multiple times before this is called
    // so it must be present and will be loaded into cache
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    TPMA_NV nvAttributes = nvIndex->publicArea.attributes;

    // Input Validation
    // Common read access checks. NvReadAccessChecks() may return
    // TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION, TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED, or TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED
    result = NvReadAccessChecks(in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvAttributes);
    if(result == TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION)
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    else if(result == TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED)
        return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
    // If NvReadAccessChecks return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED, then continue.
    // It is not an error to read lock an uninitialized Index.
    // if TPMA_NV_READ_STCLEAR is not set, the index can not be read-locked
    if(!IS_ATTRIBUTE(nvAttributes, TPMA_NV, READ_STCLEAR))
        return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_ReadLock_nvIndex;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Set the READLOCK attribute
    SET_ATTRIBUTE(nvAttributes, TPMA_NV, READLOCKED);
    // Write NV info back
    return NvWriteIndexAttributes(nvIndex->publicArea.nvIndex, locator, nvAttributes);
}
#endif  // CC_NV_ReadLock
```
31.15 TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth

31.15.1 General Description

This command allows the authorization secret for an NV Index to be changed. If successful, the authorization secret (authValue) of the NV Index associated with nvIndex is changed.

This command requires that a policy session be used for authorization of nvIndex so that the ADMIN role may be asserted and that commandCode in the policy session context shall be TPM_CC_NV_ChangeAuth. That is, the policy must contain a specific authorization for changing the authorization value of the referenced entity.

NOTE The reason for this restriction is to ensure that the administrative actions on nvIndex require explicit approval while other commands may use policy that is not command-dependent.

The size of the newAuth value may be no larger than the size of the digest produced by the nameAlg of the NV Index.

Since the NV Index authorization is changed before the response HMAC is calculated, the newAuth value is used when generating the response HMAC key if required (see TPM 2.0 Part 4, ComputeResponseHMAC()).
31.15.2 Command and Response

Table 248 — TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_ChangeAuth {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>@nvIndex</td>
<td>handle of the entity Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: ADMIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>newAuth</td>
<td>new authorization value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 249 — TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.15.3 Detailed Actions

31.15.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_ChangeAuth.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_ChangeAuth_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_ChangeAuth  // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
* change authorization value of a NV index
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_SIZE                      'newAuth' size is larger than the digest
// size of the Name algorithm referenced by 'nvIndex'
TPM_RC TPM2_NV_ChangeAuth(NV_ChangeAuth_In* in)  // IN: input parameter list
{
    NV_REF    locator;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);

    // Input Validation
    // Remove trailing zeros and make sure that the result is not larger than the
digest of the nameAlg.
    if(MemoryRemoveTrailingZeros(&in->newAuth)
        > CryptHashGetDigestSize(nvIndex->publicArea.nameAlg))
        return TPM2_RCS_SIZE + RC_NV_ChangeAuth_newAuth;

    // Internal Data Update
    // Change authValue
    return NvWriteIndexAuth(locator, &in->newAuth);
}
#endif  // CC_NV_ChangeAuth
```
31.16  TPM2_NV_Certify

31.16.1  General Description

The purpose of this command is to certify the contents of an NV Index or portion of an NV Index.

If the *sign* attribute is not SET in the key referenced by *signHandle* then the TPM shall return TPM_RC_KEY.

If the NV Index has been defined but the TPMA_NV_WRITTEN attribute is CLEAR, then this command shall return TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED even if *size* is zero.

If proper authorization for reading the NV Index is provided, the portion of the NV Index selected by *size* and *offset* are included in an attestation block and signed using the key indicated by *signHandle*. The attestation includes *size* and *offset* so that the range of the data can be determined. It also includes the NV index Name.

For an NV Index with the TPM_NT_COUNTER or TPM_NT_BITS attribute SET, the TPM may ignore the *offset* parameter and use an offset of 0. Therefore, it is recommended that the caller set the *offset* parameter to 0 for interoperability.

If *offset* and *size* add to a value that is greater than the *dataSize* field of the NV Index referenced by *nvIndex*, the TPM shall return an error (TPM_RC_NV_RANGE). The implementation may return an error (TPM_RC_VALUE) if it performs an additional check and determines that *offset* is greater than the *dataSize* field of the NV Index, or if *size* is greater than MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE.

NOTE 1  See clause 18.1 for description of how the signing scheme is selected.

NOTE 2  If *signHandle* is TPM_RH_NULL, the TPMS_ATTEST structure is returned, and *signature* is a NULL Signature.

If *size* and *offset* are both zero (0), then *certifyInfo* in the response will contain a TPMS_NV_DIGEST_CERTIFY_INFO, otherwise, it will contain a TPMS_NV_CERTIFY_INFO. The digest in the TPMS_NV_DIGEST_CERTIFY_INFO is created using the digest of the selected signing scheme.

NOTE 3  TPMS_NV_DIGEST_CERTIFY_INFO was added in revision 01.53. It permits TPM2_NV_Certify() to certify NV Index contents that are larger than MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE.
31.16.2 Command and Response

Table 250 — TPM2_NV_Certify Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_Certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT+</td>
<td>@signHandle</td>
<td>handle of the key used to sign the attestation structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>handle indicating the source of the authorization value for the NV Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>Index for the area to be certified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>qualifyingData</td>
<td>user-provided qualifying data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIG_SCHEME+</td>
<td>inScheme</td>
<td>signing scheme to use if the scheme for signHandle is TPM_ALG_NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>size</td>
<td>number of octets to certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT16</td>
<td>offset</td>
<td>octet offset into the NV area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This value shall be less than or equal to the size of the nvIndex data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 251 — TPM2_NV_Certify Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_ATTEST</td>
<td>certifyInfo</td>
<td>the structure that was signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMT_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>the asymmetric signature over certifyInfo using the key referenced by signHandle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.16.3 Detailed Actions

31.16.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_Certify.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Attest_spt_fp.h"
#include "NV_Certify_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_Certify  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// certify the contents of an NV index or portion of an NV index
*/
// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION the authorization was valid but the
// authorizing entity ('authHandle')
// is not allowed to read from the Index
// referenced by 'nvIndex'
// TPM_RC_KEY 'signHandle' does not reference a signing
// key
// TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED Index referenced by 'nvIndex' is locked
// for reading
// TPM_RC_NV_RANGE 'offset' plus 'size' extends outside of the
// data range of the Index referenced by
// 'nvIndex'
// TPM_RC_NV_UNINITIALIZED Index referenced by 'nvIndex' has not been
// written
// TPM_RC_SCHEMA 'inScheme' is not an allowed value for the
// key definition

TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_Certify(NV_Certify_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
    NV_Certify_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC      result;
    NV_REF      locator;
    NV_INDEX*   nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, &locator);
    TPMS_ATTEST certifyInfo;
    OBJECT*     signObject = HandleToObject(in->signHandle);
    // Input Validation
    if(!IsSigningObject(signObject))
        return TPM_RCS_KEY + RC_NV_Certify_signHandle;
    if(!CryptSelectSignScheme(signObject, &in->inScheme))
        return TPM_RCS_SCHEMA + RC_NV_Certify_inScheme;
    // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION
    // or TPM_RC_NV_LOCKED
    result = NvReadAccessChecks(
        in->authHandle, in->nvIndex, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
        return result;
    // make sure that the selection is within the range of the Index (cast to avoid
    // any wrap issues with addition)
    if((UINT32)in->size + (UINT32)in->offset > (UINT32)nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize)
        return TPM_RC_NV_RANGE;
    // Make sure the data will fit the return buffer.
    // NOTE: This check may be modified if the output buffer will not hold the
    // maximum sized NV buffer as part of the certified data. The difference in
    // size could be substantial if the signature scheme was produced a large
    // signature (e.g., RSA 4096).
    if(in->size > MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE)
        return TPM_RCS_VALUE + RC_NV_Certify_size;
```
Part 3: Commands

// Command Output

// Fill in attest information common fields
FillInAttestInfo(
    in->signHandle, &in->inScheme, &in->qualifyingData, &certifyInfo);

// Get the name of the index
NvGetIndexName(nvIndex, &certifyInfo.attested.nv.indexName);

// See if this is old format or new format
if((in->size != 0) || (in->offset != 0))
{
    // NV certify specific fields
    // Attestation type
certifyInfo.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_NV;
    // Set the return size
certifyInfo.attested.nv.nvContents.t.size = in->size;
    // Set the offset
certifyInfo.attested.nv.offset = in->offset;

    // Perform the read
    NvGetIndexData(nvIndex,
                   locator,
                   in->offset,
                   in->size,
                   certifyInfo.attested.nv.nvContents.t.buffer);
}
else
{
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    // This is to sign a digest of the data
certifyInfo.type = TPM_ST_ATTEST_NV_DIGEST;
    // Initialize the hash before calling the function to add the Index data to
    // the hash.
certifyInfo.attested.nvDigest.nvDigest.t.size =
        CryptHashStart(&hashState, in->inScheme.details.any.hashAlg);
    NvHashIndexData(
        &hashState, nvIndex, locator, 0, nvIndex->publicArea.dataSize);
    CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &certifyInfo.attested.nvDigest.nvDigest.b);
}

// Sign attestation structure. A NULL signature will be returned if
// signObject is NULL.
return SignAttestInfo(signObject,
                      &in->inScheme,
                      &certifyInfo,
                      &in->qualifyingData,
                      &out->certifyInfo,
                      &out->signature);

#endif // CC_NV_Certify

31.17 TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2

31.17.1 General Description

This command is identical to TPM2_NV_DefineSpace(), except that the publicInfo parameter is a TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC_2, allowing all types of NV indices that support DefineSpace to be defined.

The following types of NV indices are supported by this command:

- TPM_HT_NV_INDEX (the legacy NV index type)
- TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV

NOTE: TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2() was added in revision 01.74.
31.17.2 Command and Response

**Table 252 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2 Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_DefineSpace2 {NV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_PROVISION</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM+{PP}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_AUTH</td>
<td>auth</td>
<td>the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC_2</td>
<td>publicInfo</td>
<td>the public parameters of the NV area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 253 — TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2 Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.17.3 Detailed Actions

31.17.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_DefineSpace2.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_DefineSpace2_fp.h"
#if CC_NV_DefineSpace2 // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Define a NV index space
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
//   TPM_RC_HIERARCHY for authorizations using TPM_RH_PLATFORM
//   phEnable_NV is clear preventing access to NV
data in the platform hierarchy.
//   TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES attributes of the index are not consistent
//   TPM_RC_NV_DEFINED index already exists
//   TPM_RC_NV_SPACE insufficient space for the index
//   TPM_RC_SIZE 'auth->size' or 'publicInfo->authPolicy.size' is
//   larger than the digest size of
//   'publicInfo->nameAlg'; or 'publicInfo->dataSize'
//   is not consistent with 'publicInfo->attributes'
//   (this includes the case when the index is
//   larger than a MAX_NV_BUFFER_SIZE but the
//   TPMA_NV_WRITEALL attribute is SET)
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_DefineSpace2(NV_DefineSpace2_In* in) // IN: input parameter list
{
    TPM_RC result;
    TPMS_NV_PUBLIC legacyPublic;

    // Input Validation
    // Validate the handle type and the (handle-type-specific) attributes.
    switch(in->publicInfo.nvPublic2.handleType)
    {
        case TPM_HT_NV_INDEX:
            break;
        # if EXTERNAL_NV
        case TPM_HT_EXTERNAL_NV:
            // The reference implementation may let you define an "external" NV
            // index, but it doesn't currently support setting any of the extended
            // bits for customizing the behavior of external NV.
            if((TPMA_NV_EXP_TO_UINT64(
                in->publicInfo.nvPublic2.nvPublic2.externalNV.attributes)
                & 0xffffffff00000000) != 0)
            {
                return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_NV_DefineSpace2_publicInfo;
            }
            break;
        # endif
        default:
            return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_NV_DefineSpace2_publicInfo;
    }
    result = NvPublicFromNvPublic2(&in->publicInfo.nvPublic2, &legacyPublic);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    {
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_NV_DefineSpace2_publicInfo);
    }
}```
return NvDefineSpace(in->authHandle,
   &in->auth,
   &legacyPublic,
   RC_NV_DefineSpace2_authHandle,
   RC_NV_DefineSpace2_auth,
   RC_NV_DefineSpace2_publicInfo);
}
#endif  // CC_NV_DefineSpace

31.18 TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2

31.18.1 General Description

This command is identical to TPM2_NV_ReadPublic(), except that it supports NV indices of all types, and returns the public area as a TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC_2.

The Name of a TPM_HT_NV_INDEX is consistent whether it is returned from TPM2_NV_ReadPublic() or TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2().

NOTE 1 The Name is the same because it is calculated using a marshaled TPMU_NV_PUBLIC_2, which is a TPMS_NV_PUBLIC in both commands. The TPMT_NV_PUBLIC_2 union tag handleType is not included.

NOTE 2 TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2() was added in revision 01.74.

31.18.2 Command and Response

Table 254 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2 Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit or encrypt session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_NV_ReadPublic2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_INDEX</td>
<td>nvIndex</td>
<td>the NV Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 255 — TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2 Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NV_PUBLIC_2</td>
<td>nvPublic</td>
<td>the public area of the NV Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
<td>nvName</td>
<td>the Name of the nvIndex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31.18.3 Detailed Actions

31.18.3.1 /tpm/src/command/NVStorage/NV_ReadPublic2.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "NV_ReadPublic2_fp.h"

#if CC_NV_ReadPublic2  // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// Read the public information of a NV index
*/
TPM_RC
TPM2_NV_ReadPublic2(NV_ReadPublic2_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
        NV_ReadPublic2_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    TPM_RC    result;
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex;

    nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(in->nvIndex, NULL);
    // Command Output

    // The reference code stores its NV indices in the legacy form, because
    // it doesn't support any extended attributes.
    // Translate the legacy form to the general form.
    result = NvPublic2FromNvPublic(&nvIndex->publicArea, &out->nvPublic.nvPublic2);
    if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
    {
        return RcSafeAddToResult(result, RC_NV_ReadPublic2_nvIndex);
    }

    // Compute NV name
    NvGetIndexName(nvIndex, &out->nvName);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif  // CC_NV_ReadPublic2
```

32 Attached Components

32.1 Introduction

This section contains commands that allow interaction with an Attached Component (AC).

NOTE The Attached Component feature was added in revision 01.40.
32.2 TPM2_AC_GetCapability

32.2.1 General Description

The purpose of this command is to obtain information about an Attached Component referenced by an AC handle.

The returned list contains 0 or more values starting at the first tagged value that is equal to or greater than capability.

The list returned in capabilitiesData contains tagged values that indicate the type of the value.

The TPM will return the lesser of a) the available values, b) the number requested in count, or c) the number that will fit within the available response buffer. If additional values with higher capability numbers are available, moreData will be YES.

NOTE TPM2_AC_GetCapability() was added in revision 01.40.

32.2.2 Command and Response

Table 256 — TPM2_AC_GetCapability Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_AC_GetCapability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_AC</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>handle indicating the Attached Component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_AT</td>
<td>capability</td>
<td>starting info type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>count</td>
<td>maximum number of values to return</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 257 — TPM2_AC_GetCapability Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
<td>moreData</td>
<td>flag to indicate whether there are more values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPML_AC_CAPABILITIES</td>
<td>capabilitiesData</td>
<td>list of capabilities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2.3 Detailed Actions

32.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/AttachedComponent/AC_GetCapability.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "AC_GetCapability_fp.h"
#include "AC_spt_fp.h"
#if CC_AC_GetCapability // Conditional expansion of this file
```
/* (See part 3 specification) 
// This command returns various information regarding Attached Components
*/

TPM_RC
TPM2_AC_GetCapability(AC_GetCapability_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                      AC_GetCapability_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
                     )
{
    // Command Output
    out->moreData = AcCapabilitiesGet(in->ac, in->capability, in->count, &out->capabilitiesData);
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_AC_GetCapability
### 32.3 TPM2_AC_Send

#### 32.3.1 General Description

The purpose of this command is to send (copy) a loaded object from the TPM to an Attached Component. The Object referenced by `sendObject` is required to have `fixedTpm`, `fixedParent`, and `encryptedDuplication` attributes CLEAR (TPM_RC_ATTRIBUTES). Authorization for `sendObject` is required to be a policy session. The `policySession→commandCode` of the policy session context is required to be TPM_CC_AC_Send (TPM_RC_POLICY_FAIL) to demonstrate that the policy is specific for this command.

Authorization to send to the `ac` is provided by the session associated with `authHandle`.

If an NV Alias is not defined for `ac`, then `authHandle` is required to be either TPM_RH_OWNER or TPM_RH_PLATFORM (TPM_RC_HANDLE).

If an NV Alias is defined for `ac`, then the authorization for `authHandle` is required to be compatible with the write authorization attributes (TPMA_NV_PPWRITE, TPMA_NV_OWNERWRITE, TPMA_NV_AUTHWRITE, and TPMA_NV_POLICYWRITE) in the NV Alias (TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION).

**NOTE 1** If authorization for `authHandle` is the handle of an NV Index, then it is required to be the NV Alias value for `ac` (TPM_RC_NV_AUTHORIZATION).

If authorization succeeds, the TPM will attempt to send `acDataIn` and relevant portions of `sendObject` to the AC referenced by `ac`.

The TPM will return TPM_RC_SUCCESS if it succeeds in performing all the required authorizations and validations. If problems occur in the process of sending the object from the TPM to the AC, the response code will be TPM_RC_SUCCESS with the AC-dependent error reported in `acDataOut`.

**NOTE 2** TPM2_AC_Send() was added in revision 01.40.

#### 32.3.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>Tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_AC_Send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_DH_OBJECT</td>
<td>@sendObject</td>
<td>handle of the object being sent to <code>ac</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: DUP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH</td>
<td>@authHandle</td>
<td>the handle indicating the source of the authorization value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_AC</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>handle indicating the Attached Component to which the object will be sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_MAX_BUFFER</td>
<td>acDataIn</td>
<td>Optional non sensitive information related to the object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 259 — TPM2_AC_Send Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>Tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS_AC_OUTPUT</td>
<td>acDataOut</td>
<td>May include AC specific data or information about an error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.3.3 Detailed Actions

32.3.3.1 /tpm/src/command/AttachedComponent/AC_Send.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "AC_Send_fp.h"
#include "AC_spt_fp.h"

#ifdef CC_AC_Send // Conditional expansion of this file

#define (See part 3 specification)

/*(Duplicate a loaded object)

// Return Type: TPM_RC

// TPMS_ATTRIBUTES key to duplicate has 'fixedParent' SET
// TPMS_HASH for an RSA key, the nameAlg digest size for the
// newParent is not compatible with the key size
// TPMS_HIERARCHY 'encryptedDuplication' is SET and 'newParentHandle'
// specifies Null Hierarchy
// TPMS_KEY 'newParentHandle' references invalid ECC key (public
// point not on the curve)
// TPMS_SIZE input encryption key size does not match the
// size specified in symmetric algorithm
// TPMS_SYMMETRIC 'encryptedDuplication' is SET but no symmetric
// algorithm is provided
// TPMS_TYPE 'newParentHandle' is neither a storage key nor
// TPMS_NULL; or the object has a NULL nameAlg
// TPMS_VALUE for an RSA newParent, the sizes of the digest and
// the encryption key are too large to be OAEP encoded

TPM_RC TPM2_AC_Send(AC_Send_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
                   AC_Send_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
                   )
{
    NV_REF locator;
    TPM_HANDLE nvAlias = ((in->ac - AC_FIRST) + NV_AC_FIRST);
    NV_INDEX* nvIndex = NvGetIndexInfo(nvAlias, &locator);
    OBJECT* object = HandleToObject(in->sendObject);
    TPM_RC result;
    // Input validation
    // If there is an NV alias, then the index must allow the authorization provided
    if(nvIndex != NULL)
    {
        // Common access checks, NvWriteAccessCheck() may return
        // TPM_RCS_NV_AUTHORIZATION or TPM_RCS_NV_LOCKED
        result = NvWriteAccessChecks(
            in->authHandle, nvAlias, nvIndex->publicArea.attributes);
        if(result != TPM_RC_SUCCESS)
            return result;
    }
    // If 'ac' did not have an alias then the authorization had to be with either
```

```
// platform or owner authorization. The type of TPMI_RH_NV_AUTH only allows
// owner or platform or an NV index. If it was a valid index, it would have had
// an alias and be processed above, so only success here is if this is a
// permanent handle.
else if(HandleGetType(in->authHandle) != TPM_HT_PERMANENT)
    return TPM_RCS_HANDLE + RC_AC_Send_authHandle;
// Make sure that the object to be duplicated has the right attributes
if(IS_ATTRIBUTE(
    object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, encryptedDuplication)
    || IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedParent)
    || IS_ATTRIBUTE(object->publicArea.objectAttributes, TPMA_OBJECT, fixedTPM))
    return TPM_RCS_ATTRIBUTES + RC_AC_Send_sendObject;
// Command output
// Do the implementation dependent send
return AcSendObject(in->ac, object, &out->acDataOut);
#endif // TPM_CC_AC_Send
32.4 TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect

32.4.1 General Description

This command allows qualification of the sending (copying) of an Object to an Attached Component (AC). Qualification includes selection of the receiving AC and the method of authentication for the AC, and, in certain circumstances, the Object to be sent may be specified.

If this command is not used in conjunction with TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(), then only the authHandleName and acName are selected and includeObject should be CLEAR.

NOTE 1  In the absence of TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(), a policy session cannot create a policyDigest that simultaneously equals the authPolicy in an Object and names that Object. This is because the authPolicy recorded in an Object is unable to include the Name of the Object as the Name of an Object depends on the Object's authPolicy.

NOTE 2  An object's authPolicy can incorporate the use of TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(). If the authorizing entity for the TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() command specifies only the ac and the authHandle, then the resultant policyDigest may be applied to the sending of any number of Objects. If the authorizing entity for the TPM2_PolicyAuthorize() also specifies the Name of the Object to be sent, then the resultant policyDigest applies only to that specific Object.

If either policySession→cpHash or policySession→nameHash has been previously set, the TPM shall return TPM_RC_CPHASH. Otherwise, policySession→nameHash will be set to:

\[
nameHash = H_{policyAlg}(objectName || authHandleName || acName)
\]  (46)

NOTE 3  A policy cannot specify both cpHash and nameHash because policySession→nameHash and policySession→cpHash may share the same memory space.

If the command succeeds, policySession→policyDigest will be updated according to the setting of the input parameter includeObject. If includeObject is SET, policySession→policyDigest is updated by:

\[
policyDigest_{new} = H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} || TPM_CC_Policy_AC_SendSelect || objectName || authHandleName || acName || includeObject)
\]  (47)

but if includeObject is CLEAR, policySession→policyDigest is updated by:

\[
policyDigest_{new} = H_{policyAlg}(policyDigest_{old} || TPM_CC_Policy_AC_SendSelect || authHandleName || acName || includeObject)
\]  (48)

NOTE 4  policySession→nameHash receives the digest of all Names so that the check performed in TPM2_AC_Send() may be the same regardless of which Names are included in policySession→policyDigest. This means that, when TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect() is executed, it is only valid for a specific triple of objectName, authHandleName, and acName.

If the command succeeds, policySession→commandCode is set to TPM_CC_AC_Send.

NOTE 5  The normal use of TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect() is before a TPM2_PolicyAuthorize(). An authorized entity would approve a policyDigest that allows sending to a specific Attached Component. The authorizing entity may want to limit the authorization so that the approval allows only a specific Object to be sent to the Attached Component. In that case, the authorizing entity would approve the policyDigest of equation (48).

NOTE 6  TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect() was added in revision 01.40.
32.4.2 Command and Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 260 — TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_SH_POLICY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_YES_NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 261 — TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.4.3 Detailed Actions

32.4.3.1 /tpm/src/command/AttachedComponent/Policy_AC_SendSelect.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "Policy_AC_SendSelect_fp.h"

#if CC_Policy_AC_SendSelect // Conditional expansion of this file

/*(See part 3 specification)
// allows qualification of attached component and object to be sent.
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC

TPM2_Policy_AC_SendSelect(Policy_AC_SendSelect_In* in // IN: input parameter list

{  
    SESSION*   session;
    HASH_STATE hashState;
    TPM_CC     commandCode = TPM_CC_Policy_AC_SendSelect;

    // Input Validation

    // Get pointer to the session structure
    session = SessionGet(in->policySession);
```
// cpHash in session context must be empty
if (session->u1.cpHash.t.size != 0)
    return TPM_RC_CPHASH;

// commandCode in session context must be empty
if (session->commandCode != 0)
    return TPM_RC_COMMAND_CODE;

// Internal Data Update
// Update name hash
session->u1.cpHash.t.size = CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add objectName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);

// add authHandleName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->authHandleName.b);

// add ac name
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->acName.b);

// complete hash
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u1.cpHash.b);

// update policy hash
// Old policyDigest size should be the same as the new policyDigest size since
// they are using the same hash algorithm
session->u2.policyDigest.t.size =
    CryptHashStart(&hashState, session->authHashAlg);

// add old policy
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// add command code
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPM_CC), commandCode);

// add objectName
if (in->includeObject == YES)
    CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->objectName.b);

// add authHandleName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->authHandleName.b);

// add acName
CryptDigestUpdate2B(&hashState, &in->acName.b);

// add includeObject
CryptDigestUpdateInt(&hashState, sizeof(TPMI_YES_NO), in->includeObject);

// complete digest
CryptHashEnd2B(&hashState, &session->u2.policyDigest.b);

// set commandCode in session context
session->commandCode = TPM_CC_AC_Send;

    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;

} // CC_Policy_AC_SendSelect
Part 3: Commands

Trusted Platform Module Library

33 Authenticated Countdown Timer

33.1 Introduction

Clause 32.4.3.1 contains commands that allow interaction with an Authenticated Countdown Timer (ACT).

NOTE The Authenticated Countdown Timer was added in revision 01.56.

33.2 TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout

33.2.1 General Description

This command is used to set the time remaining before an Authenticated Countdown Timer (ACT) expires.

This command sets TPMS_ACT_DATA.timeout (ACT Timeout) to startTimeout. The startTimeout value is an integer number of seconds and may be zero. The startTimeout parameter may be greater, equal, or less than the current value of ACT Timeout.

When ACT Timeout is non-zero, it will count down, once per second until it reaches zero, at which time the signaled attribute of the TPMA_ACT associated with actHandle is SET.

When ACT Timeout is zero and the signaled attribute is SET, writing a startTimeout of FF FF FF FF16 will clear signaled and stop the counting.

There are four states for ACT Timeout and startTimeout. The signaled attribute will be set as follows:

1) If ACT Timeout is zero and startTimeout is non-zero, then signaled will be CLEAR.
2) If ACT Timeout is non-zero and startTimeout is non-zero, then signaled will be CLEAR.
3) If ACT Timeout is zero and startTimeout is zero, then signaled will be unchanged.
4) If ACT Timeout is non-zero and startTimeout is zero, then signaled will be SET.

When this command is successful, preserveSignaled will be CLEAR.

NOTE 1 The ACT signals on a transition from non-zero to zero. The transition can occur either due to TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout() or a decrement. The effect of signaled is platform dependent.

NOTE 2 It may take up to one second until ACT Timeout will be set and signaled will be CLEAR or SET by TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout() or TPM2_Startup(STATE). This allows the counting and signaling to take place synchronously with the hardware clock tick.

NOTE 3 TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout() was added in revision 01.56.
33.2.2 Command and Response

Table 262 — TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_ACT_SetTimeout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_RH_ACT</td>
<td>@actHandle</td>
<td>Handle of the selected ACT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Index: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Auth Role: USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>startTimeout</td>
<td>the start timeout value for the ACT in seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 263 — TPM2_ACT_SetTimeout Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
33.2.3 Detailed Actions

33.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/ClockTimer/ACT_SetTimeout.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"
#include "ACT_SetTimeout_fp.h"

#if CC_ACT_SetTimeout // Conditional expansion of this file
/*(See part 3 specification)
// prove an object with a specific Name is loaded in the TPM
*/

// Return Type: TPM_RC
// TPM_RC_RETRY returned when an update for the selected ACT is
// already pending
// TPM_RC_VALUE attempt to disable signaling from an ACT that has
// not expired

TPM_RC ACT_SetTimeout(ACT_SetTimeout_In* in // IN: input parameter list
)
{
    // If 'startTimeout' is UINT32_MAX, then this is an attempt to disable the ACT
    // and turn off the signaling for the ACT. This is only valid if the ACT
    // is signaling.
    #if ACT_SUPPORT
    if((in->startTimeout == UINT32_MAX) && !ActGetSignaled(in->actHandle))
        return ActCounterUpdate(in->actHandle, in->startTimeout);
    #else // ACT_SUPPORT
    NOT_REFERENCED(in);
    return TPM_RC_VALUE + RC_ACT_SetTimeout_startTimeout;
    #endif // ACT_SUPPORT
}
#endif // CC_ACT_SetTimeout
```
34 Vendor Specific

34.1 Introduction

Clause 33.2.3.1 contains commands that are vendor specific but made public in order to prevent proliferation.

This specification does define TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test() in order to have at least one command that can be used to ensure the proper operation of the command dispatch code when processing a vendor-specific command.

34.2 TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test

34.2.1 General Description

This is a placeholder to allow testing of the dispatch code.
### 34.2.2 Command and Response

#### Table 264 — TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPMI_ST_COMMAND_TAG</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>TPM_ST_SESSIONS if an audit session is present; otherwise, TPM_ST_NO_SESSIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>commandSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_CC</td>
<td>commandCode</td>
<td>TPM_CC_Vendor_TCG_Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>inputData</td>
<td>dummy data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 265 — TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPM_ST</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>see clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT32</td>
<td>responseSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM_RC</td>
<td>responseCode</td>
<td>TPM_RC_SUCCESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM2B_DATA</td>
<td>outputData</td>
<td>dummy data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
34.2.3 Detailed Actions

34.2.3.1 /tpm/src/command/Vendor/Vendor_TCG_Test.c

```c
#include "Tpm.h"

#include "Vendor_TCG_Test_fp.h"

TPM_RC TPM2_Vendor_TCG_Test(Vendor_TCG_Test_In* in, // IN: input parameter list
Vendor_TCG_Test_Out* out // OUT: output parameter list
)
{
    out->outputData = in->inputData;
    return TPM_RC_SUCCESS;
}
#endif // CC_Vendor_TCG_Test
```